

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

TERTULLIANI
DE PRAESCRPTIONE HAERETICORUM
AD MARTYRAS : AD SCAPULAM

T. HERBERT BINDLEY



London

HENRY FROWDE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE
AMEN CORNER, E.C.



New York

MACMILLAN & Co., 66 FIFTH AVENUE

QUINTI SEPTIMII FLORENTIS

TERTULLIANI

DE PRAESCRPTIONE HAERETICORUM
AD MARTYRAS: AD SCAPULAM

EDITED, WITH INTRODUCTIONS AND NOTES

BY

T. HERBERT BINDLEY, B.D.

MERTON COLLEGE, OXFORD

PRINCIPAL OF CODRINGTON COLLEGE, BARBADOS, AND EXAMINING
CHAPLAIN TO THE LORD BISHOP

'Quid enim Tertulliano doctius? quid in divinis atque humanis
rebus exercitatus?'

VINCENTIUS LIRINENSIS, Common. 18

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1893

Oxford

PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

BY HORACE HART, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE

THE present volume has been edited as a companion to that containing the *APOLOGETICUS*, which was published by the Delegates of the Clarendon Press in 1889.

The treatise *DE PRAESCRIPTIONE HAERETICORUM* was chosen for the especial purpose of illustrating the methods employed by Tertullian in defending the Church's position in view of the assault made upon it by heresy, as compared with those adopted in his earlier treatise for the vindication of the Church's innocence when assailed by the animosity and ignorance of paganism.

The two short Addresses *AD MARTYRAS* and *AD SCAPULAM* have been added as giving further examples of Tertullian's style under differing circumstances.

It seemed well also to include the Anonymous Appendix *ADVERSUS OMNES HAERESSES*, inasmuch as it enumerates and briefly treats many of the phases of Gnosticism and other heresies, against the snares of

which the DE PRAESCRPTIONE HAERETICORUM was intended to be a comprehensive warning.

I have endeavoured in the Introductions and Notes to enter into the spirit of Tertullian and to reproduce in each case his immediate point of view, but in so rugged and surprising a writer I can scarcely hope to have been always successful.

T. H. B.

CODRINGTON COLLEGE, BARBADOS,
October, 1893.

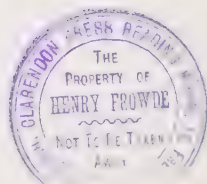
CONTENTS



	PAGE
DE PRAESCRPTIONE HAERETICORUM—	
Introduction	3
Authorities for the Text	13
Analysis	16
Synopsis	17
Text and Notes	27
AD MARTYRAS—	
Introduction	101
Synopsis	105
Authorities for the Text	106
Text and Notes	107
AD SCAPULAM—	
Introduction	123
Synopsis	126
Text and Notes	127
APPENDIX TO DE PRAESCRPTIONE HAERETICORUM: PSEUDO-	
TERTULLIANI ADVERSUS OMNES HAERESSES—	
Introduction	145
Text and Notes	147

DE PRAESCRIPTIONE
HAERETICORUM

B



INTRODUCTION



THE treatise DE PRAESCRIPTIONE HAERETICORUM seems to have been called forth by some specially directed effort on the part of heretical teachers to undermine the stability of the Karthaginian Christians. The methods of the heretical attack can be fairly well gathered from the course of the reply ; and it is clear from several passages that, although professedly arguing on general principles against all heresies, Tertullian had chiefly in his mind the insidious snares of Gnosticism, and particularly the systems of Valentinus and Marcion.

The title of the work first demands a few words of comment. PRAESCRIPTIO is a term borrowed, like so many of Tertullian's expressions, from the language of the law-courts. But its real use and meaning have been frequently misunderstood ; and Tertullian's employment of it has been explained as though it denoted a ' preliminary plea ' or objection, lodged at the commencement of a suit, which if maintained dispensed with the need of entering into any discussion of the merits of a case¹. The preliminary objection which might be ruled against heretics on account of their late origin would be an instance of such a ' praescriptio.' But a close study of the employment of the ' praescriptio ' in Roman law affords no examples of such a use.

It has also been interpreted as a ' demurrer ' ², although the

¹ Gore, *Christian Ministry*, p. 125 ; Hurter, *Opuscula Selecta*, ix. p. 11 ; Schaff, *Church History*, ii. 830. I must plead guilty to the same error in my note *Apol.* 7.

² Wordsworth, *Ch. Hist.* i. 238.

argument of the treatise does not bear the least resemblance to the nature of that plea. It might with better show of reason be explained in its modern sense of 'an acquired right,' a plea which Tertullian does actually adopt in treating of the Church's original title to the possession of the Scriptures (chap. 37). But this is not the general meaning underlying the 'praescriptio' and our author's use of it.

'Praescriptio' technically denoted a clause prefixed to the 'intentio' of a 'formula' for the purpose of *limiting the scope of an enquiry*, which the 'intentio' would otherwise have left open for discussion before the 'judex.' At the same time the employment of the 'praescriptio' did not bar the plaintiff from taking subsequent action on any other points for the present left out of the suit. At the time when Tertullian was writing the use of the 'praescriptio' was confined to the plaintiff¹. We may conclude therefore that it was Tertullian's idea in this treatise to place the Church in the position of plaintiff, and the heretics in that of defendants. And the first exercise and use of the 'praescriptio' in the case of the Church *v.* Heresy is *to limit the enquiry* to the single point of the legitimacy of the heretics' appeal to the Holy Scriptures (chap. 15). It is argued that the use of the Christian documents by the heretics is not allowable, inasmuch as they have forfeited their right to the name of Christian, and with that their right of possession in the Christian literature. Moreover they have mutilated and corrupted the Scriptures to suit their own beliefs, whereas the genuine Scriptures and the true faith will always be found together. The question is therefore further narrowed down to this point:—In whose possession is the Apostolic Rule of Faith, which was delivered by Christ Himself to His Apostles, and by them to the bishops of the several churches which they founded? (chap. 21). It cannot be in the pos-

¹ Gaius iv. 133, 'His temporibus, omnes praescriptiones ab actore profisciscuntur. Olim autem quaedam et pro reo opponebantur.'

session of the heretics, who can produce no episcopal successions; while on the other hand the unity and identity of the belief preserved by the Apostolic churches in all parts of the world guarantee its truth and genuineness. The very lack of episcopal succession from the Apostles—a lack which is itself both proof and consequence of later origin—would be alone sufficient to refute the pretensions of heresy, without taking into account its divergence from the apostolic creed (chap. 29). Heretics thus stand convicted, historically, of recent origin—‘novitas,’ ‘posteritas’—and, practically, of innovation upon the faith—‘fidem innovare’ (chap. 42)—or deviation from the catholic standard of belief—‘labi a regula’ (chap. 3), ‘exorbitare’ (chap. 44). Such is the general drift of the treatise; but one or two of the points raised in the course of the argument claim more attention.

1. The appeal to the unity of the Church’s doctrine as a witness to its truth leads Tertullian to set forth the Creed of the North African Church. His method here follows that of Irenaeus, and he points to the existence of a fixed body of truth which is all-sufficient as a saving doctrine, and beyond the bounds of which all is error. The form of the ‘Regula Fidei’ given in chap. 13 (comp. *adv. Prax.* 2; *de virg. vel.* 1) is essentially the same with that preserved in Irenaeus (i. 10; iii. 4; iv. 33¹), and with the early Roman and Eastern creeds².

It may be noticed in passing that the early fathers did not lay that stress upon verbal identity which some commentators have demanded from them. Strong in the conscious possession of the one Catholic Faith, they were content to set out the facts of their belief in language which did indeed often employ well-known and stereotyped phrases, but which

¹ The references to Irenaeus throughout this volume are given according to Harvey’s edition, Cambridge 1857.

² See them printed in full in Heurtley, *Harmonia Symbolica*, and *De Fide et Symbolo*.

equally often merely expressed and emphasized in the readiest manner those particular articles of the Faith to which the exigencies of the moment drew special attention. Even at a later time we find very considerable latitude in quoting the phraseology of the Nicene symbol—a carefully-written and explicit document, in the citation of which, one would suppose, not the smallest verbal deviation would have been tolerated¹. And there is no evidence that the creed of the African Church, which in Tertullian's time and much later was orally preserved, had been embodied in a written document and synodically accepted. Even if it had, we need not feel surprise at the existence of verbally differing forms of it. There are at least two recensions of the Baptismal Creed in our own Book of Common Prayer.

2. The appeal to the Episcopal Succession as a test of Catholicity seems at first sight startling and far-fetched. Yet Tertullian was only following the course taken by earlier writers. It was indeed a natural and common ground of defence against heretics. And its cogency makes itself felt the more closely the facts of the case are studied. Christianity was laid in a basis of history: it was, and is, a *life*—a series of facts and events, commencing with the Incarnation and continuing to the end of time. The record of these facts formed the matter of the 'Gospel' which was preached by the Apostles in every church founded by their instrumentality; and the living voice of the collective Apostolic witness constituted the authoritative source of the record and the court of appeal on all questions connected with it. Had Christianity been a mere collection of ethical rules and principles, a written book would have sufficed: as the Q'urân suffices for the preservation of Mohammadanism and for the guidance of the adherents of the Arabian 'Prophet.' But the Christian doctrines were enshrined in, or rather were themselves,

¹ Athan. *Epist. ad Epict.* 4; Epiphani. *Ancor.* 120 f.; Socr. *H. E.* iv. 12; Basil *Epist.* 140. 2.

facts of history, the truth of which, in the first instance, eye-witnesses alone could substantiate. Christ's Death and Resurrection were events which had taken place at a definite time in the world's history. How, then, amid the natural tendencies of human thought and belief to disintegration and change, was the unimpaired tradition of the fundamental facts of Our Lord's life, or cardinal doctrines of the faith—call them which we will—to be guaranteed to future ages? How was the unity of belief, which is of the essence of the Church's life, to be preserved? Here again we find exactly the same kind of warrant supplied as at the first, namely, a continuous living voice of personal witness. For the paramount obligation which the Apostles felt to be laid upon them, as the period of their own witness drew to a close, was to entrust to others, who should succeed them as fathers and teachers, the duty of handing down the creed of the early Church intact and unimpaired. Thus S. Paul, on the eve of his martyrdom, reminds Timothy, his episcopal delegate at Ephesus, of this his first duty:

'The things which thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also' (2 Tim. ii. 2).

And the method adopted by S. Paul and Timothy, which is plainly and explicitly laid down in this command, was the one method which could most effectually secure the end in view. The Rule of Faith was posited in a creed; but the creed was not necessarily written. It was handed down orally, and its guardians were the bishops in the several churches, who were on this point the ultimate court of appeal. And the line of succession of these bishops most naturally became the link which connected each local church with its apostolical origin, and at the same time both guaranteed the identity of the belief of each generation with that of the preceding, and ensured its continuity in the future. As an illustration, we may take the notable case of

S. Polycarp, bishop of Smyrna. The important position which he occupied in this connexion arises from the fact that 'in him one single link connected the earthly life of Christ with the close of the second century, though five or six generations had intervened. S. John, Polycarp, Irenaeus—this was the succession which guaranteed the continuity of the Evangelical record, and of the Apostolic testimony'¹. The case of S. Polycarp was a typical one of the value of the episcopal succession; and accordingly we find Hegippus² carefully noting the Roman succession and bringing it down to the date of the 'Memoirs' he was writing; and Irenaeus appealing to the succession of the bishops from the Apostles as the great preservative of the Catholic traditions, and the great bulwark against heresy³. He claims, too, for the teaching of these successors of the Apostles an obedient acceptance, since they received along with their episcopate the sure gift of the truth⁴.

It is clear, then, that the regularly constituted witness of a continuous personal voice in the episcopate was, as a matter of history, the method by which the unimpaired integrity of the Catholic Creed was ensured to succeeding ages. And looking back upon the constitution of the early churches, and regarding human nature as we are bound to regard it, we can see that the episcopate was the one adequate means for the preservation of the one body of truth. Amid much that was shifting and transient, the unshaken and permanent episcopal succession formed a solid phalanx of testimony all the world over.

It was not unnatural then, since all the true churches could produce the roll of their bishops down from the men

¹ Lightfoot, *Ignatius*, i. 474.

² *Apud* Euseb. *H. E.* iv. 22. I adopt Lightfoot's defence of this meaning of the passage (*Clem. Rom.* i. 154).

³ *iv.* 33. 8.

⁴ *iv.* 26. 2.

who were appointed by Apostles, and since such unbroken chains formed the security for the faithful transmission of the true faith, for Tertullian to call upon the heretics to produce their episcopal succession as the authority for their teaching. Nor was it an unfair conclusion that the impossibility of their complying with this demand proved the falsity and novelty of their doctrines. The episcopal succession was in truth a test of Catholicity, inasmuch as it formed at once the link with the past, the witness to continuity of life, and the guarantee of unity of faith.

3. Agreeably with his line of argument in this treatise, Tertullian maintains that the Scriptures are not to be made the final court of appeal in discussions with the heretics (ch. 15-19). The real question at issue begins higher up as it were; and the futility of an appeal to a literature whose text was disputed and whose meaning was distorted was obvious. Yet in other treatises (e.g. *adv. Marcion*), when discussing and refuting heresies on their merits, he does not hesitate to argue from the Scriptures, deducing their true meaning from a comparison of passages, and rejecting one-sided or heretical interpretations. This was the method which had been adopted by Irenaeus, and which was pursued with signal success in later times by Athanasius and Augustine.

The need of some recognized authoritative interpretation was clearly felt by all, and Tertullian urges that the Scriptures are to be interpreted by the consentient testimony of the Apostolic churches, because in them the true traditional exegesis will be found side by side with the true text of the sacred writings (ch. 19). His remarks on the impropriety of arguing from isolated texts in disregard of the context, or of other passages of Scripture, will be recognized as alike sound and acute (ch. 9).

The style of this treatise is far less vehement than that of the *Apology*, although instances are not wanting of Ter-

tullian's characteristic methods in polemical writing. There is the same rugged bluntness of sarcasm and harsh epigram; the same keen delight in holding up an adversary's position to ridicule; the same tendency to one-sidedness and limitation of sight in the endeavour to score a point. To Tertullian's perilous use of irony attention has been often drawn. Nowhere in his writings is it pushed to greater extremes than in the closing paragraphs of this treatise (ch. 44). But with all this the work has merits which cannot be ignored. There are passages of considerable acuteness, and the general tenour of the argument, full of earnestness and reality, is a valuable contribution to our knowledge of the methods which were found most useful in early days in rebutting heresy.

It is a very unappreciative view of the facts of the case that can dub the *DE PRAESCRIPTIONE* 'the most signal service ever rendered to religious despotism'¹. Tertullian was by no means an opponent of legitimate enquiry in the field of religious truth. What he wished to prohibit was the curious and futile speculation which treated as open questions matters upon which Revelation had spoken. Gnosticism really ignored the fact and the results of the Incarnation, and busied itself with useless questionings to which the Revelation of the WORD made FLESH had supplied the answer. It was this kind of enquiry that Tertullian inveighed against. We may admit at once that Tertullian's temperament and bent of mind did not allow him to see in any heresies those elements which undoubtedly appealed to their adherents as promising satisfaction, however delusive, to some felt spiritual need. His was not the mind to seize, nor was his the pen to point out, the advantage which the existence of heresies conferred on the Church by forcing her to consider and confront all kinds of non-Christian and semi-Christian theories, philosophical, metaphysical, and mystical. He was nevertheless keen to see the purificatory value of

¹ de Pressensé, *Early Years of Christianity*, iii. 426.

heresies as helping to weed out from the Church the unstable and unfaithful members. And this service in days of open persecution must have been of no small value.

The whole tone and character of the work shew that its author was an ardent Churchman. It is strange that any one should have been found to maintain that it was composed after Tertullian had become a Montanist¹. I have drawn attention in the notes to several anti-Montanist passages, and it may be added that, in a treatise of the nature of the *DE PRAESCRIPTIONE*, the absence of any mention of the New Prophecy would be inexplicable if it were really a Montanistic work of our enthusiastic author.

The concluding words of the treatise imply that it was written before the works against particular heresies, and in some of them it is certainly referred to. The following passages may be noted:—

De Carne Christi, 2 ‘Sed plenius eiusmodi praescriptionibus adversus omnes haereses alibi iam uti sumus.’

Adversus Hermog. 1 ‘Solemus haereticis compendii gratia de posteritate praescribere.’

Adversus Marcion, i. 1 ‘Sed alius libellus hunc gradum sustinebit adversus haereticos etiam sine retractatu doctrinarum revincendos quod hoc sint de praescriptione novitatis. Nunc quatenus admittenda congressio est, interdum, ne compendium praescriptionis ubique advocatum diffidentiae deputetur, regulam adversarii prius praetexam, ne cui lateat in qua principalis quaestio dimicatura est.’

It would hardly seem necessary to remark, had not an opposite conclusion been forced from the passage², that the use of the future tense in this last citation (*sustinebit*) is one of the commonest modes of speech by which a writer refers his readers to further sources of information. It contains no promise of a projected book as yet unwritten. Similar

¹ *E. g.* Lumper, *Hist. Theol. Crit.* vi. 2. 4.

² Lumper, *u. s.*

uses of the future tense are found, *adv. Marc.* ii. 27 'Ceterum Patrem nemini visum etiam commune *testabitur* Evangelium dicente Christo Nemo cognovit Patrem nisi Filius.' *Ib.* v. 19 'Hoc nunc *probabit* et Apostolus,' etc. And again *de Anim.* 6, 7.

It is clear, too, from a chain of internal references that the publication of the DE PRAESCRIPTIONE preceded that of the treatise against Marcion. For the *De Carne Christi*, which refers to our Treatise, is referred to *de resurrectione carnis*, ch. 2, a work which is itself mentioned, *adv. Marc.* v. 10. The date of the DE PRAESCRIPTIONE HAERETICORUM may therefore be placed soon after the Apology, probably about A.D. 198.

TEXT



The following are the authorities for the text of this treatise :—

I. Manuscripts.

1. Codex Agobardinus (*Agob.*). No. 1622 in the National Library at Paris. 'A parchment MS. of the ninth century, much mutilated. Used by Gothofred and Rigalt. Described by Oehler as 'longe omnium qui extant praestantissimus.' 'Solus enim superstes nobis liber intactus a correctione magistrorum manu.' But it is disfigured by many lacunae and clerical blunders. The best account of it is given by M. Klussmann *Curarum Tert. part. iii.*
2. Codex Leidensis (*Leid.*). A parchment MS. of the fifteenth century. Described by Oehler as 'scatena vitiis vulgaris codicum Tertulliani familiae propriis.'
3. 4. Two Florentine MSS. (*Flor.* 13, *Flor.* 55) of the fifteenth century, one of parchment and one of paper, numbered 13 and 55 in the Laurentian library. They exhibit the same type of text as Cod. Leidensis.
5. A Florentine MS. (*Magl.* 527) of the fifteenth century written on paper, numbered 527 in the Magliabechian library. 'Concordat hic corder passim cum Pithoeano, Montispessulano, videturque unus certe prae reliquis Florentinis dignus qui ab futuro aliquo editore plenius excutiat.''
6. A Florentine MS. (*Magl.* 528), No. 528 in the same library, in type and date resembling those in the Laurentian library.
7. Codex Paterniacensis (*Patern.*). A parchment MS. of uncertain date in the Rhenanian library at Schlettstadt. One of the two MSS. used by Rhenanus for his editio princeps (Basle. 1521), the other MS., Codex Hirsaugiensis, being now lost.
8. Codex Gorziensis (*Gorz.*). A MS. of the same family as the last two, but with many emendations. Used by Rhenanus for his third edition (Basle, 1539).

9. Codex Britannicus or Masburensis (*Brit.*). An unidentified MS. used by Gelenius for his edition. Basle, 1550.
10. Codex Vaticanus (*Vat.*). A MS. of a depraved type of text employed by Pamelius in his edition, Antwerp, 1579.
11. Codex Clementis (*Clem.*). An English MS., now lost, of good type, used by Pamelius. Perhaps identical with Codex Corbeiensis.
12. Codex Corbeiensis (*Corb.*). A MS. described by Ang. Mai, *Spicil. Rom.* v, 203; and identified by Oehler with the last named.

II. Editions.

- Rhenanus (*Rhen.*). Editio princeps, Basle, 1521. Based upon two MSS. only, *Patern.* and *Hirsaug.* This edition was reprinted in 1525, and a second edition, in which the text was altered and emended *from conjecture*, was published in 1528. A third edition followed in 1539, for which a new MS., *Gorz.*, was employed.
- Gangnaeus (*Gang.*). Paris, 1545. It is not known what MSS. were used for this edition.
- Gelenius (*Gel.*). Basle, 1550. Text revised with the help of 'several MSS. from various parts of Germany and France' (probably those already used by Rhenanus), and of the *Cod. Brit.*, which is described as 'longe incorruptissimus.'
- Pamelius (*Pam.*). Antwerp, 1579. This editor used three Vatican MSS. (only one, however, for the DE PRAESCR. HAER.), two Belgian, one English (*Cod. Clem.* or *Corb.*). The present division of Tertullian's works into chapters was due to Pamelius.
- Barraeus [de la Barre]. Paris, 1580. Based entirely on the editions of Gangnaeus and Gelenius.
- Franciscus Junius. Francker, 1587. Reproduced Pamelius' text.
- La Cerda. Paris, 1624-1630. Edition uncompleted. A composite text of no critical value, but illustrated with careful notes.
- Rigaltius (*Rig.*). Paris, 1634. This editor used, besides previous editions, the *Cod. Agob.*, and adopted also many conjectural emendations of Fulv. Ursinus which he mistook for MS. readings. He also employed four other MSS. Codd. Pithoei, Puteanus, Fuldensis, Divionensis—none of which however contained the DE PRAESCR. HAER., although the last of the four is cited occasionally in his notes to this and other treatises, notwithstanding that Rigalt himself omitted them from his own list of its contents.
- Semler. Halle, 1770.
- Routh. Oxford, 1840. Script. Eccles. Opuscula.

Leopold. Leipsic, 1841.

Migne. Paris, 1844. A composite text, very inaccurately printed, but with a good selection of annotations from previous editors.

Oehler. Leipsic, 1853. A very carefully edited text, with a reliable apparatus criticus, and some valuable notes.

Hurter. Innsbruck, 1880. *Sanctorum Patrum opuscula*, vol. ix.

III. Essays.

M. Klussmann. *Curarum Tert. particulae iii.* Gotha, 1887.

Van der Vliet. *Studia Eccles., Tertullianus.* Leiden, 1891.

Zeitschrift für wissenschaft. Theol. 1860, pp. 82 f., 363 f.

In editing the present text I have been able through the kindness of Professor G. Wissowa to profit by the fresh collation of *Codex Agobardinus* made by Reifferscheid for the edition of Tertullian's works in the Vienna 'Corpus.' The volume in that series containing this treatise will not appear for some time, and being unwilling to delay the printing of my own volume I the more appreciate the generous aid of Professors Wissowa and Hartel, the co-editors of Tertullian in the Vienna series.

The peculiar orthography of certain words found in *Agob.*: e.g. *temptatio*, *inconsiderato*, has been retained.

ANALYSIS



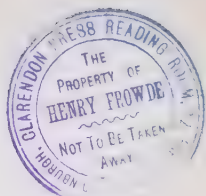
I. Introduction; ch. 1-14.

1. Heresies a necessary evil; ch. 1-7.
2. Refutation of the heretical misapplication of Christ's command, 'Seek and ye shall find;' ch. 8-12.
3. The Rule of Faith; ch. 13, 14.

II. Main 'Praescription;' ch. 15-44.

- i. 1. Heretics forbidden to use and appeal to the Scriptures in argument (ch. 15-19); because the Catholic Church is the sole possessor of the true faith and its records. And the Apostles whom Christ sent can alone be received as teachers; and the substance of their teaching can be learnt from Apostolic churches only (ch. 20, 21).
2. Consideration of heretical objections drawn from
 - (a) The alleged ignorance of the Apostles:
 - (1) Rebuke of Peter by Paul.
 - (2) Special revelations to Paul; ch. 22-24.
 - (b) The alleged non-publication of the whole Gospel by the Apostles; ch. 25-27.
 - (c) The alleged error in the Church's reception of it; ch. 27, 28.
- ii. 1. Heresies essentially of later date than the Church; their teachers lacking mission, and their followers without episcopal succession; ch. 29-34.
2. The true doctrine and the true Scriptures preserved by the Apostolic churches; ch. 35-40.
3. Description of the heretical organization and life; ch. 41-44.

III. Conclusion; ch. 45.



SYNOPSIS



CHAPTER

- I. Neither the existence nor the power of heresies should cause surprise to the faithful, since they were foretold and are necessary for the testing of faith.
- II. The power of a deadly fever causes no wonder, but precautions are taken against it: so ought heresies to be guarded against, and not wondered at, for they have power only against those who invite attack, either by foolish wonder or by weakness of faith.
- III. The lapse of apparently faithful men into heresy should not ensnare others, for instances of the fall of good men are found in Scripture, and the defection of Christians is no proof of the truth of the heretical position. The test of faithfulness is endurance to the end. Even the Lord Himself was deserted by some of His followers, and the Apostle by his converts. The Church likewise suffers similarly to her Lord.
- IV. Christ and His Apostles forewarned us against heresies and false teachers which abound in the present day and afford means whereby 'the approved' are made manifest both by brave confession and by loyalty to the truth. The Apostle's exhortation to 'prove all things' is perversely misapplied by the heretics, as though error were impossible to those who do so.
- V. Whereas the Apostle classes heresy amongst evils along with schisms and dissensions, and indeed regards it as the greater evil which explained the lesser. He exhorts to unity of speech and mind, which heresies forbid.
- VI. The same Apostle also classes heresies amongst carnal sins, and bids a heretic be rejected after one admonition,

CHAPTER

as self-condemned. He also repeatedly censures false doctrines which are the production of heresies.

The word 'heresy' is derived from a Greek word meaning 'choice,' and refers to the self-willed choice of a doctrine in opposition to the Rule handed down from Christ by His Apostles.

- VII. Heresies borrow their tenets from philosophy. Valentinus is indebted to Plato, Marcion to the Stoics, Lucanus to Epicurus, Hermogenes to Zeno, Apelles to Heraclitus, while the Gnostic denial of the Resurrection is common to all philosophers.

The same questions are discussed by heretics and philosophers: the origin of evil, of creation, of the Creator. But between the Church and philosophies of every school there is an irreconcilable antagonism.

- VIII. It is asserted, however, by heretics and by some churchmen that Christ's words 'Seek and ye shall find' justify speculation. But (1) this injunction was given at the beginning of His Ministry, before He was recognized and known: and (2) it was addressed to Jews who possessed Scriptures which proclaimed the Christ. In the same way the injunctions 'Knock, and it shall be opened to you,' 'Ask, and ye shall receive,' were addressed to the Jews who knew where to knock and from Whom to ask. It was not until the end of His Ministry that Christ gave any commands about the Gentiles. The Apostles were taught directly by the Holy Spirit, and therefore had no need to 'seek' the truth in order to 'find' it: still less is there any need of such an admonition for us who hold the Apostolic doctrine.

- IX. But even granting that the injunction was for us: the words must still be interpreted according to their context and true purport. From these it is clear that there is a definite truth revealed by Christ which the Gentiles are to believe, and that they must therefore seek in order to find it and believe it. Search leads to discovery and discovery to belief. The truth taught by Christ will be found with us.

- X. Belief, which is the goal of 'seeking and finding,' does away with the need for further search.

There is no finality in heresies, which all urge the same

CHAPTER

injunction, and one who listened to them would never arrive at any goal at all.

XI. Search implies that something has yet to be found, and on the part of a believer proves that he either never truly believed or else has lost his belief.

XII. Even supposing a continual search to be our duty, it must be carried on within the Church, and must not relate to matters which touch the Rule of Faith.

XIII. The Rule of Faith embraces a belief in One God the Creator; in the Word His Son, the Instrument of Creation and of Revelation; Who became Incarnate in the womb of the Virgin Mary, and lived as Jesus Christ; Who proclaimed a New Law and the promise of the Kingdom of Heaven, worked miracles, was crucified, rose again the third day, and ascended into Heaven, whence He sent the Holy Spirit; at Whose second Advent the resurrection of all with their bodies will take place, and the saints will enjoy eternal life, and the wicked depart into eternal condemnation.

XIV. This Faith, posited in a Creed, must remain intact, nor does it admit of speculation.

Heretics by their continual seeking prove themselves to be still in doubt, and thus, lacking belief, they have no claim to be called Christians.

They urge, however, that search is necessary even after belief for purposes of defence. So that in order to defend their belief they first deny it, for search implies lack of belief!

‘But,’ it may be said, ‘they use the Scriptures and argue from them.’

Naturally, in dealing with the Faith they use the records of the Faith.

XV. And therefore our first step is to prohibit heretics from the use of the Scriptures in argument, since the Scriptures ought only to be used by those to whom they belong.

XVI. There are two reasons for this: (1) It is the clear teaching of the Apostle Paul, 1 Tim. vi. 11, Tit. iii. 10. (2) A discussion from the Scriptures is always futile.

XVII. For heretics either mutilate the text or pervert the meaning of the Scriptures.

XVIII. And argument with such persons on such grounds will

CHAPTER

only perplex the weak brethren, for the heretics are sure to retort upon us that falsification of the Scriptures with which we charge them.

- XIX. No appeal therefore can be made to the Scriptures in arguing with heretics.

The immediate question to be settled is 'Who are the true possessors of the true Faith with its records, and by what transmission have they been handed down.' For the true Scriptures and their right interpretation will be found where the true Faith is.

- XX. Our Lord Jesus Christ taught His twelve Apostles, and sent them to teach and baptize all nations. They founded churches in every city and committed to them all the same Rule of Faith. From these churches others also obtained and are daily obtaining the same tradition. These together form the whole Church, which is one and primitive in virtue of its unity of Faith and Apostolic origin.

- XXI. Only those whom Christ sent can be received as preachers. The churches taught and founded by them have preserved the Apostolic doctrine, and all teaching which differs from this must be at once ruled to be false. We therefore limit the question to this one point: Is the Faith we have just set forth identical with that handed down by the Apostles? If it is, all deviations from it are false. Now our communion with the Apostolic churches is consequent upon our identity in doctrine with them, and witnesses to our possession of the truth.

- XXII. The heretical objections to this argument are either

- (1) that the Apostles did not know all things, or
- (2) that they practised reservation in their public teaching.

But (1) the Apostles did know all things, for Christ fully instructed them, privately expounding mysteries, and fulfilling His promise of the Spirit Who should guide them into all truth.

- XXIII. The heretics bring forward as an example of Apostolic ignorance: (a) the rebuke of Peter by Paul which, they say, implied a fuller knowledge on Paul's part. But they ought to shew that Paul introduced another Gospel, differing from that of Peter and the rest. We

CHAPTER

know, however, that Paul's Gospel was identical with Peter's and that there was a voluntary distribution of office between them, that each should preach the same Gospel but to different persons,—Peter to the Circumcision and Paul to the Gentiles. Paul's rebuke was for a fault in conduct, not in teaching.

XXIV. Yet the Apostles' conduct indeed was not necessarily the same in all cases, but was adapted to particular circumstances.

(b) Nor did the special revelations made to Paul render him superior in point of teaching to Peter, for these were by their nature ineffable.

XXV. (2) The heretical assertion that the Apostles taught some things openly to all, and other things secretly to a few is equally senseless, and involves a false interpretation of those passages in S. Paul's writings upon which it is based (1 Tim. vi. 20, 2 Tim. i. 14, ii. 2).

XXVI. The Lord's example and commands enjoined the open preaching of the Gospel in its fulness. And especially would it be fully taught to churches founded by the Apostles themselves, whose conduct would otherwise be deceitful and inconsistent.

XXVII. These two objections having been disposed of there remains yet a third: (3) the possibility of error on the part of the churches in their reception of the Apostles' teaching. This is deduced by the heretics from the rebukes administered by Paul to the Galatians and Corinthians. But the Apostle's reproof wrought amendment.

XXVIII. Let it be granted however that all the churches erred; how comes it that so many churches hit upon the same error? The very unity of their belief is evidence not of error, but of their preservation of a true tradition; and the authors of the tradition could not be in error.

XXIX. Error, no doubt, prevailed until the rise of heresies! the truth waited for the heretics to declare it! But the priority of the doctrine of the Church is evidence of its truth, for the counterfeit cannot precede, but always follows the genuine.

XXX. Marcion and Valentinus lived but a short time ago and were apostates from the Church. Apelles was a pupil of Marcion's. And this late date of heresies is proof of

CHAPTER

their falsity. Further, their works also condemn them; for the mutilation and perversion of the Scriptures is a necessarily later work than the Scriptures themselves.

New doctrines demand for their proper authentication new Apostles whose due appointment would necessitate Christ Himself coming anew and repeating His Life and Work on earth.

XXXI. Christ's parable of the Tares shews the prior sowing of the good seed and the subsequent introduction of the bad.

XXXII. If any heresies claim to date from Apostolic times, and therefore to possess an Apostolic origin, they are bound to produce, as the Apostolic churches do, the succession of their bishops from the beginning; although even if they were to fabricate such a succession it would not profit them, since they would be convicted at once by their divergence from Apostolic doctrine. And by this same test they will also be convicted by all true churches founded in later times, which are Apostolical not by foundation, but in doctrine.

XXXIII. Certain heresies did exist in Apostolic times, and were denounced. The same condemnation therefore attaches to present heresies which either existed in those days or are derived from those which did. The heretics named and condemned by the Apostles, in whose tenets present heresies share, are

- (a) Those who denied the Resurrection, 1 Cor. xv. 12 (Sadducees, Marcion, Valentinus, Apelles).
- (b) Judaizers, Gal. vi. 1 f. (Ebionites).
- (c) Those who forbade marriage, 1 Tim. iv. 3 (Marcion and Apelles).
- (d) Those who maintained that 'the Resurrection was past already,' 2 Tim. ii. 18 (Valentinians).
- (e) The framers of 'endless genealogies,' 1 Tim. i. 4 (Valentinus).
- (f) Those 'in bondage to elements,' Gal. iv. 9 (Hermogenes).
- (g) The Nicolaitans, Rev. ii. 14 (Cainites).
- (h) The deniers of the Incarnation, 1 John iv. 3 (Marcion).
- (i) The deniers of the Divinity of Jesus, 1 John ii. 22 (Ebion.).

CHAPTER

- (*k*) The practisers of sorcery and angelolatry, Coloss. ii. 18 (Simon Magus).

XXXIV. The doctrine of a second God, the Creator, was not broached before the time of Marcion, Apelles, and Valentinus, to whom first, no doubt, the truth respecting the Divine Nature was revealed! Heretics may therefore settle their particular dates for themselves. If they date from Apostolic times or have affinity with such, they share in the Apostolic condemnation; if they are not named by the Apostles, they are condemned on the ground of their late origin.

XXXV. Heretics can bring none of these objections against the faith of the Church. If they deny its truth they are bound (1) to prove it to be heresy, and therefore convicted by the same rules that convict themselves; and (2) to shew where the Truth is to be found, since it has already been established that it is not in their possession. Our doctrine is proved to be true by its being earlier than all others; and it is proved to be Apostolic from the fact that the Apostles maintained it while condemning every teaching foreign to it.

XXXVI. The Apostolic churches speak with the voices of the Apostles. There is Corinth for Achaia, Philippi for Macedonia, Ephesus for Asia, and Rome, the great Apostolic see of the West, for Italy and Africa. This church preserves that Apostolic rule and practice from which heresies have degenerated like a wild plant from the cultivated fruit-tree.

XXXVII. The truth is in our possession who hold that which the churches have handed down from the Apostles, and which the Apostles received from Christ, and Christ from God. Hence our refusal to allow the Scriptures to be used by those to whom they do not belong; for heretics are named after their own choice, not from Christ, and therefore, being non-Christians, they have no right to the Christian literature, which the Church holds in her possession by an ancient, true, and assured title.

XXXVIII. The falsification and perversion of the Scriptures were effected by the heretics when they began to teach false doctrines. The one was necessary to the other. In the

CHAPTER

Church true doctrine is found along with true Scriptures, for the Church has no reason for interpolating them. Corruptions of the text are necessarily the work of later hands, and arise from hostility to the truth. The cunning of Valentinus, who perverted the meaning, made as great havoc of the Scriptures as did the boldness of Marcion, who excised the text.

XXXIX. Similar examples of textual manipulation are found in the case of secular writings at the present day. Centos from Virgil and Homer are well known; much more readily do the Divine Writings lend themselves to perverse uses. And purposely so; since 'heresies must needs be,' yet cannot be without the Scriptures.

XL. Heretical interpretations are suggested by the devil, who even rivals the mysteries of God. Just as in idolatrous rites he counterfeits Christian ceremonies, so also has he adapted the Christian documents to the rival faith of profane heresies. Heresies therefore and idolatry have the same author, and all heresy is in a certain sense idolatry.

XLI. The conduct of heretics is, like their faith, reckless and undisciplined. They obliterate the distinction between catechumens and the baptized; they are even careless about the presence of heathen in their assemblies. They indiscriminately unite in communion with any who will attack the truth. Their women are presumptuous; their ordinations heedless; and they disregard the due distinction between priest and laic.

XLII. In the ministry of the word they can only destroy, and are unable to build up. Their internal schisms are not apparent, for schism is their bond of unity. Schism begets schism; for the same licence is claimed by the individual heretic as by the heresiarch, of fashioning his own beliefs. Hence great differences exist between the heresies and their founders. Heretics are outcast wanderers, churchless, motherless, homeless, creedless.

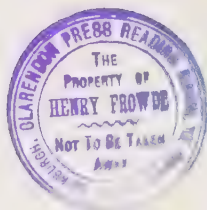
XLIII. They associate with magicians, quacks, and philosophers, justifying such conduct by the precept 'Seek and ye shall find.' Their discipline is the index to their doctrine. Denying that God is to be feared, they are naturally lax in conduct. The orderliness of the Catholic

CHAPTER

discipline is due to the fear of God and the sense of His presence.

XLIV. Our stricter discipline is a further evidence of truth which ought not to be overlooked. In the great Judgement at the Last Day will the heretics allege any lack of warning given them by Christ? Will they deserve pardon, and those who were mindful of Christ's admonition forfeit it? Can they imagine Christ speaking falsely, altering His Gospel, stultifying His own promises, owning Himself mistaken?

XLV. The argument has been conducted on a general principle applicable against all heretics, that they are to be prohibited from using the Scriptures in their discussions. If possible, certain heresies shall also be answered specifically in separate treatises.



TERTULLIANI

DE PRAESCRIPTIONE HAERETICORUM

CAPUT I.

CONDICIO praesentium temporum etiam hanc admonitionem provocat nostram, non oportere nos mirari super haereses istas, sive quia sunt; futurae enim praenuntiabantur: sive quia fidem quorundam subvertunt; ad hoc enim sunt, ut fides habendo temptationem haberet etiam probationem. 5 Vane ergo et inconsiderato plerique hoc ipso scandalizantur,

TITLE.—In the oldest MSS. (*Agob.*, *Patern.*) this treatise is entitled DE PRAESCRIPTIONE HAERETICORUM, and it is so printed in the editions of Rigalt, Migne, and Oehler. In other MSS. and ancient editions the title varies: DE PRAESCRIPTIONIBUS HAERETICORUM *Leid.*, *Flor.* 13, *Flor.* 55, *Magl.* 528, *Corb.*, *Rhen.*; DE PRAESCRIPTIONIBUS *Magl.* 527; DE PRAESCRIPTIONIBUS ADVERSUS HAERETICOS *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*

The oldest form of the title may be compared with that of the treatise DE EXHORTATIONE CASTITATIS, or of S. Cyprian's tract DE EXHORTATIONE MARTYRII, which are respectively equivalent to 'De Exhortatione ad Castitatem,' and 'De Exhortatione ad Martyrium.' The 'Praescriptio Haereticorum' is the 'Praescriptio adversus Haereticos,' a phrase which Tertullian himself uses in a passage referring to this treatise, *de carne Christi* 2 'sed plenius eiusmodi praescriptionibus adversus omnes haereses alibi iam usi sumus.'

CHAP. I.—3. praenuntiabantur. S. Matt. vii. 15; xxiv. 4, 11, 24; Acts xx. 24 f.; 1 Tim. iv. 1 f.; 2 Pet. ii. 1. Comp. 1 Cor. xi. 19, and on the question whether S. Paul was in this last passage quoting definite words of Christ, see Resch, *Agrapha*, p. 175 f.; Knowling, *Witness of the Epistles*, p. 119.

4. ut fides habendo, &c. Comp. the same thought in the *Apology*, ch. 21 'fides difficultate constat.'

6. plerique scandalizantur. S. Matt. xxiv. 10.

quod tantum haereses valeant. Quantum, si non fuissent! Cum quid sortitum est ut omnimodo sit, caussam accipit ob quam sit. Hic vim consequitur per quam sit, ne esse non possit.

CAPUT II.

FEBREM denique inter ceteros mortiferos et cruciarios
5 exitus erogando homini deputatam, neque quia est miramur,
est enim; neque quia erogat hominem, ad hoc enim est.
Proinde haereses ad languorem et interitum fidei productas,

1. Quantum, si non fuissent! 'How much power would they have, if they did not exist!' A paradox quite in Tertullian's manner. Heresies would prevail more mightily by their non-existence than by their existence, since their non-existence would overthrow the truth of Scripture. The text has the best authority, *Agob.*, *Rhen.*, *Rig.*: Quantum non valerent, si non fuissent: cum quod . . . *Gang.*, *Gel.*

2. sortitum est. Passive, as *Apol.* 2 'latronibus vestigandis per universas provincias militaris statio sortitur.'

3. Hic. 'In this case.' So *Leid.*: Haec *Agob.*, *Rig.*: Sic *reliqui*. Van der Vliet suggests Hâc or Huic.

CHAP. II.—4. denique = 'ut uno exemplo fungar.' Tertullian constantly uses this word in the sense of 'for instance,' 'in short': e.g. ch. 32 'quae denique cottidie instituuntur'; ch. 37 'quo denique, Marcion, iure'; ch. 39 'denique Hosidius Geta,' &c.; *Apol.* 1, 9, 40; *de bapt.* 10; *ad nat.* i. 5; *de coron.* 3, 10, 11. See also note *ad Scap.* 1.

5. exitus. Tertullian uses this word for the 'fall,' 'end,' 'final catastrophe,' or 'destruction.' Here of 'death,' as below, ch. 36 'Ioannis exitu'; *ad Scap.* 3 'exitus quorundam praesidium'; *adv. Iud.* 10 'Christi exitum'; *de ieiun.* 10; *Scorp.* 4, 15; *ad mart.* 6. In the sense of 'fall,' 'ruin,' *ad Scap.* 3 'exitu Byzantino'; *de res. carn.* 20, 22; *Apol.* 19 frag. 'Iliacum exitum'; *ib.* 21, 50.

erogando. *Erogare* is properly used of 'the disbursement or expenditure of money,' especially from the public treasury; *Liv.* xxii. 23 (comp. xxxiii. 47); Cicero *or. in vat.* 12; and thence generally of 'spending' or 'consuming.' In Tertullian it is often used of life exhausted or wasted, and = *destruere*, as here; *Apol.* 44, 48; *ad nat.* i. 10; *de spect.* 12; *de anim.* 51. More literally *ad mart.* 4; *Scorp.* 6 where it = *impendere*; and *de idol.* 8 where it = *consumere*: comp. *Min. Fel.* 35 'ignes Aetnae montis . . . flagrant, nec erogantur.' The subst. *erogatio* = *abrogatio*, *de idol.* 5 'erogationem legis.'

si expavescimus hoc eas posse; prius est, ut expavescamus hoc eas esse; quae dum sunt, habent posse, et dum possunt, habent esse.

Sed enim febrem ut malum, et de caussa et de potentia sua, ut notum est, abominamur potius quam miramur et, quantum 5 in nobis est, praecavimus, non habentes abolitionem eius in nostra potestate: haereses vero mortem aeternam et maioris ignis ardorem inferentes malunt quidam mirari quod hoc possint, quam devitare ne possint, cum habeant devitandi potestatem. Ceterum nihil valebunt, si illas tantum valere 10 non mirentur. Aut enim dum mirantur, in scandalum subministrantur, aut quia scandalizantur, ideo mirantur quasi quod tantum valeant ex aliqua veniat veritate. Mirum scilicet, ut malum vires suas habeat: nisi quod haereses apud eos multum valeant, qui in fide non valent. In pugna 15 pugilum et gladiatorum plerumque non quia fortis est vincit quis, aut quia non potest vinci, sed quoniam ille qui victus est nullis viribus fuit: adeo idem ille victor, bene valenti postea comparatus, etiam superatus recedit. Non aliter haereses de quorundam infirmitatibus habent quod valent, 20 nihil valentes, si in bene valentem fidem incurrant.

CAPUT III.

SOLENT quidem isti infirmiores etiam de quibusdam

II. subministrantur: 'lay themselves open to': comp. *Apol.* 39 'sua matrimonia amicis patientissime subministrant.'

14. nisi quod. Tertullian often uses *nisi quod* pregnantly; 'only there is this point to be noticed': comp. ch. 4 'nisi quod persecutio . . .'; and 'nisi' alone, ch. 8.

CHAP. III.—22. infirmiores. So *Agob., Rig.*: miriones *rel.*

de quibusdam. The preposition *de* is very variously used by Tertullian, but the exact meaning is generally obtainable from the context. Here it = *propter*, as often in African latin: comp. ch. 7 'melior de tranquillitate'; ch. 17 'de ambiguitate'; *Apol.* 18 'de sententiae communione'; *ib.* 22 'de incolatu aeris'; *adv. Marc.* v. 14. Below 'de ecclesiis' is 'in the case of churches'; ch. 21 'de mendacio,' 'on

personis ab haeresi captis aedificari in ruinam. Quare illa vel ille fidelissimi et prudentissimi et usitatissimi in ecclesia in illam partem transierunt? Quis hoc dicens non ipse sibi respondet neque prudentes neque fideles ne-
 5 que usitatos aestimandos, quos haereses potuerint demutare? Et hoc mirum, opinor, ut probatus aliqui retro postea excidat? Saul, bonus prae ceteris, livore postea evertitur. David, vir bonus secundum cor Domini, postea caedis et stupri reus est. Solomon, omni gratia et sa-
 10 pientia donatus a Domino, ad idololatriam a mulieribus inducitur. Soli enim Dei Filio servabatur sine delicto permanere. Quid ergo, si episcopus, si diaconus, si vidua,

the score of falsehood' (see note); and so ch. 34 'de aetate sola'; *Apol.* 5 'portio Neronis de crudelitate,' 'as regards cruelty.'

Frequently too *de* has an instrumental force: e.g. ch. 7 'de ingenio sapientiae secularis'; ch. 40 'expositionem delictorum de lavacro'; *Apol.* 1 'de iustitiae diligentia'; *ib.* 9, 11, 23, 50; *de spect.* 25. More often it = *ab*, *ex*: e.g. ch. 21 'de apostolorum traditione'; ch. 22 'de caelo'; chs. 23, 30; *Apol.* 21 'de Deo Deus'; *ib.* 25; *ad Scap.* 2 'de hominibus expellimus.' It is also employed with adjectives to form adverbial expressions: e.g. *Apol.* 23 'de vero,' 'de falso'; *ib.* 27; *de coron.* 7; *de spect.* 2; *de pat.* 5, 7.

1. aedificari in ruinam. Note the oxymoron, and comp. the similar ironical use of *οικοδομέω* by S. Paul, 1 Cor. viii. 10.

2. usitatissimi. So *Rhen.* (marg.), *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*, *Rig.*: vetustissimi *Agob.*, *Leid.*, *Vat.*

6. opinor. This is a favourite ironical expression in Tertullian: comp. *Apol.* 2, 9, 11, 18, 47; *ad nat.* i. 12. He uses 'plane' similarly ch. 16; *Apol.* 15, 35.

8. secundum cor Domini. 1 Sam. xiii. 14.

9. Solomon. 1 Kings xi. 1 ff.

11. sine delicto. 1 Pet. ii. 22.

12. si vidua. The Order of Widows had been instituted in the Apostolic age, 1 Tim. v. 9; and the numerous references to it in sub-apostolic writings shew that it held a position of great importance in the ecclesiastical organization of the second century. Comp. *de pudic.* 13 'prosternis in medium ante viduas, ante presbyteros'; Ignatius, *Smyrn.* 13 (see Lightfoot's note); Polyc. *ad Phil.* 4; Herm. *Vis.* ii. 4; Clem. Hom. xi. 36; Lucian. *de mort. Peregr.* 12. The Order of Widows was quite distinct from that of Deaconesses: see 1 Tim. iii. 11 (deaconesses), v. 9 (church widows); *Apost. Const.* ii. 36; iii. 7. The

si virgo, si doctor, si etiam martyr lapsus a regula fuerit, ideo haereses veritatem videbuntur obtinere? Ex personis probamus fidem, an ex fide personas? Nemo est sapiens, nemo fidelis, nemo maior, nisi Christianus; nemo autem Christianus, nisi qui ad finem usque perseveraverit. Tu, ut homo, 5 extrinsecus unumquemque nosti. Putas quod vides. Vides autem quousque oculos habes. Sed oculi, inquit, Domini alti.

status of these Widows was regarded as one of almost equal sanctity with that of Virgins; Tert. *ad uxor.* i. 4; *de virg. vel.* 10; *de exh. cast.* 1: comp. *de monog.* 2; Renan, *Les Apôt.* p. 123 f. It appears from Tertullian that they sat in a special position in the church; *de virg. vel.* 9 'sed ea auctoritate illic sedet intacta qua et virgo, ad quam sedem praeter annos sexaginta non tantum . . . nuptae aliquando eliguntur, sed et matres,' &c.; and this custom gave rise to the technical term (*sedet*) by which the length of a viduate was described: see the inscriptions cited by Martigny, *Dict. des Ant. Chrét.* p. 787.

1. si virgo. This mention of virgins in the same category with bishops, deacons, and widows, seems to shew that they were already attaining to a position in the Church akin to an 'Ordo.' Polycarp, *ad Phil.* 4 ff., similarly mentions in succession widows, deacons, virgins, presbyters.

si doctor. In the North African Church 'doctores' were Church officers, whose especial duty was the instruction of the catechumens ('auditores,' 'audientes,' *de paenit.* 6). They might be readers, deacons, or presbyters. Cyprian, *Epist.* 24 'quando cum presbyteris doctoribus lectores diligenter probaremus, Optatum inter lectores doctorem audientium constituimus.' *Pass. S. Perp.* 13 'vidimus . . . Optatum episcopum . . . et Aspasium presbyterum doctorem.' Dionys. Alex. apud Euseb. *H. E.* vii. 24 συγκαλέσας τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους καὶ διδασκάλους τῶν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ἀδελφῶν.

martyr, i. e. 'confessor': see note *ad mart.* 1.

a regula = 'a fide Catholica': see ch. 13.

3. nemo fidelis. So Agob., *Leid., Rhen.*: nisi fidelis *rel.*

4. nemo maior. This is explained by Oehler to mean 'Nemo in dignitate aliqua aut honore'; but Wordsworth (*Ch. Hist.* i. 239) conjectured that for 'maior' we should read 'magī', i. e. 'magister.'

5. qui ad finem. S. Matt. x. 22.

7. inquit, sc. 'Scriptura,' or 'instrumentum.' The citation is not found *totidem verbis*, but Tertullian has been thought to refer to 4 Esdras viii. 20: cp. Ierem. xvi. 17; xxxii. 19. It is Tertullian's habit to quote Scripture very loosely, either giving the sense or weaving together several texts. For examples, see a little below; and again

Homo in faciem, Deus in praecordia contemplatur. Et ideo contemplatur et ideo cognoscit Dominus qui sunt eius, et plantam quam non plantavit, eradicat, et de primis novissimos ostendit, et ventilabrum in manu portat ad purgandum
5 aream suam.

Avolent quantum volunt paleae levis fidei quocumque adflatu temptationum, eo purior massa frumenti in horrea Domini reponetur. Nonne ab ipso Domino quidam discentium scandalizati diverterunt? Nec tamen propterea ceteri
10 quoque discedendum a vestigiis eius putaverunt, sed qui scierunt illum vitae esse Verbum, et a Deo venisse, perseveraverunt in comitatu eius usque ad finem, cum illis, si vellent et ipsi discedere, placide obtulisset. Minus est si et apostolum eius aliqui, Phygelus, et Hermogenes, et Philetus,
15 et Hymenaeus reliquerunt; ipse traditor Christi de apostolis fuit. Miramur de ecclesiis eius, si a quibusdam deseruntur, cum ea nos ostendunt Christianos, quae patimur ad exemplum ipsius Christi. Ex nobis, inquit, prodierunt, sed non fuerunt ex nobis: si fuissent ex nobis, permansissent utique nobiscum.

ch. 7 (Coloss. ii. 8); ch. 8 (S. Luke xvi. 29; S. John xvi. 24); ch. 11; *Apol.* 33; and for other instances of untraceable quotations, Kaye, p. 300. On the relation of Tertullian's citations to the Old Latin Version see Westcott, *Canon*, p. 255.

1. Homo, &c. 1 Kings xvi. 7.

2. cognoscit, &c. 2 Tim. ii. 19.

3. plantam, &c. S. Matt. xv. 13.

8. discentium, i. e. 'discipulorum': so again chs. 20, 22, 30, et saepe; *de spect.* 30; *de bapt.* 9, 11; *de carn. Chr.* 6; *de pat.* 3. Cyprian, *Epist.* 68 'surrexit Petrus in medio discentium.' Similarly the part. 'audientes' is used substantivally and interchangeably with 'auditores,' *de paenit.* 6, &c.

13. placide obtulisset, 'calmly put before them the test question whether they too were willing to go away.' S. John vi. 67.

Minus est si. A common form of expression with Tertullian. Comp. *Apol.* 6 'parum est si'; *ib.* 21 'multum est si'; *de idol.* 7. 'It is a matter of less moment if...' The ἀποστροφή of the Apostle by a follower (2 Tim. i. 15, ii. 17) was of slight importance compared with the παράδοσις of the Saviour by an Apostle.

18. inquit, sc. 'apostolus.' 1 John ii. 19.

CAPUT IV.

QUIN potius memores simus tam dominicarum pronuntiationum quam apostolicarum litterarum, quae nobis et futuras haereses praenuntiaverunt et fugiendas praefinierunt, et sicut esse illas non expavescimus, ita et posse id, propter quod effugiendae sunt, non miremur. Instruit Dominus 5 *Mr* multos esse venturos sub pellibus ovium rapaces lupos. Quatenam istae sunt pelles ovium, nisi nominis Christiani extrinsecus superficies? Qui lupi rapaces, nisi sensus et spiritus subdoli, ad infestandum gregem Christi intrinsecus delitescentes? Qui pseudoprophetae sunt, nisi falsi praedi- 10 catores? Qui pseudoapostoli, nisi adulteri evangelizatores? Qui antichristi interim et semper, nisi Christi rebelles? Hoc sunt haereses non minus doctrinarum perversitate ecclesiam lacerantes, quam tunc antichristus persecutionum atrocitate persequetur: nisi quod persecutio et martyras 15 facit, haeresis apostatas tantum. Et ideo haereses quoque oportebat esse, ut probabiles, quique manifestarentur, tam qui in persecutionibus steterint, quam qui ad haereses non

CHAP. IV.—8. *superficies*. 'The outward profession': so *Apol.* 46; but Tertullian uses this word with considerable latitude of meaning: e. g. *Apol.* 16; *ad nat.* i. 11 = 'caput'; *de cult. fem.* ii. 1, 23 = 'an upper garment'; *adv. Val.* 24 = 'covering.'

11. *adulteri evangelizatores*, 'spurious evangelizers'; *adulter* as an adjective often bears this passive sense of 'counterfeit,' 'false': see Cyprian, *Epist.* 45 'adulterum et contrarium caput extra ecclesiam fecit' (of a schismatic bishop): so of coin, *Cod. Theodos.* ix. 22. 1; Apul. *Metam.* x. 9; and of legends, Arnob. v. 36. Comp. below, ch. 6 'adulterae doctrinae'; ch. 17 'adulter sensus' of a false exegesis.

12. *interim*, 'hitherto,' 'now': comp. note, ch. 20.

13. *Hoc*, i. e. 'Hoc tempore,' opposed to 'tunc.'

15. *nisi*, 'only there is this difference': see note, ch. 2.

martyras. Tertullian often prefers to retain and transliterate Greek inflexions in words derived from the Greek: e. g. 'haeresin,' below; 'agapen,' *ad mart.* 2; 'eremo,' *de idol.* 5.

exorbitaverint. Neque enim eos probabiles intelligi iuvat qui in haeresin fidem demutant: sicut ex diverso sibi interpretantur quia dixerit alibi Omnia examinate, quod bonum est tenete. Quasi non liceat omnibus male examinatis in
5 electionem alicuius mali impingere per errorem.

CAPUT V.

APROPHOR
PORRO, si dissensiones et schismata increpat, quae sine dubio mala sunt, et in continenti haereses subiungit. Quod malis adiungat, malum utique profitetur, et quidem maius, cum ideo credidisse se dicat de schismatibus et dissensionibus, quia sciret etiam haereses oportere esse. Ostendit enim
10 gravioris mali conspectu de levioribus se facile credidisse, certe non ut ideo de malis crediderit, quia haereses bonae essent, sed uti de peioris quoque notae temptationibus praemoneret, non esse mirandum, quas diceret tendere ad
15 probabiles quosque manifestandos, scilicet quos non potuerint depravare. Denique si totum capitulum ad unitatem continendam et separationes coercendas sapit, haereses vero non minus ab unitate divellunt, quam schismata et dissensiones; sine dubio et haereses in ea condicione reprehensionis con-

1. exorbitaverint. This is a favourite word of Tertullian's, and appropriately expresses the desertion of the defined path of safety for the trackless mazes of heresy. [*Orbita* = 'a wheel-rut'; *exorbitare* = 'to stray from the right course.'] *Adv. Marc.* iii. 2 'suspectum habebitur omne quod exorbitavit'; *de pud.* 8 'a vero lumine exorbitant': comp. Irenaeus, v. 20. 1 'haeretici, quoniam sint caeci ad veritatem, alteram et alteram ambulare exorbitantes viam.' Sidon. *Apol. Epist.* viii. 11 'a catholicae fidei regulis exorbitare.' Occasionally the verb is used actively, Sidon. *Apol. Epist.* v. 16; Tert. *Apol.* 9. For other instances of the word, see ch. 44, *Apol.* 6, 16, 20; *ad nat.* i. 13, ii. 2; *de pall.* 5: and for the subst. 'exorbitatio,' *de idol.* 8, 10; *adv. Marc.* i. 29; *de anim.* 24. iuvat, sc. 'apostolum.' *Rig.* iubet.

5. impingere. This intransitive use of *impingere* is not classical. Tertullian employs it as = *incurrere*: comp. ch. 30; *Apol.* 3 'in odium eius impingunt'; *ib.* 'caecitate odii in suffragium impingunt'; *adv. Marc.* iii. 11. Elsewhere transitively, *adv. Marc.* iv. 7, v. 16, &c.

stituit, in qua et schismata et dissensiones: ac per hoc non eos probabiles facit qui in haereses diverterint, cum maxime diverti ab eiusmodi obiurget, edocens unum omnes loqui et idipsum sapere, quod etiam haereses non sinunt.

CAPUT VI.

Nec diutius de isto, si idem est Paulus, qui et alibi 5 haereses inter carnalia crimina numerat, scribens ad Galatas; et qui Tito suggerit, hominem haereticum post primam correptionem recusandum, quod perversus sit eiusmodi et delinquat, ut a semetipso damnatus. Sed et in omni paene epistula de adulterinis doctrinis fugiendis inculcans, haereses 10 taxat. Quarum opera sunt adulterae doctrinae, haereses dictae graeca voce ex interpretatione electionis, qua quis

CHAP. V.—3. ab eiusmodi. Tertullian uses this word and ‘huiusmodi’ like substantives, constructing them with prepositions and verbs. Comp. *ad Scap.* 4; *de test. an.* 6; *de spect.* 26; *de ieiun.* 7; *de exh. cast.* 1; *de pat.* 9; *de pud.* 20; *de idol.* 13, 14, 15, 21; *de orat.* 15; *Apol.* 49.

CHAP. VI.—5. Paulus. Gal. v. 20; Titus iii. 10.

7. suggerit. *Suggestere* is not uncommonly used by Tertullian in this sense; *Apol.* 25, 27, 33; *ad Scap.* 4; and the subst. *suggestus*, *Apol.* 18 (see note); *de res. carn.* 40, 46; comp. *ad mart.* 1 ‘dictata suggesta.’

post primam correptionem. *Correptio* recurs in this sense below, ch. 16; *de pud.* 14; Iren. iv. 42. 2; Cyprian, *Epist.* 59; *Test. adv. Iud.* iii. 78. The Latin version of the New Testament used by Tertullian omitted the words ‘et alteram’: comp. Cyprian, *ad Quir.* 3, 78; *Epist.* 59; Ps.-Ambros. in *Tit.* iii. 10. Irenaeus, on the other hand, read *μετὰ μίαν καὶ δευτέραν*, with which the Syriac version known to him also agreed. His translator wavers, following the Greek text i. 9. 3, and departing from it iii. 3. 4.

12. graeca voce. *Αἵρεσις*. Tertullian defines the essential spirit of heresy, and explains it (1) etymologically as ‘self-willed choice’ in contrast with the receptive docility of the Catholic temper; (2) practically, as the wilful invention or espousal of erroneous teaching contrary to the tradition handed down by the Apostles and Apostolic Churches from Christ. Comp. chs. 14, 37; *Apol.* 47. See Gore, *Christ. Ministry*, p. 18. In *adv. Marc.* ii. 2 ‘electio’ and ‘haeresis’ are practically synonymous.

sive ad instituendas, sive ad suscipiendas eas utitur. Ideo et sibi damnatum dixit haereticum, quia et in quo damnatur sibi elegit. Nobis vero nihil ex nostro arbitrio indulgere licet, sed nec eligere quod aliquis de arbitrio suo induxerit.

5 Apostolos Domini habemus auctores, qui nec ipsi quicquam ex suo arbitrio, quod inducerent, elegerunt; sed acceptam a Christo disciplinam fideliter nationibus assignaverunt. Itaque etiamsi angelus de caelis aliter evangelizaret, anathema diceretur a nobis. Providerat iam tunc Spiritus

10 Sanctus futurum in virgine quadam Philumene angelum

3. indulgere: inducere *Pam., Rig.*, and so Isidor. *Orig.* viii. 3. 2 and Hraban-Maur, *de inst. cler.* ii. 58, in their transcriptions of this passage.

7. disciplinam: 'the teaching,' 'rule of faith,' or 'system of doctrines.' The word *disciplina* has various significations in ecclesiastical Latin. Originally referring to military discipline, it came to be applied to 'good conduct and propriety,' so *Apol.* 6, 35; or, agreeably with its derivation from *disco*, to a particular 'school of thought,' *Apol.* 3; *de res. carn.* 6; to a system of ethics, *Apol.* 46; to a system of doctrines, and especially the Christian rule of faith and practice, or to the religion of Christ absolutely, as here and chs. 19, 35; *Apol.* 7, 18, 30, 39; *ad Scap.* 1; *de spect.* 1, 3, 15; *de idol.* 14, 20, 21; and this is a very general use.

It also signifies what we mean by 'ecclesiastical discipline': see below, ch. 41; *de orat.* 19; and is applicable generally to any strict rule of life: e.g. ch. 43; *de spect.* 1; *Apol.* 2, 18; *adv. Val.* 1; *ad Scap.* 2 (patience); *de cor.* 11 (camp-life); Cyprian, *de hab. virg.* 1 (celibacy). In later times it denoted the monastic life as being 'the rule' *par excellence*; and from this signification it was an easy step to transfer it to the 'penalties' which enforced the rule; and finally to the 'instrument of castigation' itself. (Woodham's *Tertullian's Apology*, p. 18.)

8. angelus. Gal. i. 8. Hieronym. in *Epist. Gal.* ii 'Eleganter vir doctissimus Tertullianus adversus Apellem et eius virginem Philumenen, quam angelus quidam diabolici spiritus et perversus impleverat, hunc esse scribit, angelum cui multo antequam Apelles nasceretur Spiritus Sancti vaticinio sit anathema per apostolum prophetatum.'

10. Philumene. A virgin to whom Apelles attached himself, believing her to be prophetically inspired by an angel and endowed with miraculous powers. Her utterances were the source of several of his heretical tenets, and he wrote a book of 'Revelations' at her dictation. See ch. 30; *de carn. Chr.* 6 'Apelles, qui, posteaquam a

seductionis, transfigurantem se in angelum lucis, cuius signis et praestigiis Apelles inductus, novam haeresin induxit.

CAPUT VII.

HAE sunt doctrinae hominum et daemoniorum, prurientibus auribus natae de ingenio sapientiae saecularis, quam Dominus stultitiam vocans, stulta mundi in confusionem 5

disciplina Marcionis in mulierem carne lapsus, dehinc in virginem Philumenen spiritu eversus est'; *adv. Marc.* iii. 11 'nam et Philumene illa magis persuasit Apelli ceterisque desertoribus Marcionis, ex fide quidem Christum circumtulisse carnem, nullius tamen nativitatis, utpote de elementis eam mutuatum'; *de anim.* 36 'Apelles . . . haereticus ante corpora constituens animas viriles ac muliebres sicut ab Philumene didicit, utique carnem ut posteriorem ab anima facit accipere sexum.' *Comp. Euseb. H. E.* v. 13 (quoting Rhodon, a younger contemporary of Tert. and opponent of Marcion) 'Ἀπελλῆς . . . μίαν ἀρχὴν ὁμολογεῖ, τὰς δὲ προφητείας ἐξ ἀντικειμένου λέγει πνεύματος, πειθόμενος ἀποφθέγμασι παρθένου δαιμονώσης, ὄνομα Φιλουμένης. *Hippol. adv. haer.* x. 20; *Ps.-Tert. adv. haer.* 6.

angelum seductionis. The evil spirit to whose power Tertullian ascribes her miracles and legerdemain. Philumena appears to have been a clairvoyante. Bunsen, *Hippolytus*, i. 379.

1. transfigurantem. 2 Cor. xi. 14.

2. Apelles. The most famous of Marcion's disciples, born early in the second century, being an old man when Rhodon conversed with him: *Euseb. H. E.* v. 13. The charge of immorality brought against him (ch. 30; *de carn. Chr.* 6) by Tertullian was no doubt a baseless slander. Apelles rejected the dualism which was Marcion's fundamental principle, and completely subordinated the world-creator to the Supreme God. Like his master, however, he regarded the Old Testament as anti-Christian, and excised many parts of the New Testament. He seems also to have dissociated good works from right faith. See further chs. 30, 33 f.; *Ps.-Tert. adv. haer.* 6; *Hippol. vii.* 38; x. 16; Rhodon apud *Euseb. H. E.* v. 13. Tertullian wrote a tract against Apelles (*de carn. Chr.* 8) which is no longer extant, but which Harnack has attempted to reconstruct from fragments and quotations; *De Apellis Gnosis Monarchia*, Lips. 1874.

CHAP. VII.—3. doctrinae . . . daemoniorum. 1 Tim. iv. 1.

prurientibus auribus. 2 Tim. iv. 3.

4. de ingenio. On the instrumental force of *de*, see note, ch. 3. sapientiae saecularis. 1 Cor. i. 27; iii. 19.

etiam philosophiae ipsius elegit. Ea est enim materia sapientiae saecularis, temeraria interpret divinae naturae et dispositionis. Ipsae denique haereses a philosophia subornantur. Inde aeones, et formae nescio quae infinitae, 5 et trinitas hominis apud Valentinum; Platonius fuerat. Inde Marcionis deus melior de tranquillitate; a Stoicis venerat. Et ut anima interire dicatur, ab Epicureis obser-

1. *materia.* Heumann, *Acta erud.*, conjectured 'mater.'

4. *subornantur*: 'are equipped.' Comp. *Apol.* 47 'ex horum [philosophorum] semine et nostram hanc novitiolam paraturam viri quidam suis opinionibus ad philosophicas sententias adulteraverunt, et de una via obliquos multos tramites et inexplicabiles sciderunt'; *adv. Herm.* 8 'haeticorum patriarchae philosophi.'

aeones et formae. On the 'aeones et formae infinitae' of Valentinus, see below, ch. 33; *adv. Val.* 8; *Ps.-Tert. adv. haer.* 4; *Iren.* i. 5 ff.

5. *trinitas hominis.* For the 'trinitas Valentiniana' (*de anim.* 21), see *adv. Val.* 26, where the discussion of the three natures of man—*materialis, animalis, spiritalis*—is based upon *Iren.* i. i. 11.

Platonius. So again ch. 30; *de carn. Chr.* 20 'apostatae et haeretici et Platonici Valentini'; *de anim.* 18, 23.

6. *Marcionis deus melior*, i. e. not the Creator, the 'just' God, in Marcion's system, but the 'deus solius bonitatis,' ch. 34. Marcion denied the unity of the First Principle, and postulated two ἀρχαί or ruling powers. These were a Supreme God of pure benevolence who was unknown to man until revealed by Christ; and a just or severe God, the Creator of the visible universe, the God of the Old Testament. Comp. *adv. Marc.* i. 2; *Iren.* i. 25; *Hippol. adv. haer.* x. 19; *Ps.-Tert. adv. haer.* 6 (see note).

de tranquillitate. On *de* = *propter*, see note, ch. 3.

a *Stoicis.* So again ch. 30; but the idea more nearly approaches the gods of Epicurus than of the Stoics: comp. *Theoph. ad Aut.* ii. 4. Tertullian confuses the Stoics and Epicureans, *Apol.* 47. 'De tranquillitate,' however, is used here in contrast to the mundane activity of the Creator, since Marcion's 'higher God' neither concerned himself with mankind nor was known to them. Neander (*Anti-gnost.*, Bohn, ii. 433) remarks upon the strange error of tracing Marcion's notion of the good God back to the Stoic ἀπάθεια.

7. *ut anima interire dicatur.* The peculiar heresy of Marcion's disciple Lucanus; *de res. carn.* 2 'Lucanus, nec huic quidem substantiae [i. e. 'animae'] parcens, quam secundum Aristotelem dissolvens aliud

vatur. Et ut carnis restitutio negetur, de una omnium philosophorum schola sumitur. Et ubi materia cum Deo aequatur, Zenonis disciplina est: et ubi aliquid de igneo deo allegatur, Heracletus intervenit. Eadem materia apud haereticos et philosophos volutatur, idem retractatus impli- 5 cantur: unde malum et quare? et unde homo, et quomodo? et, quod proxime Valentinus proposuit, unde Deus? scilicet de enthymesi et ectromate.

quid pro eo subicit, tertium quidam resurrecturus, neque anima neque caro, id est non homo sed ursus qua Lucanus.' Comp. Ps.-Tert. *adv. haer.* 6; Philast. 46; Epiphan. *Haer.* xliii; Orig. *c. Cels.* ii. 27; Hippol. vii. 37.

ab Epicureis: comp. *de res. carn.* 1 'nihil esse post mortem Epicuri schola est.'

2. sumitur. The resurrection of the flesh was of all Christian doctrines the one most derided by pagan philosophers: *Apol.* 48; *de res. carn.* 1: comp. August. *de civ. Dei* xxii. 20; *in Ps.* 88. 2.

3. Zenonis disciplina. Diog. Laert. vii. 148 οὐσίαν δὲ θεοῦ Ζήνων μὲν φησι τὸν ὅλον κόσμον, καὶ τὸν οὐρανόν. The eternity of matter was a tenet of Hermogenes, *adv. Herm.* 4.

4. Heracletus: comp. *Apol.* 47; Diog. Laert. ix. 7 ἐκ πυρὸς τὰ πάντα συνεστάναι καὶ εἰς τοῦτο ἀναλύεσθαι; and of Plato, *ib.* iii. 74 θεοὺς μὲν οὖν ἔχειν τὸ πολλὸν πορίους. Tertullian refers to the fiery god or angel, the Creator and Old Test. deity of Apelles' system. See ch. 34; *de carn. Chr.* 8; *de anim.* 23; Ps.-Tert. *adv. haer.* 6. Apelles' notion was no doubt derived from the angel in the fiery bush, *Exod.* iii. 2.

5. retractatus, 'the same subjects of consideration are involved.' *Retractatus* is a word almost peculiar to Tertullian, who uses it in the sense of 'consideration' or 'reconsideration.' *Apol.* 4, 11; *de spect.* 11; *de res. carn.* 2; *adv. Prax.* 2, 11; *adv. Herm.* 33.

8. de enthymesi. 'Ενθύμησις was the 'Animatio' or 'desire' of the ἄνω Σοφία in the Valentinian system, and, being a formless abortion, ἔκτρωμα, was driven forth from the Pleroma. Having at length been endowed with form (μόρφωσις κατ' οὐσίαν) by the pity of the ἄνω Χριστός, her emotions on failing to gain admission to the Pleroma gave birth to various kinds of existences, from one of which came the Demiurge, the God of mankind. See ch. 34; *adv. Val.* 9 ff.; *Iren.* i. 1. 2 ff.; Hippol. vi. 31; Ps.-Tert. *adv. haer.* 4.

ectromate. Hieronym. *Comment. in Amos.* iii. 9 ff. 'Samaria refertur ad haereticos qui custodes mandatorum Dei esse se mentiuntur . . . dum unusquisque fingit quod voluerit et adorat figmentum suum,

Miserum Aristotelem! qui illis dialecticam instituit, artificem struendi et destruendi, versipellem in sententiis, coactam in coniecturis, duram in argumentis, operariam contentionum, molestam etiam sibi ipsi, omnia retractantem,
 5 ne quid omnino tractaverit.

Hinc illae fabulae et genealogiae interminabiles, et quaestiones infructuosae, et sermones serpentes velut cancer; a quibus nos apostolus refrenans nominatim philosophiam contestatur caveri oportere, scribens ad Colossenses: Videte
 10 ne qui sit circumveniens vos per philosophiam et inanem seductionem, secundum traditionem hominum, praeter providentiam Spiritus Sancti. Fuerat Athenis, et istam sapientiam humanam, affectatricem et interpolatricem veritatis, de congressibus noverat, ipsam quoque in suas haereses multi-
 15 partitam varietate sectarum invicem repugnantium.

Quid ergo Athenis et Hierosolymis? quid academiae et

ut Marcion bonum deum et otiosum, ut Valentinus *αἰῶνας* triginta et extremum Christum quem appellat *ἐκτρώμα*, id est, abortivum, ut Basilides qui omnipotentem Deum portentoso nomine appellat *ἄβραξας*.¹

6. genealogiae interminabiles. 1 Tim. i. 4; Titus iii. 9; 2 Tim. ii. 17, 23; comp. ch. 33; *adv. Val.* 3.

9. ad Colossenses. Coloss. ii. 8.

14. congressibus, 'argumentative encounters': so again ch. 18 'scripturarum congressum'; *de carn. Chr.* 21; *de res. carn.* 55: it is used of judicial contests, Quint. iii. 6. 4. The verb and the allied subst. *congressio* frequently bear this sense: e. g. chs. 15, 26; *Apol.* 25, 46; *de test. an.* 4.

16. Quid ergo Athenis et Hieros.: comp. *Apol.* 46. Such passages as these characteristically mark the attitude of isolation into which the Carthaginian school of apologists forced Christianity as regards the main streams of human thought in the past. The rigid divorce here insisted on between the Church's creed and pagan philosophy may of course be strictly and rightly maintained from one point of view; but the narrowness of vision which made this point of view the central, if not the only one, to the exclusion of any larger and more sympathetic insight into the value of non-Christian systems, contrasts unfavourably with the wiser and more comprehensive spirit of the Alexandrian apologists.

ecclesiae? quid haereticis et Christianis? Nostra institutio de porticu Solomonis est, qui et ipse tradiderat Dominum in simplicitate cordis esse quaerendum. Viderint qui Stoicum et Platonicum et dialecticum Christianismum protulerunt. Nobis curiositate opus non est post Christum Iesum, nec 5 inquisitione post evangelium. Cum credimus, nihil desideramus ultra credere. Hoc enim prius credimus, non esse quod ultra credere debeamus.

CAPUT VIII.

VENIO itaque ad illum articulum quem et nostri prae-
tendunt ad ineundam curiositatem, et haeretici inculcant 10
ad importandam scrupulositatem. Scriptum est, inquit,

1. quid haereticis et Christianis? Tertullian denies the name of Christian to heretics, ch. 14 'cum autem nondum crediderunt, non sunt Christiani': cp. chs. 16, 37.

2. de porticu Solomonis = 'de Christo et apostolis.' S. John x. 23; Acts iii. 2, v. 12. The implied contrast is the Porch of Zeno.

in simplicitate. Wisdom i. 1.

3. Viderint. This elliptical expression is of very frequent occurrence in Tertullian: e.g. *ad Scap.* 4; *de cor.* 2, 13; *de test. an.* 1; *de spect.* 7, 15; *de idol.* 7, 11; *adv. Val.* 9; *Pass. S. Perpet.* 1. It may often be idiomatically rendered, as here and ch. 11, 'Away with . . . !' or, as *Apol.* 16, 25, 43 'No matter that . . .': comp. Min. Fel. 38; Cyprian. *de hab. virg.* 3; Cicero, *epist. ad Att.* xii. 21. 1.

5. curiositate. A rare word (found however in Cicero, Gellius, and Macrobius), the significations of which vary as greatly as those of its English derivative. Here it means 'inquisitive speculation,' 'curious inquiry,' and so chs. 14, 30, 43. In ch. 40 it denotes 'fantastic quaintness'; *Apol.* 18 'rarity,' 'curiousness'; *ib.* 25 'superstitious assiduity,' and so *de test. an.* 1; but *Apol.* 47 'meddlesome fancy.'

CHAP. VIII.—9. articulum. Properly in rhetoric *articulus* = 'a simple sentence,' Cornif. iv. 26; here more generally, 'a clause,' as in *Digest* xxxvi. 1. 27; or better still, 'the cardinal point,' 'the test question,' as in Arnob. vii. 39 'ventum est ergo . . . ad ipsum articulum caussae, ventum rei ad cardinem, ventum veram atque adiunctissimam quaestionem.' Below, ch. 10 'in tribus articulis' = 'in three points, or divisions.'

11. scrupulositatem. This use of *scrupulositas* corresponds with

Quaerite, et invenietis. Quando hanc vocem Dominus emisit, recordemur. Puto in primitiis ipsis doctrinae suae, cum adhuc dubitaretur apud omnes, an Christus esset; cum adhuc nec Petrus illum Dei Filium pronuntiasset; cum
 5 etiam Ioannes de illo certus esse desisset. Merito ergo tunc dictum est, Quaerite et invenietis, quando quaerendus adhuc erat qui adhuc agnitus non erat.

Et hoc quantum ad Iudaeos. Ad illos enim pertinet totus sermo suggillationis istius, qui habebant ubi quaererent
 10 Christum. Habent, inquit, Moysen et Heliam, id est legem et prophetas Christum praedicantes: secundum quod et alibi aperte, Scrutamini scripturas, in quibus salutem speratis, illae enim de me loquuntur. Hoc erit, Quaerite et invenietis.

15 Nam et sequentia in Iudaeos competere manifestum est, Pulsate et aperietur vobis. Iudaei retro penes Deum fuerant, dehinc eiecti ob delicta, extra Deum esse coeperunt.

that in *Apol.* 47, where it refers to that restless spirit of the philosophers which introduced doubts, hesitations, and uncertainties into every subject with which they concerned themselves. The same habit of the heretics is described by the same word below in ch. 27.

Scriptum est. S. Matt. vii. 7; S. Luke xi. 9,

2. primitiis, lit. 'first-fruits'; but here = 'principiis,' as in *Apul. Metam.* x. 12; xi. 23.

4. Petrus. S. Matt. xvi. 16.

5. Ioannes. S. Matt. xi. 2; S. Luke xii. 18 f.; comp. *adv. Marc.* iv. 18; *de bapt.* 10: and for other patristic interpretations of S. John's question see *Orig. Hom.* 27 in *Luc.*, Chrysostom, Hilary, Augustine, Jerome in *Matt. l. c.*; and Ambros. *de fid.* iv. 1. 4; these passages are collected in *Libr. Fath.* ad loc.

9. suggillationis, lit. 'a black and blue bruise'; hence 'an insult,' 'taunt,' 'reproach,' or as here 'stern admonition': see *Apol.* 11; *de carn. Chr.* 24; *de res. carn.* 16; and for the verb 'suggillare' as a strong substitute for 'notare,' 'to brand with censure,' 'ridicule,' see below, chs. 23, 33; *Apol.* 4, 59; *adv. Val.* 6; *adv. Marc.* iv. 34.

10. Moysen et Heliam. S. Luke xvi. 29. An instance of careless quotation. For the idea, comp. *adv. Marc.* iv. 34.

12. Scrutamini. S. John v. 39.

16. Pulsate et aperietur vobis. S. Matt. vii. 7.

Nationes vero nunquam penes Deum, nisi stillicidium de situla, et pulvis ex area et foris semper. Ita qui foris semper, quomodo pulsabit eo, ubi nunquam fuit? quam ianuam novit, in qua nec receptus, nec eiectus aliquando? an qui scit se intus fuisse et foras actum, is potius pulsavit, 5 et ostium novit?

Etiam Petite et accipietis ei competit, qui sciebat a quo esset petendum, a quo et erat aliquid repromissum, a Deo scilicet Abraham, Isaac et Iacob, quem nationes non magis noverant quam ullam repromissionem eius. Et ideo ad 10 Israël loquebatur: Non sum, inquit, missus, nisi ad oves perditas domus Israël. Nondum canibus iactarat panem filiorum: nondum in viam nationum ire mandabat. Si quidem in fine praecepit, vaderent ad docendas et tingendas nationes; consecuturi innox Spiritum Sanctum Paracletum, 15 qui illos deducturus esset in omnem veritatem. Et hoc ergo

1. nisi. See note, ch. 2.

stillicidium, i. e. 'stilla,' 'gutta'; comp. *de spect.* 27 'stillicidia mellis'; *ad. nat.* ii. 2 'de stillicidio . . . veritatis.' Isa. xl. 15 'Ecce gentes quasi stilla situlae, et quasi momentum staterae reputatae sunt: ecce insulae quasi pulvis exiguus' (Vulg.).

2. Ita qui. *Agob.*, I . . . qui: Itaque *Leidl.*, *Rhen.*: Itaque qui *rel.*

5. an = annon.

7. Petite et accipietis. S. John xvi. 24. Tertullian frequently confuses this verse with Matt. vii. 7 (Luke xi. 9), which he evidently meant to quote here. See *de bapt.* 20; *de orat.* 10; *Pass. S. Perp.* 19 (Robinson's ed., pp. 49, 88).

10. ad Israël. S. Matt. xv. 24 f.; x. 5; xxviii. 19.

14. tingendas, i. e. 'baptizandas.' This technical sense frequently attaches to *tingere*: chs. 20, 29, 40; *de res. carn.* 47 (quoting Rom. vi. 3); *adv. Prax.* 26; *de bapt.* passim.

15. Paracletum. S. John xvi. 13.

16. deducturus esset. 'Deductor (= καθήγητής) is a common epithet of the Holy Spirit in Tertullian's writings: e. g. *de fug.* 1 'Paracletum deductorem omnis veritatis: *ib.* 14; *de cor.* 4; *adv. Prax.* 2; but *Apol.* 21, of the Son of God, 'Illuminator atque Deductor generis humani.'

ergo illo. So *Agob.*, *Leidl.*, *Rig.*: erga illos *Rhen. emend.* Heumann would emend 'Et hoc erga illos si vacat qui nationibus. . .'

illo facit. Quod si nationibus destinati doctores apostoli, ipsi quoque doctorem consecuturi erant Paracletum, multo magis vacabat erga nos, Quærite et invenietis : quibus ultro erat obventura doctrina per apostolos, et ipsis apostolis per
 5 Spiritum Sanctum. Omnia quidem Domini dicta omnibus posita sunt, quæ per aures Iudæorum ad nos transierunt. Sed pleraque in personas directa, non proprietatem admonitionis nobis constituerunt, sed exemplum.

CAPUT IX.

CEDO nunc sponte de gradu isto. Omnibus dictum sit,
 10 Quærite et invenietis; tamen et hic expetit sensus certare cum interpretationis gubernaculo. Nulla vox divina ita dissoluta est et diffusa, ut verba tantum defendantur, et ratio verborum non constituatur.

2. multo magis vacabat, 'much more was this admonition, "Seek and ye shall find," superfluous for us.'

7. in personas, 'against particular classes of persons,' like the Jews or various Jewish sects.

CHAP. IX.—9. Cedo . . . de gradu. The metaphor is that of the arena, 'gradus' being the position or ground occupied by each combatant; comp. ch. 15 'gradum obstruimus'; *Apol.* 27; *de virg. vel.* 15; *de res. carn.* 2, 48; *adv. Marc.* i. 1 'alius libellus hunc gradum sustinebit adversus hæreticos; iv. 6 'gradum alium inire'; *Scorp.* 8 'gradum insistimus.'

10. expetit, 'one desires to determine the sense in accordance with a true canon of interpretation.' Comp. *Iren.* ii. 46; iii. 38. 2. 'Gubernaculo' is like 'disciplina rationis' below, 'the strict rule of reason' or 'the teaching of the real drift of the words.' Tertullian plainly rejects a narrow literalism in the interpretation of Scripture, and in his censure of the neglect of the context he is followed by Cyprian, *de unit. eccl.* 12 'Corruptores evangelii atque interpretes falsi extrema ponunt et superiora pretereunt partis memores et partem subdole comprimentes; ut ipsi ab ecclesia scissi sunt, ita capituli unius sententiam scindunt.'

12. defendantur, 'are to be brought forward in argument,' a Ciceronian use of *defendere*.

ratio verborum, 'the true purport or drift of the words.' *Ratio* is the principle underlying the letter of an expression.

Sed in primis hoc propono: unum itaque et certum aliquid institutum esse a Christo, quod credere omnimodo debeant nationes, et idcirco quaerere, ut possint, cum invenerint credere. Unius porro et certi instituti infinita inquisitio non potest esse: quaerendum est donec invenias, et creden- 5 dum ubi inveneris; et nihil amplius, nisi custodiendum quod credidisti, dum hoc insuper credas, aliud non esse credendum, ideoque nec requirendum, cum id inveneris et credideris, quod ab eo institutum est, qui non aliud tibi mandat inqui- rendum, quam quod instituit. 10

De hoc quidem si quis dubitat, constabit penes nos esse id, quod a Christo institutum est. Interim ex fiducia probationis praevenio admonens quosdam, nihil esse quae- rendum ultra quae crediderunt id esse quod quaerere debue- runt: ne, Quaerite et invenietis, sine disciplina rationis 15 interpretentur.

CAPUT X.

RATIO autem dicti huius in tribus articulis constitit: in re, in tempore, in modo. In re, ut quid sit quaerendum con- sideres: in tempore, ut quando: in modo, ut quousque. Igitur quaerendum est quod Christus instituit, utique quam- 20 diu non invenis, utique donec invenias. Invenisti autem cum credidisti. Nam non credidisses, si non invenisses; sicut nec quaesisses, nisi ut invenires. Ad hoc ergo quaerens, ut invenias, et ad hoc inveniens ut credas. Omnem prolationem quaerendi et inveniendi credendo fixisti. Hunc tibi modum 25 statuit fructus ipse quaerendi. Hanc tibi fossam determi-

4. porro. Like atquin,' *'atenim,'* ἄλλὰ γάρ, 'but surely': comp. *Apol.* 9, 23, 25, 37; *ad nat.* i. 2, 3, 4, 8; ii. 2, 3, 4, 5.

12. Interim. See note, ch. 20.

15. sine disciplina rationis, 'without strict regard to the real purport of the injunction.'

CHAP. X.—17. articulis. See note, ch. 8.

26. fossam, 'terminus, limit.' A figure of speech borrowed from camp-life: *fossa* answers to the *vallum* beyond which the soldiers were not allowed to pass.

navit ipse, qui te non vult aliud credere, quam quod instituit, ideoque nec quaerere.

Ceterum si, quia et alia tanta ab aliis sunt instituta, propterea in tantum quaerere debemus in quantum possumus
 5 invenire, semper quaerimus, et nunquam omnino credimus. Ubi enim erit finis quaerendi? ubi statio credendi? ubi expunctio inveniendi? Apud Marcionem? sed et Valentinus proponit, Quaerite et invenietis. Apud Valentinum? sed et Apelles hac me pronuntiatione pulsabit, et Hebion, et
 10 Simon, et omnes ex ordine non habent aliud quo se mihi insinuantes me sibi addicant. Ero itaque nusquam, dum ubique convenio, Quaerite et invenietis, et velut si nusquam; quasi qui nunquam apprehenderim illud, quod Christus instituit, quod quaeri oportet, quod credi necesse est.

CAPUT XI.

15 IMPUNE erratur, nisi delinquatur, quamvis et errare delinquere est: impune, inquam, vagatur, qui nihil deserit. At

3. tanta, for 'tot,' as very frequently in African writers. *Apol.* I, 40, 50; *adv. Marc.* ii. 5; *de idol.* 6, 8; *de spect.* 29; *ad Scap.* 4, 5; *de anim.* 30; *Apul. Metam.* vii. 9. So 'quanti' for 'quot,' *ad Scap.* 4, 5; *adv. Marc.* i. 7.

6. statio, 'the resting-place.' The idea is either that of the stations on the great roads at which travellers found refreshment, or that of the anchorage of a ship in the desired haven (*Verg. Georg.* iv. 421; *Aen.* ii. 23; *Livy* x. 2; xxviii. 6). The latter notion best suits the context, since belief is the goal or terminus of search. Contrast the technical ecclesiastical meaning of 'statio,' 'sentry day,' *de cor.* 11, the church vigils borrowing the name of the military watch.

7. expunctio, i.e. 'consummatio'; so *de idol.* 16; *de iei.* 10. Tertullian uses *expungere* in the sense of *perficere*, *Apol.* 15, 21, 35; *ad nat.* i. 7; *de orat.* 9; *de res. carn.* 41.

9. Hebion et Simon. See notes, ch. 33.

12. et velut si nusquam. There are several variants here. The text (*Rig., Oehler*), 'just as if I were nowhere,' and *Rhen., Gang.* 'et velint sic nusquam' (*Pam.* 'et velint me esse sic nusquam'), 'and they, the heretics, wish me to be thus nowhere,' give equally appropriate meanings. *Leid., Gel.* 'et velim sic nusquam'; *Agob.* 'et velim si nusquam.' Heumann believed the words to be an interpolation.

enim si quod debui credere credidi, et aliud denuo puto
 requirendum; spero utique et aliud esse inveniendum; nullo
 modo speraturus istud, nisi quia aut non credideram qui
 videbar credidisse, aut desii credidisse. Ita fidem meam
 deserens, negator invenior. Semel dixerim, Nemo quaerit, nisi 5
 qui aut non habuit, aut perdidit. Perdiderat unam ex decem
 drachmis anus illa, et ideo quaerebat; ubi tamen invenit,
 quaerere desiit. Panem vicinus non habebat, et ideo pulsabat:
 ubi tamen apertum est ei et accepit, pulsare cessavit. Vidua
 a iudice petebat audiri, quia non admittebatur: sed ubi audita 10
 est, hactenus institit. Adeo finis est et quaerendi et pulsandi
 et petendi. Petenti enim dabitur, inquit, et pulsanti aperi-
 etur, et quaerenti invenietur. Viderit qui quaerit semper, quia
 non invenit: illic enim quaerit, ubi non invenietur. Viderit
 qui semper pulsatur, quia nunquam aperiatur: illuc enim 15
 pulsatur, ubi nemo est. Viderit qui semper petit, quia nun-
 quam audietur: ab eo enim petit, qui non audit.

CAPUT XII.

NOBIS etsi quaerendum est adhuc et semper, ubi tamen
 quaeri oportet? Apud haereticos, ubi omnia extranea et
 adversaria nostrae veritati, ad quos vetamur accedere? 20
 Quis servus cibaria ab extraneo, ne dicam ab inimico domini
 sui, sperat? Quis miles ab infoederatis, ne dicam ab hostibus
 regibus, donativum et stipendium captat, nisi plane desertor

CHAP. XI.—5. *negator*. A post-class. word. It recurs below,
 ch. 14; *de res. carn.* 39 'respuens negatores eius Sadducaeos.' The
 fem. *negatrix* occurs *de idol.* 23.

7. *anus illa*. S. Luke xv. 8; xi. 5; xviii. 2 ff.

10. *admittebatur*. The technical word for 'granting an audience':
 Cicero, *Ep. ad Att.* xiii. 52; *de offic.* i. 39; Sueton. *Aug.* 52, 79.

11. *hactenus*, i. e. 'non ultra,' 'nunquam posthac.' This is Ter-
 tullian's ordinary use of the word: comp. *de test. an.* 1; *de res. carn.*
 58; *de pall.* 2; *de iei.* 10; *de exhort. cast.* 1; *adv. Herm.* 34.

12. *inquit*: sc. 'Dominus.' S. Luke xi. 10.

13. *Viderit*. See note, ch. 7.

et transfuga et rebellis? Etiam anus illa intra tectum suum drachmam requirebat: etiam pulsator ille vicini ianuam tundebat: etiam vidua illa non inimicum, licet durum, iudicem interpellabat. Nemo inde instrui potest, unde
5 destruitur: nemo ab eo illuminatur, a quo contenebratur. Quaeramus ergo in nostro, et a nostris, et de nostro: idque dumtaxat quod, salva regula fidei, potest in quaestionem devenire.

CAPUT XIII.

REGULA est autem fidei, ut iam hinc quid defendamus
10 profiteamur, illa scilicet qua creditur unum omnino Deum esse nec alium praeter mundi conditorem, qui universa de nihilo produxerit per Verbum suum primo omnium demissum: id Verbum Filium eius appellatum, in nomine Dei varie visum a patriarchis, in prophetis semper auditum, postremo

CHAP. XII.—4. *interpellabat*. This word appears to be used technically, like ‘interpellatio,’ Digest v. 1, 23; i. 16, 188, of ‘appealing to a judge.’ Comp. *ad Scap.* 3.

CHAP. XIII.—9. *Regula . . . fidei*. Comp. *de virg. vel.* 1; *adv. Prax.* 2; *Apol.* 17, 21; Irenaeus i. 10; iv. 26.

12. *demissum*. So *Agob.*, *Rig.*: ‘emissum’ *reliqui*. It is not clear whether Tertullian intends by this phrase the Eternal Generation of the Son, or His going forth to create the world. Either reading, ‘demissum’ or ‘emissum,’ would suit the latter interpretation, but neither is a strictly technical expression for the former, although Tertullian’s language in other passages is somewhat similar: e.g. *Apol.* 21 ‘Hunc ex Deo prolatum didiscimus et prolatione generatum’; *adv. Prax.* 2, 7. The technical defects in such phraseology, viewed, that is, in the light of subsequent definition, are compensated by the contexts in these and other passages, which assert in unmistakable terms the coeternity and coessentiality of the Son with the Father: e.g. *adv. Prax.* 8 ‘Sermo in Patre semper, . . . nunquam separatus a Patre’; *ib.* 4 ‘Filium non aliunde deduco sed de substantia Patris’; *ib.* 6. 19; *Apol.* 21 ‘Filium Dei et Deum dictum ex unitate substantiae.’

14. *visum a patriarchis*. This was the general view of the ante-

delatum ex spiritu Patris Dei et virtute in virginem Mariam, carnem factum in utero eius, et ex ea natum egisse Iesum Christum: exinde praedicasse novam legem, et novam promissionem regni caelorum, virtutes fecisse, cruci fixum, tertia die resurrexisse; in caelos ereptum sedisse ad dexteram 5 Patris; misisse vicariam vim Spiritus Sancti, qui credentes agat; venturum cum claritate ad sumendos sanctos in vitae aeternae et promissorum caelestium fructum, et ad profanos iudicandos igni perpetuo, facta utriusque partis resuscitatione cum carnis restitutione. Haec regula a Christo, ut 10 probabitur, instituta nullas habet apud nos quaestiones, nisi quas haereses inferunt, et quae haereticos faciunt.

CAPUT XIV.

CETERUM manente forma eius in suo ordine, quantum libet quaeras et tractes et omnem libidinem curiositatis effundas, si quid tibi videtur vel ambiguitate pendere, vel 15 obscuritate obumbrari. Est utique frater aliqui doctor gratia scientiae donatus: est aliqui inter exercitatos conversatus,

Nicene, or, rather, prae-Augustinian fathers: Just. Mart. *Dial.* 56, 59, 61; Tert. again *adv. Prax.* 13; *adv. Marc.* ii. 27; iii. 9; Iren. iii. 6. 1; iv. 7. 4; Clem. Alex. *Paed.* i. 7; Theoph. *ad Autol.* ii. 31; Cypr. *adv. Iul.* ii. 5 f.; Cyril Ier. *Catech.* 10. After this view had been turned to Arian purposes Augustine (*de Trin.* iii. 11) maintained that 'the Theophanies were not direct appearances of a Person in the Godhead, but self-manifestations of God through a created being.' Liddon, *Bampton lect.* p. 58. Comp. Athanas. *de conc. Arim.* apud Lib. Fath. p. 120, note g.

2. *egisse*, 'lived and acted as Jesus Christ.' 'Egisse' is the reading of *Agob.*, *Leid.*, *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Rig.*; and *agere* is thus used *Apol.* 10, 37; *de exh. cast.* 7. 'Exisse' was the conjecture of *Fulv. Ursinus*, and is adopted by *Oehler*.

4. *virtutes* = *δυνάμεις*, 'miracula': so below, chs. 20, 29, 30, 44; *Apol.* 18 (of the miracles of O. T. prophets).

9. *utriusque partis*, i. e. 'sanctorum atque profanorum.'

CHAP. XIV.—16. doctor. See note, ch. 3.

aliqui tecum curiosus, tecum tamen quaerens novissime ignorare [te] melius sciet, ne quod non debeas noris, quia quod debeas nosti. Fides, inquit, tua te salvum fecit, non exercitatio scripturarum. Fides in regula posita est: habet legem, et
 5 salutem de observatione legis: exercitatio autem in curiositate consistit, habens gloriam solam de peritiae studio. Cedat curiositas fidei, cedat gloria saluti. Certe aut non obstrepant, aut quiescant. Adversus regulam nihil scire omnia scire est.

10 Ut non inimici essent veritatis haeretici, ut de refugiendis eis non praemoneremur, quale est conferre cum hominibus qui et ipsi adhuc se quaerere profiteantur? Si enim adhuc vere quaerunt, nihil adhuc certi repererunt: et ideo quaecumque videntur interim tenere, dubitationem suam ostendunt, quamdiu quaerunt. Itaque tu, qui perinde quaeris, spectans ad eos qui et ipsi quaerunt, dubius ad dubios, incertus ad incertos, caecus a caecis in foveam deducaris necesse est.

Sed cum decipiendi gratia praetendant se adhuc quaerere,
 20 ut nobis per sollicitudinis iniunctionem tractatus suos insinuent: denique ubi adierunt ad nos statim quae dicebant quaerenda esse defendant, iam illos sic debemus refutare, ut

1. novissime, i. e. 'postremo,' as below, ch. 20; *adv. Prax.* 27; *ad mart.* 4. Routh and others have understood it as a vocative, 'Thou newest of novices'; but this seems a very forced interpretation.

ignorare [te] melius sciet. I have adopted Oehler's emendation, 'sciet' for 'est,' which is read in all MSS. and edd. But see *Van der Vliet*, p. 50, who criticizes *Oehler* and prefers to emend thus: '[aliqui] tecum curiosius, tecum tamen [te] quaerentem nov. ign. melius erit. . . .'

3. Fides. S. Luke xviii. 42.

11. quale est. See note, ch. 29.

13. certi. *Agob.* 'certe.'

14. interim. See note, ch. 20.

17. caecus. S. Matt. xv. 14.

20. tractatus, 'treatment of questions,' something like 'retractatus,' ch. 7; scarcely 'homilies,' 'compositions.' The word is used of 'discussions' by Cyprian, *Epist.* iii. 3; comp. *Digest* xvii. 2. 32.

22. refutare. *Agob., Rig.* 'reputare.'

sciant nos non Christo, sed sibi negatores esse. Cum enim quaerunt adhuc, nondum tenent: cum autem non tenent, nondum crediderunt: cum autem nondum crediderunt, non sunt Christiani. At cum tenent quidem et credunt, quaerendum tamen dicunt ut defendant: antequam defendant, 5 negant quod confitentur se nondum credidisse, dum quaerunt. Qui ergo nec sibi sunt Christiani, quanto magis nobis? qui per fallaciam veniunt, qualem fidem disputant? cui veritati patrocinantur, qui eam a mendacio inducunt? Sed ipsi de scripturis agunt, et de scripturis suadent! Aliunde scilicet 10 loqui possent de rebus fidei, nisi ex literis fidei?

CAPUT XV.

VENIMUS igitur ad propositum. Hoc enim dirigebamus, et hoc praestruēbamus allocutionis praefatione, ut iam hinc de eo congrediamur de quo adversarii provocant. Scripturas obtendunt, et hac sua audacia statim quosdam movent. In 15 ipso vero congressu firmos quidem fatigant, infirmos capiunt, medios cum scrupulo dimittunt. Hunc igitur potissimum gradum obstruimus, non admittendos eos ad ullam de scripturis disputationem. Si hae sunt illae vires eorum, uti eas

9. *patrocinantur*. See note, *Apol.* 6. Tertullian frequently uses the word in the sense of 'protect,' 'foster,' 'countenance': *Apol.* 18, 19 *frag.*; *Scorp.* 4; *de idol.* 9; *adv. Marc.* iv. 1, 5.

CHAP. XV.—14. *congrediamur*. See note, ch. 7.

provocant, 'make their appeal'; comp. *Apol.* 10 'Appellamus et provocamus a vobis ipsis ad conscientiam vestram'; *ib.* 46 'de pudicitia provocemus' (where *de*='on the point of,' as here); and below, ch. 19 'Ergo non ad scripturas provocandum est.'

15. *obtendunt*, 'they make the Scriptures the ground of their plea.' *Obtendere* lit.= 'to put one thing in front of another in order to hide it'; and so 'to plead something in excuse of a line of conduct'; Tacit. *Ann.* iii. 35; Quint. xii. 10. 15.

17. *medios*, 'the undetermined, undecided ones'; comp. Cicero *Epist. ad Att.* x. 8. 4.; Livy ii. 27.

18. *gradum obstruimus*. See note, ch. 9.

habere possint, dispici debet cui competat possessio scripturarum, ne is admittatur ad eas, cui nullo modo competit.

CAPUT XVI.

Hoc de consilio diffidentiae, aut de studio aliter ineundae constitutionis induxerim, nisi ratio constiterit, in primis illa,
 5 quod fides nostra obsequium apostolo debeat, prohibenti
 quaestiones inire, novis vocibus aures accommodare, haereticum
 post unam correptionem convenire, non post disputationem.
 Adeo interdixit disputationem, correptionem designans caus-
 sam haeretici conveniendi, et hoc unam scilicet quia non est
 10 Christianus: ne more Christiani semel et iterum, et sub
 duobus aut tribus testibus castigandus videretur, cum ob hoc
 sit castigandus, propter quod non sit cum illo disputandum,
 dehinc quoniam nihil proficiat congressio scripturarum, nisi
 plane ut stomachi qua ineat eversionem, aut cerebri.

CAPUT XVII.

15 ISTA haeresis non recipit quasdam scripturas; et si quas
 recipit, et adjectionibus et detractionibus ad dispositionem

CHAP. XVI.—4. constitutionis, ‘the point in dispute’; *constitutio* is a legal term used synonymously with *status*, ‘the main question,’ Cicero *de inven. rhet.* i. 8 ‘eum igitur quaestionem ex qua caussa nascitur, constitutio appellamus’; and again ‘constitutio est prima conflictio caussarum’; Cornific. i. 11 ‘Constitutiones apud rhetores sunt . . . quae status etiam dicuntur’; comp. Quint. iii. 6. 2 ff.

induxerim, ‘I might be bringing forward this objection.’ *Inducere* is primarily ‘to bring forward on the stage,’ ‘to exhibit’; and thence in legal use ‘to bring before a court’; Sueton. *Dom.* 11; *Claud.* 40; Plin. *Epist.* ii. 12. 2.

5. prohibenti quaestiones. 1 Tim. vi. 4; Tit. iii. 10.

7. post unam correptionem. See note, ch. 6.

10. more Christiani. S. Matt. xviii. 15 f.

13. congressio scripturarum, i. e. ‘congressio de scripturis,’ so again ch. 18 ‘congressum scripturarum.’ Comp. note, chap. 7.

14. plane, ironical, as generally in Tertullian: see note on ‘opinor,’ ch. 3.

qua, ‘in so far as’; see *Apol.* 5 ‘sed qua et homo.’

instituti sui intervertit; et si recipit non recipit integras; et si aliquatenus integras praestat, nihilominus diversas expositiones commentata convertit. Tantum veritati obstre-
 pit adulter sensus quantum et corruptor stilus. Vanæ
 praesumptiones necessario nolunt agnoscere ea per quae 5
 revincuntur. His nituntur quae ex falso composuerunt, et
 quae de ambiguitate ceperunt. Quid promovebis, exercita-
 tissime scripturarum, cum si quid defenderis, negetur ex
 diverso, si quid negaveris, defendatur? Et tu quidem nihil
 perdes nisi vocem in contentione, nihil consequeris nisi bilem 10
 de blasphematione.

CAPUT XVIII.

ILLE vero, si quis est cuius caussa in congressum descendis
 scripturarum, ut eum dubitantem confirmes, ad veritatem,
 an magis ad haereses deverget? Hoc ipso motus, quod te
 videat nihil promovisse, aequo gradu negandi et defendendi 15

CHAP. XVII.—I. intervertit. On heretical mutilation and per-
 version of the Scriptures, see ch. 38; and comp. Hippolytus *apud*
 Euseb. v. 28.

3. obstrepit, 'hinders,' 'injures,' as in Florus iv. 29; or perhaps
 'distorts,' 'perverts,' as in Val. Max. viii. 15. 8. Comp. Iren. iii. 12.
 15; Clem. Alex. *Strom.* vii. 16; Augustin. *Haer.* 70.

4. adulter sensus = 'expositionum mendacia,' ch. 18; 'a false
 exegesis.'

corruptor stilus = 'adulteria scripturarum,' ch. 18; 'a tampered
 text.' On *stilus*, see note, ch. 38.

Vanæ. Fr. Junius' happy correction of the MSS. 'variae.'

6. quae ex falso composuerunt, e.g. the Psalms of Valentinus,
de carn. Chr. 17, 20; the Phaneroeis of Apelles, ch. 30; Ps.-Tert.
adv. haer. 6; comp. Iren. iii. 11. 12, of the false gospel of the Valen-
 tinians, 'Hi vero qui sunt a Valentino, iterum existentes extra omnem
 timorem, suas conscriptiones proferentes, plura habere gloriantur, quam
 sint ipsa Evangelia'

7. de ambiguitate = 'propter ambiguitatem.'

11. blasphematione. This word and its cognates are read only in
 ecclesiastical Latin.

adversa parte, statu certe pari, altercatione incertior discedet, nesciens quam haeresin iudicet. Haec utique et ipsi habent in nos retorquere. Necesse est enim et illos dicere a nobis potius adulteria scripturarum et expositionum mendacia inferri, qui proinde sibi defendant veritatem.

CAPUT XIX.

ERGO non ad scripturas provocandum est, nec in his constituendum certamen in quibus aut nulla, aut incerta victoria est, aut parum incerta. Nam etsi non ita evaderet collatio scripturarum, ut utramque partem parem sisteret, ordo rerum desiderabat illud prius proponi, quod nunc solum disputandum est: quibus competat fides ipsa cuius sunt scripturae: a quo, et per quos, et quando, et quibus sit

CHAP. XVIII.—1. altercatione, 'rejoinder.' See note *Apol.* 2.

3. habent . . . retorquere. This construction of 'habere' with the infinitive is very common in Tertullian. Here 'habere' = 'debere,' 'to be obliged to,' or, as we say, 'to have to': so *Apol.* 36; *ad mart.* 4; *de cult. fem.* i. 1 'etiam Filius Dei mori habuit; *de anim.* 35, 55; *de res. carn.* 27; *de fug.* 12; *de pat.* 7; *ad uxor.* i. 2; *de idol.* 5; *adv. Prax.* 4; and this use is very usual in Lactantius; e.g. iv. 12, 15, 18, 22; comp. Tacit. *Ann.* xiv. 44; *de orat.* 36; Plin. *Epist.* i. 8. 12; Baed. *H. E.* iv. 24.

Very frequently too by a Graecism Tertullian uses 'habere' with the infinitive for 'posse,' εἶναι: e.g. ch. 22 'probare non habent'; ch. 42 'eloqui non habent'; *Apol.* 22, 37; *de iei.* 8; *ad nat.* ii. 4; similarly 'tenere,' *ad nat.* ii. 2 'tenebat determinare.'

5. proinde, for 'perinde,' as often in Tertullian; *de spect.* 2, 7, 27; *Apol.* 13; *de idol.* 1; *de coron.* 10, 12; *de cult. fem.* ii. 9. *Agob.* reads 'perinde' here and in one or two other passages.

CHAP. XIX.—6. provocandum est. See note, ch. 15.

8. parum incerta. So *Agob.*, *Leid.*, and the irony is quite in Tertullian's style. *Oehler* follows *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.* in printing 'parum certa.' *Rig.* weakly conjectured 'par incertae.'

collatio scripturarum, 'discussion of the Scriptures,' as in ch. 45; or perhaps 'the critical comparison of Scriptures,' the pitting of falsified texts against true, and isolated passages one against another.

11. cuius sunt scripturae. So *Agob.*, *Leid.* *Rel.* 'sint,' making another point of inquiry.

tradita disciplina, qua fiunt Christiani. Ubi enim apparuerit esse veritatem disciplinae et fidei Christianae, illic erit veritas scripturarum, et expositionum, et omnium traditionum Christianarum.

CAPUT XX.

CHRISTUS IESUS Dominus noster, permittat dicere interim, ⁵ quisquis est, cuiuscumque Dei filius, cuiuscumque materiae homo et Deus, cuiuscumque fidei praeceptor, cuiuscumque mercedis repromissor, quid esset, quid fuisset, quam Patris voluntatem administraret, quid homini agendum determinaret, quamdiu in terris agebat, ipse pronuntiabat sive populo ¹⁰ palam, sive discentibus seorsum, ex quibus duodecim praecipuos lateri suo adlegerat, destinatos nationibus magistros. Itaque uno eorum decusso, reliquos undecim digrediens ad Patrem post resurrectionem iussit ire et docere nationes, tingendas in Patrem, et in Filium, et in Spiritum Sanctum. ¹⁵

Statim igitur apostoli, quos haec appellatio missos interpretatur, assumpto per sortem duodecimo Mathia in locum Iudae, ex auctoritate prophetiae, quae est in psalmo David, consecuti promissam vim Spiritus Sancti ad virtutes et

I. disciplina. See note, ch. 6.

CHAP. XX.—5. *Christus Iesus.* Tertullian brushes aside for the moment all speculations of heresy, and concentrates attention solely upon the bare historical fact of the practical teaching of the historic Person Jesus Christ.

interim, 'for the moment,' 'for the sake of argument.' This is Tertullian's general use of '*interim*'; see chs. 9, 14, 22; *Apol.* 8, 21; *de coron.* 8; comp. *Min. Fel.* 7, 16. Above, ch. 4, it = '*nunc*,' '*adhuc*.'

II. discentibus. See note, ch. 3.

14. ire et docere. S. Matt. xxviii. 19.

15. tingendas. See note, ch. 8.

18. prophetiae. This word and its cognates were early imported from the Greek to suit the requirements of ecclesiastical Latin; comp. *de coron.* 1; *Apol.* 19 frag.; *de anim.* 35; *de iei.* 3, 17; *de res. carn.* 21; *adv. Iud.* 9.

David. Ps. cix. 8; Acts i. 20.

19. virtutes. See note, ch. 13.

eloquium, primo per Iudaeam contestata fide in Iesum Christum, et ecclesiis institutis; dehinc in orbem profecti, eandem doctrinam eiusdem fidei nationibus promulgaverunt. Et perinde ecclesias apud unamquamque civitatem condi-
 5 derunt, a quibus traducem fidei et semina doctrinae ceterae exinde ecclesiae mutuatae sunt, et cottidie mutuatur ut ecclesiae fiant: ac per hoc et ipsae apostolicae deputantur, ut soboles apostolicarum ecclesiarum. Omne genus ad originem suam censeatur necesse est. Itaque tot ac tantae ecclesiae
 10 una est illa ab apostolis prima, ex qua omnes. Sic omnes primae et omnes apostolicae, dum una omnes probant unitate communicatio pacis et appellatio fraternitatis et contesseratio

5. *traducem*, 'the transmission;' lit. 'an offshoot, or sucker.' This is a favourite word of Tertullian; see ch. 32; *Apol.* 7, 9, 21; *ad nat.* i. 4, 7, 13, 16; *de test. an.* 3; *Scorp.* 9; *de pat.* 5; *de anim.* 9.

9. *censeatur*, 'must be referred back,' 'reckoned.' This is the root meaning of the verb; comp. *Apol.* 10, 39; *ad nat.* i. 12; *de monog.* 11; *adv. Marc.* i. 8; and similarly 'census' = 'the class, rank, or order in which any person or thing is reckoned'; *de idol.* 4; *ad nat.* ii. 1; *de reig. vel.* 4, 11; *adv. Marc.* i. 21; *de monog.* 5 (comp. Arnob. iv. 1). Sometimes the context reflects the senses of 'originate,' and 'source' into 'censere,' and 'census': e.g. below, ch. 21, 32; *Apol.* 7, 10, 12, 21; *adv. Herm.* 33; *de test. an.* 5; *de coron.* 13.

11. *dum una omnes probant unitate communicatio*. So Oehler, I think rightly. The suggestion of Routh, 'dum una omnes. Probant unitatem,' &c., is simpler, and on that account less probable; whereas all the varr. lectt. of MSS. and edd. can be explained from the text, different punctuations having necessitated different verbal alterations. *Leid., Rhen., Gang., Gel.* 'unam omnes probant unitatem. Communicatio,' &c.: *Agob., Rig.* 'una om. pr. unitatem [dum est illis] com.,' &c.; but *Agob.* (teste Hildebrand) omits 'dum est illis.'

12. *appellatio fraternitatis*. Comp. *Apol.* 39 'Sed et quod fratrum appellatione censemur,' &c.; Clem. Alex. *Strom.* ii. 9; Hieronym. *adv. Helv.* 8; Athenag. 32; Lactant. v. 16.

contesseratio hospitalitatis, 'the common bond of friendship.' For the Roman custom of dividing the 'tessera hospitalis' as a pledge of amity, see Plaut. *Poen.* v. 2. 87, 92; *Cist.* ii. 1. 27. Inscr. Orell. 1079. The use of the phrase here is of course quite non-technical, the great bond of fellowship between Christians in every part of the world being their unity of doctrine: comp. ch. 36, for the 'contesse-

hospitalitatis, quae iura non alia ratio regit quam eiusdem sacramenti una traditio.

CAPUT XXI.

HINC igitur dirigimus praescriptionem, si Dominus Christus Iesus apostolos misit ad praedicandum, alios non esse recipi-
 endos praedicatores, quam Christus instituit; quia nec alius ⁵
 Patrem novit nisi Filius, et cui Filius revelavit; nec aliis
 videtur revelasse Filius, quam apostolis quos misit ad prae-
 dicandum, utique quod illis revelavit. Quid autem prae-

ratio' between Rome and the African churches. It is possible too that Tertullian had in his mind the 'systatics,' or 'commendatory letters,' the use of which linked church to church in a unity truly catholic: see August. *Epist.* 44. 3; Euseb. vii. 30; Sozom. v. 16; Chalc. Conc. *can.* 11. Hatch, *Infl. of Greek ideas*, p. 344, is too literal.

2. sacramenti = 'regula fidei.' The word 'sacramentum' has various significations in ecclesiastical Latin. It sometimes corresponds to the N. T. use of *μυστήριον* in its two senses of: (1) 'a sacred ordinance, doctrine, or fact'; (2) 'a symbol'; and sometimes to its original classical use, 'a solemn obligation, pledge, or oath'; occasionally the two ideas combine. Typical instances will be found—chs. 26, 32 (doctrine); *Apol.* 2, 7 (religious ordinance), 15, 19, 47 (system of religion); *de idol.* 6; *de cor.* 13; *ad mart.* 3; *Scorp.* 4 (Baptism); *adv. Marc.* iv. 34; *de cor.* 3 (Eucharist); *Scorp.* 9 (martyrdom); *de anim.* 9 (mysterious revelations). The word has even a wider range of meaning in the writings of Augustine, who applies it to the salt given to catechumens (*de cat. rud.* 50; *de pecc. mer.* ii. 42), to the Paternoster and the Creed (*Serm.* 228), to the chrism and imposition of hands (*de bapt. c. Don.* v. 28), as well as to the 'Sacramenta fontis et altaris' (*Serm.* 228). See Bright, *Serm. of S. Leo*, note 6; Lightfoot, *Ignatius* i. 51; Rünsch, *N. T. Tertullians*, p. 585; Hatch, *Biblical Greek*, p. 61.

CHAP. XXI.—3. praescriptionem. The whole question between the heretics and the Catholic Church is now 'limited' to one point—the retention of Apostolic doctrine—the guarantee and proof of such retention being shewn (ch. 32) to depend on a true episcopal succession from the Apostles.

Dominus. The MSS. read 'Deus' by a very common confusion.

5. nec alius Patrem. *Matt.* xi. 27.

dicaverint, id est, quid illis Christus revelaverit, et hic praescribam non aliter probari debere, nisi per easdem ecclesias quas ipsi apostoli condiderunt, ipsi eis praedicando tam viva, quod aiunt, voce quam per epistulas postea.

- 5 Si haec ita sunt, constat perinde omnem doctrinam, quae cum illis ecclesiis apostolicis matricibus et originalibus fidei conspiret, veritati deputandam; id sine dubio tenentem quod ecclesiae ab apostolis, apostoli a Christo, Christus a Deo accepit: omnem vero doctrinam de mendacio praeiudicandam,
 10 quae sapiat contra veritatem ecclesiarum et apostolorum Christi et Dei. Superest ergo ut demonstremus an haec nostra doctrina, cuius regulam supra edidimus, de apostolorum traditione censeatur, et ex hoc ipso, an ceterae de mendacio veniant. Communicamus cum ecclesiis apostolicis, quod
 15 nulla doctrina diversa. Hoc est testimonium veritatis.

CAPUT XXII.

- SED quoniam tam expedita probatio est, ut, si statim proferatur, nihil iam sit retractandum, ac si prolata non sit a nobis, locum interim demus diversae parti, si quid putant ad infirmandam hanc praescriptionem movere se posse.
 20 Solent dicere, non omnia apostolos scisse, eadem agitati

4. viva, quod aiunt, voce. 2 Thess. ii. 15; 1 Cor. xi. 23, xv. 1; Phil. iv. 9; Gal. i. 9.

6. apostolicis. On the various applications of this word see Lightfoot, *Clem. Rom.* i. 2.

matricibus. This is a common word in Tertullian for 'the original fount or source.' *Adv. Iud.* 2 'Primordialis lex est enim data Adae et Evae in paradiso, quasi matrix omnium praeceptorum Dei'; *Apol.* 21; *adv. Herm.* 16; *de virg. vel.* 5 'Eva matrix generis feminini'; *adv. Val.* 7; *de res. carn.* 6; *adv. Marc.* ii. 16, iv. 35.

9. de mendacio, 'de' is either 'on the score of,' or the expression = 'ut ex mendacio originem habentem.'

12. supra edidimus. Ch. 13.

13. censeatur. See note, ch. 20.

CHAP. XXII.—18. interim. See note, ch. 20.

20. non omnia apostolos scisse. Comp. Iren. iii. 1. 1 'Nec enim

dementia qua susum rursus convertunt omnia quidem apostolos scisse, sed non omnia omnibus tradidisse; in utroque Christum reprehensioni inicientes, qui aut minus instructos aut parum simplices apostolos miserit.

Quis igitur integrae mentis credere potest aliquid eos 5 ignorasse quos magistros Dominus dedit, individuos habens in comitatu, in discipulatu, in convictu; quibus obscura quaeque seorsum disserebat, illis dicens datum esse cognoscere arcana, quae populo intellegere non liceret? Latuit aliquid Petrum, aedificandae ecclesiae petram dictum, claves regni caelorum 10

fas est dicere quoniam ante praedicaverunt quam perfectam haberent agnitionem; sicut quidam audent dicere, gloriantes emendatores se esse Apostolorum.'

1. *susum.* So *Agob., Divion.* This archaic form (Cato, *de re rust.* 157. 15) of *sursum* (=subvorsum) is found also in Augustine, e.g. *Tract.* 8 in *Epist. Ioan.* i. 2; *Tract.* 10; and Lactant. *de mort. pers.* 19. 4.

omnia quidem apostolos scisse: comp. Iren. iii. 5. 1 'Neque discipuli eius alium quemdam Deum nominaret . . . quemadmodum dicunt hi . . . quoniam Apostoli cum hypocrisi fecerunt doctrinam secundum audientium capacitatem,' &c.

8. *seorsum disserebat.* S. Mark iv. 34. Irenaeus (iii. 3. 1) maintains that even if the Apostles had been entrusted with esoteric doctrines, their successors, the bishops of the Apostolic Churches, were the very persons to whom they would have communicated them.

dicens. S. Matt. xiii. 11.

10. *petram dictum.* S. Matt. xvi. 18 ff. Similarly *de monog.* 8; *de pud.* 21, Tertullian interprets the 'rock' of S. Peter's person; but *adv. Marc.* iv. 13 of Christ. The patristic exegesis of the passage varied with different Fathers, and in different writings of the same Father: see Lib. Fath. in loc. and note p. 508 ff. Lightfoot, *Clem. Rom.* ii. 482 ff. The point of view varies, and varying interpretations are not necessarily conflicting. Compare for instance, the different points of view which regard Christ sometimes as Himself the 'foundation' of the Church (1 Cor. iii. 11), and sometimes as the 'corner-stone,' with the Apostles and Prophets as the foundation (Eph. ii. 20).

claves regni. Similarly the gift of the keys is assigned to Peter personally *de pud.* 21, but it is there explained in a Montanistic sense of his first preaching the Gospel (Acts ii. 22) and opposed to the authority of the Church. Cyprian, *de unit. eccl.* 3; *Epist.* 73 ad

consecutum, et solvendi et alligandi in caelis et in terris potestatem? Latuit et Ioannem aliquid, dilectissimum Domino, pectori eius incubantem, cui soli Dominus Iudam traditorem praemonstravit, quem loco suo filium Mariae
 5 demandavit? Quid eos ignorasse voluit, quibus etiam gloriam suam exhibuit, et Moysen et Helian, et insuper de caelo Patris vocem? non quasi ceteros reprobans, sed quoniam in tribus testibus stabit omne verbum. Ignoraverunt itaque et illi, quibus post resurrectionem quoque in itinere omnes
 10 scripturas edisserere dignatus est.

Dixerat plane aliquando: Multa habeo adhuc vobis loqui, sed non potestis modo ea sustinere; tamen adiciens: Cum venerit ille Spiritus veritatis, ipse vos deducet in omnem veritatem. Ostendit illos nihil ignorasse, quos omnem veri-
 15 tatem consecuturos per Spiritum veritatis promiserat; et utique implevit repromissum, probantibus Actis apostolorum descensum Spiritus Sancti. Quam scripturam qui non reci-

Iubai. interprets it of Peter as intended to exhibit the unity of the Church; and again *Epist.* 33 *ad laps.* illustratively of all bishops: Augustine, *Serm.* 295. 2, representatively of the whole Church.

3. pectori eius incubantem. S. John xiii. 25.

4. filium Mariae. S. John xix. 26.

5. gloriam suam exhibuit. S. Matt. xvii. 1 ff.; S. Mark ix. 1 ff.; S. Luke ix. 28 ff.

7. in tribus testibus. Deut. xix. 15; S. Matt. xviii. 16; 2 Cor. xiii. 1.

9. in itinere. S. Luke xxiv. 27.

11. Dixerat plane. S. John xvi. 13.

14. Ostendit illos, &c. Tertullian as a Montanist did not regard this promise as completely fulfilled on the day of Pentecost: see *de monog.* 2, where he gives a very different interpretation to the same text. Comp. also *de virg. vel.* 1; and contrast the language there with that below, ch. 28, respecting the continued work of the Spirit in the Church.

17. descensum Spiritus. Acts ii. 1 ff.

qui non recipiunt. The Marcionites; *adv. Marc.* v. 2: comp. *ib.* iv. 5; Epiphan. *Haer.* 42. 9. For their other rejections and mutilations of the Scriptures see below, ch. 38.

piunt, nec Spiritum [Sanctum] possunt agnoscere discentibus missum sed nec ecclesiam se defendere, qui quando et quibus incunabulis institutum est hoc corpus probare non habent. Tanti est enim illis non habere probationes eorum quae defendunt, ne pariter admittantur traductiones eorum quae 5 mentiuntur.

CAPUT XXIII.

PROPONUNT ergo ad suggillandam ignorantiam aliquam apostolorum, quod Petrus et qui cum eo reprehensi sunt a Paulo. Adeo, inquiunt, aliquid eis defuit, ut ex hoc etiam illud struant, potuisse postea pleniorē scientiam super- 10 venire, qualis obvenerit Paulo reprehendenti antecessores.

Possum et hic Acta apostolorum repudiantibus dicere: Prius est ut ostendatis quis iste Paulus, et quid ante apostolum, et quomodo apostolus: quatenus et alias ad quaestiones plurimum eo utuntur. Neque enim, si ipse se apostolum de 15

1. nec Spiritum, &c. So *Agob.*: nec Spiritus Sancti esse possunt, qui necdum Spiritum Sanctum possint *Gang., Rig., Fulv. Urs.*

discentibus: see note, ch. 3.

2. se defendere. So *Agob., Leid.*: se dicant defendere *Rhen., Gang., Gel., Pam., Oehl.*

4. non habere probationes, 'to be incapable of producing proofs.' This is, I think, the force of *habere* in this and the immediately preceding sentence: see note, ch. 18.

5. traductiones: see note, ch. 33.

CHAP. XXIII.—7. suggillandam: see note, ch. 8.

8. quod Petrus . . . a Paulo. Pauline opposition to Peter was a characteristic Marcionite tenet; with the whole of this chapter comp. *adv. Marc.* iv. 2. 3.

reprehensi. *Gal.* ii. 11 ff.

10. illud. 'that other contention of theirs.'

supervenire, sc. 'Apostolos.'

11. antecessores, 'predecessors in the Apostleship.'

15. plurimum eo utuntur. On the Marcionite and Valentinian use of S. Paul's writings see *Iren.* iii. 13 f.

ipse se apostolum. *1 Cor.* xv. 9.

persecutore profitetur, sufficit unicuique examine credenti, quando nec Dominus ipse de se testimonium dixerit.

Sed credant sine scripturis, ut credant adversus scripturas : tamen doceant, ex eo quod allegant Petrum a Paulo reprehensum, aliam evangelii formam a Paulo superductam, citra eam quae praemiseraat Petrus et ceteri. Atquin demutatus in praedicatorem de persecutore, deducitur ad fratres a fratribus, ut unus ex fratribus, et ad illos ab illis, qui ab apostolis fidem induerant. Delinc, sicut ipse enarrat, ascendit in
 10 Hierosolyma cognoscendi Petri caussa, ex officio et iure scilicet eiusdem fidei et praedicationis. Nam et illi non essent mirati, de persecutore factum praedicatorem, si aliquid contrarium praedicaret : nec Dominum praeterea magnificassent, quia adversarius eius Paulus obvenerat. Itaque et
 15 dexteram ei dederunt, signum concordiae et convenientiae, et inter se distributionem officii ordinaverunt, non separationem evangelii, nec ut aliud alter, sed ut aliis alter praedicarent, Petrus in circumcisionem, Paulus in nationes. Ceterum si reprehensus est Petrus, quod cum convixisset ethnicis, postea
 20 se a convictu eorum separabat personarum respectu, utique conversationis fuit vitium, non praedicationis. Non enim ex hoc alius Deus quam Creator ; et alius Christus quam ex Maria ; et alia spes quam resurrectio annuntiabatur.

2. nec Dominus ipse. S. John v. 31.

5. superductam, i. e. 'insuper additam.' This is not the general use of 'superducere' in late writers, see Capitol. *M. Ant. Phil.* 29 ; Sidon. Ap. *Epist.* 5. 17 ; but it seems to be uniform in Tertullian : see ch. 26, *de coron.* 11 ; *ad nat.* i. 11 ; *de anim.* 36 ; *de orat.* 1 ; *de cult. fem.* ii. 5 ; *de monog.* 14 ; *de pud.* 20.

9. fidem induerant : comp. for the expression Gal. iv. 17 'Christum induistis.'

ipse enarrat. Gal. i. 18 ff.

15. dexteram ei dederunt. Gal. ii. 9.

20. utique conversationis : comp. *adv. Marc.* iv. 3 'Adeo non de praedicatione sed de conversatione a Paulo denotabantur, aequae denotaturo, si quid de Deo Creatore aut Christo errassent.' On 'conversatio' see note, ch. 41.

CAPUT XXIV.

NON mihi tam bene est, immo non mihi tam male est, ut apostolos committam. Sed quoniam perversissimi isti illam reprehensionem ad hoc obtendunt, ut suspectam faciant doctrinam superiorem, respondebo quasi pro Petro: ipsum Paulum dixisse, factum se esse omnibus omnia, Iudaeis 5 Iudaeum, non Iudaeis non Iudaeum, ut omnes lucrificaret. Adeo pro temporibus et personis et caussis quaedam reprehendebant, in quae et ipsi aequae pro temporibus et personis et caussis committebant: quemadmodum si et Petrus reprehenderet Paulum, quod prohibens circumcisionem circumciderit 10 ipse Timotheum. Viderint qui de apostolis iudicant. Bene quod Petrus Paulo et in martyrio adaequatur.

Sed etsi in tertium usque caelum ereptus Paulus, et in paradisum delatus audiit quaedam illic, non possunt videri fuisse, quae illum in aliam doctrinam instructiorem prae- 15 starent, cum ita fuerit condicio eorum, ut nulli hominum proderentur. Quod si ad alicuius conscientiam manavit nescio quid illud, et hoc se aliqua haeresis sequi affirmat;

CHAP. XXIV.—1. ut apostolos committam, 'to pit Apostle against Apostle': comp. *ad mart.* 1 'ut vos committat,' 'so as to set you at variance'; Cyprian, *Epist.* 16. This use of *committere* is taken from the gladiatorial shows, and is common in Suetonius: e.g. *Clauul.* 34; Martial, *Epigr.* viii. 43. 3 'Victores committe, Venus?' The word bears a different meaning below, see note.

3. doctrinam superiorem, 'the earlier teaching'; i. e. of Peter.

5. Paulum dixisse. 1 Cor. ix. 20 ff.

8. in quae . . . committebant, 'against which they themselves were accustomed to offend': *committere* is thus used absolutely *Apol.* 29 'Ideo ergo committimus in maiestatem imperatorum.' Comp. Cicero, in *Verr.* ii. 1. 43 'nemo enim committeret.'

11. Timotheum. Acts xvi. 3.

Bene quod. For this expression comp. *Apol.* 7 'Bene autem quod omnia tempus revelat'; *de idol.* 5. 15, 23 'bene quod . . . Dominus dixit'; *de iei.* 13; *de carn. Chr.* 24; *de res. carn.* 52; *adv. Marc.* iv. 7, 31, 43; v. 14, 29.

13. ereptus Paulus. 2 Cor. xii. 2 ff.

aut Paulus secreti proditi reus est, aut et alius postea in paradisum ereptus debet ostendi, cui permissum sit eloqui, quae Paulo mutire non licuit.

CAPUT XXV.

SED, ut diximus, eadem dementia est, cum confitentur
 5 quidem nihil apostolos ignorasse, nec diversa inter se prae-
 dicasse, non tamen omnia volunt illos omnibus revelasse,
 quaedam enim palam et universis, quaedam secreto et paucis
 demandasse, quia et hoc verbo usus est Paulus ad Timotheum :
 O Timothee, depositum custodi ; et rursum : Bonum deposi-
 10 tum serva. Quod hoc depositum est tam tacitum, ut alterius
 doctrinae deputetur ? An illius denuntiationis, de qua ait :
 Hanc denuntiationem commendo apud te, filiole Timothee ?
 Item illius praecepti, de quo ait : Denuntio tibi ante Deum,
 qui vivificat omnia, et Iesum Christum, qui testatus est sub
 15 Pontio Pilato bonam confessionem, custodias praeceptum ?
 Quod autem praeceptum, et quae denuntiatio ? Ex supra
 et infra scriptis intellegetur non nescio quid subostendi hoc
 dicto de remotiore doctrina, sed potius inculcari de non
 admittenda alia praeter eam quam audierat ab ipso, et puto
 20 palam : Coram multis, inquit, testibus. Quos multos testes,

CHAP. XXV.—4. ut diximus. Chap. 22.

6. volunt : comp. Iren. iii. 4. 1 f. 'Quemadmodum hi qui nunquam Paulo adiuncti fuerunt, gloriantur abscondita et inenarrabilia didicisse sacramenta ? Quoniam autem Paulus simpliciter quae sciebat haec et docuit, non solum eos qui cum eo erant, verum omnes audientes se, ipse fecit manifestum.'

8. Paulus ad Timotheum. 1 Tim. vi. 20.

9. et rursum. 2 Tim. i. 14.

12. Hanc denuntiationem. 1 Tim. i. 18.

13. Denuntio tibi. 1 Tim. vi. 13 f.

17. subostendi. This non-classical word is used again of secret hints or indirect allusion, *adv. Marc.* iv. 38 ; *adv. Val.* 1 ; *adv. Herm.* 37 ; *de anim.* 12 ; *de bapt.* 19.

20. Coram multis. 2 Tim. ii. 2.

si nolunt ecclesiam intellegi, nihil interest, quando nihil tacitum fuerit quod sub multis testibus proferebatur. Sed nec quia voluit illum haec fidelibus hominibus demandare, qui idonei sint et alios docere; id quoque argumentum occulti alicuius evangelii interpretandum est. Nam cum 5 dicit Haec, de eis dicit, de quibus in praesenti scribebat; de occultis autem, ut de absentibus, apud conscientiam, non Haec, sed Illa dixisset.

CAPUT XXVI.

PORRO consequens erat, ut cui demandabat evangelii administrationem non passim nec inconsiderate adminis- 10 trandam, adiceret secundum dominicam vocem, ne margaritam porcis et sanctum canibus iactaret. Dominus palam edixit, sine ulla significatione alicuius tecti sacramenti. Ipse praeceperat, si quid in tenebris et in abscondito audissent, in luce et in tectis praedicarent. Ipse per similitudinem 15 praefiguraverat, ne unam mnam, id est unum verbum eius, sine fructu in abdito reservarent. Ipse docebat lucernam non sub modium abstrudi solere, sed in candelabrum constitui, ut luceat omnibus qui in domo sunt. Haec apostoli ut neglexerunt aut minime intellexerunt, si non adim- 20 plexerunt, abscondentes aliquid de lumine, id est, de Dei verbo et Christi sacramento. Neminem, quod scio, verebantur, non Iudaeorum vim, non ethnicorum: quo magis utique in ecclesia libere praedicabant, qui in synagogis et in locis publicis non tacebant. Immo neque Iudaeos convertere 25 neque ethnicos inducere potuissent, nisi quod credi ab eis volebant ordine exponerent. Multo magis iam credentibus

CHAP. XXVI.—II. dominicam vocem. S. Matt. vii. 6.

13. sacramenti: see note, ch. 20.

14. Ipse praeceperat. S. Matt. x. 27.

15. per similitudinem. S. Luke xix. 12 ff.

17. Ipse docebat. S. Matt. v. 15.

27. ordine exponerent: comp. S. Luke i. 3.

Multo magis, &c.: comp. Iren. iii. 3.

ecclesiis nihil subtraxissent quod aliis paucis seorsum demandarent.

Quamquam etsi quaedam inter domesticos, ut ita dixerim, disserebant, non tamen ea fuisse credendum est quae aliam
 5 regulam fidei superducerent, diversam et contrariam illi quam catholice in medium proferebant; ut alium Deum in ecclesia dicerent, alium in hospitio; aliam Christi substantiam designarent in aperto, aliam in secreto; aliam spem resurrectionis apud omnes annuntiarent, aliam apud paucos;
 10 cum ipsi obsecrarent in epistulis suis, ut idipsum et unum loquerentur omnes, et non essent schismata et dissensiones in ecclesia, quia sive Paulus, sive alii, eadem praedicarent. Alioquin meminerant, Sit sermo vester, est, est, non, non: nam quod amplius, hoc a malo est, ne evangelium in
 15 diversitate tractarent.

CAPUT XXVII.

Si ergo incredibile est vel ignorasse apostolos plenitudinem praedicationis vel non omnem ordinem regulae omnibus edidisse, videamus ne forte apostoli quidem simpliciter et plene, ecclesiae autem suo vitio aliter acceperint
 20 quam apostoli proferebant. Omnia ista scrupulositatis incitamenta invenias praetendi ab haereticis. Tenent correptas ab apostolo ecclesias: O insensati Galatae, quis vos fascina-
 navit? et: Tam bene currebatis, quis vos impediit? ipsumque principium: Miror quod sic tam cito transferimini ab eo, qui

5. superducerent: see note, Ch. 23.

6. catholice = 'apud omnes palam,' opposed to 'inter domesticos': comp. *de fug.* 3 where it is opposed to 'ex parte.' *Agob., Rig.* 'catholicae' sc. 'ecclesiae' (see note, ch. 30).

10. in epistulis suis. 1 Cor. i. 10.

13. Sit sermo. S. Matt. v. 37.

CHAP. XXVII.—20. scrupulositatis: see note, ch. 8.

22. O insensati Galatae. Gal. iii. 1.

23. Tam bene. Gal. v. 7.

24. Miror. Gal. i. 6.

suos vocavit in gratia, ad aliud evangelium. Item ad Corinthios scriptum, quod essent adhuc carnales, qui lacte educarentur, nondum idonei ad pabulum; qui putarent se scire aliquid, quando nondum scirent quemadmodum scire oporteret. Cum correptas ecclesias opponunt, credant 5 emendatas. Sed et illas recognoscant, de quarum fide et scientia et conversatione apostolus gaudet et Deo gratis agit: quae tamen hodie cum illis correptis unius institutionis iura miscent.

CAPUT XXVIII.

AGE nunc, omnes erraverint; deceptus sit et apostolus 10 de testimonio reddendo: nullam respexerit Spiritus Sanctus, uti eam in veritatem deduceret, ad hoc missus a Christo, ad hoc postulatus de Patre, ut esset doctor veritatis: neglexerit officium Dei vilicus, Christi vicarius, sinens ecclesias aliter interim intellegere, aliter credere quod ipse per apostolos 15 praedicabat: ecquid verisimile est, ut tot ac tantae in unam fidem erraverint? Nullus inter multos eventus unus est. Exitus variasse debuerat error doctrinae ecclesiarum. Ceterum, quod apud multos unum invenitur, non est erratum, sed traditum. Audeat ergo aliquis dicere illos errasse, qui 20 tradiderunt?

1. ad Corinthios. 1 Cor. iii. 1 f.; viii. 2; xvi. 19.

6. fide et scientia. Rom. i. 8; xv. 14; xvi. 19; Eph. i. 15; Phil. i. 3 ff.; Coloss. i. 4 ff.; 1 Thess. i. 3 ff.; 2 Thess. i. 3 f.

7. conversatione: see note, ch. 41.

9. miscent, 'unite': see note, ch. 36.

CHAP. XXVIII.—12. in veritatem deduceret. S. John xiv. 26.

16. ecquid verisimile est. This is a celebrated argument. Tertullian urges that the unanimity of the testimony establishes the security of the tradition. Comp. Iren. iii. 3 f.; iv. 53. 2; v. 20.

17. eventus unus est. Exitus variasse. So *Rig.*: exitus: variasse *Gel., Pam. Agob.* has simply eventus variasse, &c.: *Leid.*, eventus unus exitus variasset (*Rhen. variasse*).

18. error: ordo *Leid.*

CAPUT XXIX.

QUOQUO modo sit erratum, tam diu utique regnavit error quam diu haereses non erant. Aliquos Marcionitas et Valentinianos liberanda veritas exspectabat. Interea perperam evangelizabatur, perperam credebatur; tot milia
 5 milium perperam tincta, tot opera fidei perperam administrata, tot virtutes, tot charismata perperam operata, tot sacerdotia, tot ministeria perperam functa, tot denique martyria perperam coronata. Aut si non perperam nec in
 10 vacuum, quale est ut ante res Dei currebant, quam cuius Dei notum esset? ante Christiani, quam Christus inventus? ante haereses, quam vera doctrina? Sed enim in omnibus veritas imaginem antecedit: postremo similitudo succedit.

CHAP. XXIX.—5. *tincta*: see note, ch. 8.

6. *virtutes*: see note, ch. 13.

7. *ministeria*. So *Agob.*: *Rig.*, *mysteria*.

9. *quale est*. This is a favourite interrogation with Tertullian, implying a *reductio ad absurdum*. Comp. ch. 14; *de ieiun.* 13 ‘Quale est autem ut tuo arbitrio permittas quod imperio Dei non das?’ *de pud.* 15; *adv. Marc.* i, 23, 26; *de fug.* 5, 7; *de virg. vel.* 1.

12. *veritas imaginem antecedit*. This historical argument from the later rise of heresies was the common weapon of Catholic writers; *Iren.* iii. 4. 3; v. 20. 1; *Clem. Alex. Strom.* vii. 17; Hippolytus *apud* Euseb. vii. 28; *Pacian, Epist. ad Sempr.* 3. 3: comp. Tertullian, *adv. Marc.* i. 1, 20; iv. 5; v. 19; *adv. Herm.* 1; *adv. Prax.* 2; *de carn. Chr.* 2.

postremo. So *Agob., Leid., Rhen., Gang., Gel., Pam.*: post rem *Rig.*: post vero *Oehl.*

similitudo succedit: comp. *Apol.* 47, where the same argument is turned to demonstrate the superiority of the Christian doctrines over their heathen counterfeits; and *adv. Prax.* 2, where after setting forth the rule of faith, Tertullian proceeds, ‘Hanc regulam ab initio evangelii decucurrisse, etiam ante priores quoque haereticos . . . probabit tam ipsa posteritas omnium haereticorum quam ipsa novellitas Praxeae hesterni. Quo peraeque adversus universas haereses iam hinc praedicatum sit id esse verum quodcunque primum, id esse adulterum quodcunque posterius.’

Ceterum satis ineptum, ut pro priori doctrina haeresis habeatur: vel quoniam ipsa est quae futuras haereses cavendas praenuntiabat. Ad eius doctrinae ecclesiam scriptum est, immo ipsa doctrina ad ecclesiam scribit: Etsi angelus de caelo aliter evangelizaverit citra quam nos, anathema sit. 5

CAPUT XXX.

UBI tunc Marcion, Ponticus nauclerus, Stoicae studiosus? Ubi Valentinus, Platonicae sectator? Nam constat illos neque adeo olim fuisse, Antonini fere principatu, et in catholicae primo doctrinam credidisse apud ecclesiam Romanensem, sub episcopatu Eleutheri benedicti; donec ob 10 inquietam semper curiositatem, qua fratres quoque vitiabant,

1. pro priori doctrina. This is Oehler's emendation of *Agob.*, 'prior in doctrina.' *Leid.* and nearly all edd. read 'prior in doctrina.' For 'in' *Routh* proposed 'illa.'

4. Etsi angelus. *Gal.* i. 8.

CHAP. XXX.—6. Ponticus nauclerus. Marcion's home was Sinope, of which city his father was bishop, *Epiphan. Haer.* 42; *Ps.-Tert. adv. haer.* 6. Tertullian frequently calls him 'nauclerus' (*adv. Marc.* i. 18, iii. 6, iv. 9), either in allusion to the maritime pursuits of his countrymen, or because he was really a ship-owner. So Rhodon (*apud* Euseb. v. 13) speaks of him as ναύτης.

Stoicae studiosus: see note, ch. 7.

8. Antonini: A.D. 138–161. *Comp. Iren.* iii. 4. 2 'Valentinus enim venit Romam sub Hygino: increvit vero sub Pio, et prorogavit tempus usque ad Anicetum . . . Marcion autem illi succedens, invaluit sub Aniceto.' *Iust. Mart. Apol.* i. 26 (writing in the reign of Antoninus) *Μαρκίωνας δέ τινα Ποντικόν, ὃς καὶ νῦν ἐστὶ διδάσκων τοὺς πειθομένους*, &c.; *adv. Marc.* i. 19 '[Marcion] Antoninianus haereticus, sub Pio impius'; v. 19.

9. catholicae: sc. 'ecclesiae.' So *Agob.*, *Rig.* African writers frequently use 'catholica' thus elliptically. *Leid.*, *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*, catholicam. On the early use of this word see Lightfoot, *Ignatius*, ii. 310.

10. Eleutheri: probably A.D. 174–189. But Tertullian is mistaken in dating the excommunication of Marcion and of Valentinus so late as this episcopate: see Salmon and Lipsius in *D.C.B.* iii. 818; iv. 1078.

11. curiositatem: see note, ch. 7.

qua . . . vitiabant: quam . . . vitabant *Agob.*

semel et iterum eiecti, Marcion quidem cum ducentis sestertiis quae ecclesiae intulerat, novissime in perpetuum discidium relegati, venena doctrinarum suarum disseminaverunt. Postmodum idem Marcion paenitentiam confessus, 5 cum condicioni datae sibi occurrit, ita pacem recepturus, si ceteros, quos perditione erudisset, ecclesiae restitueret, morte praeventus est.

Oportebat enim haereses esse. Nec tamen ideo bonum haereses, quia eas esse oportebat. Quasi non et malum 10 oportuerit esse: nam et Dominum tradi oportebat, sed Vae traditori, ne quis etiam hinc haereses defendat.

Si et Apellis stemma retractandum est, tam non vetus et ipse quam Marcion institutor et praeformator eius: sed lapsus

1. *semel et iterum eiecti*: comp. the lapses and relapses of Cerdon, mentioned by Irenaeus, iii. 4. 2; it is probable indeed that Tertullian has here related of Marcion what was really true of Cerdon. The apostasy of Valentinus is attributed to disappointed ambition: *adv. Val.* 4 ‘speraverat episcopatum Valentinus,’ &c.

cum ducentis sestertiis. *Adv. Mar.* iv. 4 ‘[Evangelium Lucae] adeo antiquius Marcione est, ut et ipse illi Marcion crediderit, cum et pecuniam in primo calore fidei catholicae ecclesiae contulit, proiectam mox cum ipso, postea quam in haeresim suam a nostra veritate descivit.’

5. *condicioni datae sibi*: comp. Cyprian, *Epist.* 55. 9 of the reconciliation of Trophimus on the same terms; and Euseb. vi. 45 for Dionysius’ counsel to Novatian to restore the unity of the brethren which he had disturbed.

pacem recepturus. ‘Dare pacem’ was the regular term for receiving the lapsed into communion, so that ‘the peace’ became a synonym for the Eucharist: Cyprian, *Epist.* 15, 18, 19, 27. The kiss of peace, ‘osculum pacis,’ or simply ‘pax,’ was a prominent feature in the Eucharistic service. The phrase recurs below, ch. 32; see also ch. 41, on the heretics’ indiscriminate admission of all comers.

8. *Oportebat.* 1 Cor. xi. 19: comp. ch. 1.

10. *Vae traditori*: comp. S. Mark xiv. 21.

12. *stemma*, ‘the pedigree’; but *Agob.* reads stigma, ‘the mark of disgrace.’

13. *lapsus in feminam*: comp. *de carn. Chr.* 6, quoted above, note, ch. 6. This story suspiciously resembles that told by Epiphanius, *Haer.* 42, and Ps.-Tert. *adv. haer.* 6, of Marcion at Sinope; and it is no

in feminam, desertor continentiae Marcionensis, ab oculis sanctissimi magistri Alexandriam secessit. Inde post annos regressus non melior, nisi tantum qua iam non Marcionites, in alteram feminam impegit, illam virginem Philumenen, quam supra edidimus, postea vero immane prostibulum et 5 ipsam, cuius energemate circumventus, quae ab ea didicit Phaneroseis scripsit. Adhuc in saeculo supersunt qui meminerint eorum, etiam proprii discentes et successores ipsorum, ne posteriores negare possint.

Quamquam et de operibus suis, ut dixit Dominus, revin- 10 cuntur. Si enim Marcion novum testamentum a vetere separavit, posterior est eo quod separavit, quia separare non posset, nisi quod unitum fuit. Unitum ergo antequam

referred to by any other writers. Both may have originated in the misunderstanding of some figurative phrase: see note, ch. 44.

1. continentiae Marcionensis. The strict asceticism and moral purity of Marcion's life are established beyond all doubt by the fact that Tertullian, who labours to find language severe enough to express his hatred of the man, clearly acquits him of immorality: see *adv. Marc.* i. 1, 29; iv. 11.

4. in alteram feminam impegit. From the phrase 'eversus spiritu,' not 'carne' (*de carn. Chr.* 6), it is clear in what sense Tertullian intended this expression. On *impegit*, see note, ch. 4.

Philumenen. Ch. 6.

5. prostibulum. This charge against Philumena, if not a figure of speech, is unsupported by any other authority, and may be set down to scandal. Not even Tertullian alleges any criminality between herself and Apelles.

6. cuius energemate circumventus, 'misled by whose influence': *energema* refers to the influence of the evil spirit (ch. 6) with which Tertullian believed her to be possessed. The word recurs in the same connexion *de carn. Chr.* 24 'ad energema Apelleiacaе virginis Philumenen': comp. Hieronym. *Comment. in Gal.* i. 8; *Epist.* 133. 4.

7. Phaneroseis scripsit. It appears from Ps.-Tert. *adv. haer.* 6, that Apelles caused public lections to be read from this book of 'Manifestations' dictated by Philumena: *scripsit* = 'wrote at her dictation': comp. Hippol. *adv. haer.* x. 20.

8. discentes: see note, ch. 3.

10. ut dixit Dominus. S. Matt. vii. 16.

separaretur, postea factum separatum posteriorem ostendit separatorem. Item Valentinus, aliter exponens, et sine dubio emendans, hoc omnino quicquid emendat, ut mendosum retro, alterius fuisse demonstrat.

- 5 Hos ut insigniores et frequentiores adulteros veritatis nominamus. Ceterum et Nigidius nescio qui, et Hermogenes, et multi alii adhuc ambulant pervertentes vias Domini. Ostendant mihi ex qua auctoritate prodierint? Si alium Deum praedicant, quomodo eius Dei rebus et litteris
10 et nominibus utuntur, adversus quem praedicant? Si eundem, quomodo aliter? Pro bent se novos apostolos esse: dicant Christum iterum descendisse, iterum ipsum docuisse, iterum crucifixum, iterum mortuum, iterum resuscitatum. Sic enim apostolus descripsit [eum] apostolos solere facere;

4. alterius. So *Agob.*: antea *Rig.*, *Fulv. Urs.*

6. Nigidius nescio qui. Of Nigidius nothing is known (*Hilgenfeld, Ketzergeschichte*, 554). Hermogenes is attacked in an extant treatise of Tertullian.

8. Ostendant mihi: comp. *de carn. Chr.* 2 'Ex qua, oro te, auctoritate? si apostolus, praedica publice; si apostolicus, cum apostolis senti.' The argument is imitated by Optatus, iii. 11; and Pacian, *Epist.* 3.

9. quomodo eius Dei rebus: comp. *de carn. Chr.* 6 'Sed tamen quale est ut alterius regulae fides ab ea fide quam impugnat instrumentum argumentationibus suis mutuetur? Si alius Deus est, aliter sint res eius. Sed utantur haeretici omnes scripturis eius cuius utuntur etiam mundo.'

14. Sic enim apostolus, &c. There is an old-standing corruption of the text here. *Agob.* reads Sic enim apostolus descripsit. Solet facere dare, &c. *Leid.* and edd., Sic enim apostolos solet facere; dare, &c., which is simple enough, but does not account for the insertion of 'descripsit' in *Agob.* *Rigalt* proposed to omit 'solet facere' from the text of *Agob.*, and to understand 'Dicant' before 'dare':—thus, Sic enim apostolus descripsit. [Dicant] dare, &c., which gives good sense, but arbitrarily omits *facere*. *Oehler* boldly repeats 'sic enim,' punctuating thus, Sic enim apostolus descripsit, sic enim apostolos solet facere, dare, &c.; but the change of subject from 'apostolus' in the first clause to [Christus] in the second is very harsh. In the impossibility of rescuing the original words I have preferred to print the passage as

dare illis praeterea virtutem, eadem signa edendi, quae et ipse. Volo igitur et virtutes eorum proferri: nisi quod agnosco maximam virtutem eorum, qua apostolos in per-
versum aemulantur. Illi enim de mortuis vivos faciebant,
isti de vivis mortuos faciunt.

5

CAPUT XXXI.

SED ab excessu revertar ad principalitatem veritatis et posteritatem mendacitatis disputandam, ex illius quoque parabola patrocínio, quae bonum semen frumenti a Domino seminatum in primore constituit, avenarum autem sterilis faeni adulterium ab inimico diabolo postea superducit. 10
Proprie enim doctrinarum distinctionem figurat, quia et alibi verbum Dei seminis similitudo est. Ita ex ipso ordine manifestatur, id esse dominicum et verum, quod sit prius traditum: id autem extraneum et falsum, quod sit posterius immissum. Ea sententia manebit adversus posteriores 15
quasque haereses, quibus nulla constantia de conscientia competit ad defendendam sibi veritatem.

CAPUT XXXII.

CETERUM, si quae audent interserere se aetati apostolicae,

it stands in the text, recognizing the peculiarity of *Agob.*, and supplying 'apostolos' before 'solere' from *Leid.*

2. virtutes: see note, ch. 13.

CHAP. XXXI.—6. principalitatem: 'pre-eminence,' 'priority': so again *de anim.* 13. 'Principalitatem dicit quod statim a primordio fuit, posteritatem quod postea subrepsit' (*Rigalt*). 'Principalitas' stands for ἀρχή, *Iren.* i. 31. 1; ii. 1. 2; iii. 3. 1; v. 14.

7. disputandam. So *Agob.*, *Rig.*: deputandam *reliqui*.

8. parabola. S. Matt. xiii. 37 ff.

9. avenarum, 'wild oats' Cato, *de re rust.* 37. 4: comp. Plin. *N.H.* xviii. 17. § 149 'Primum omnium frumenti vitium avena est.'

10. faeni: properly 'hay': here, 'weed.'

CHAP. XXXII.—18. Ceterum, si quae audent. Having dealt with the question of date and late origin, Tertullian now brings forward

ut ideo videantur ab apostolis traditae, quia sub apostolis fuerunt, possumus dicere: Edant ergo origines ecclesiarum suarum; evolvant ordinem episcoporum suorum, ita per successionem ab initio decurrentem, ut primus ille episcopus
 5 aliquem ex apostolis, vel apostolicis viris qui tamen cum apostolis perseveraverit, habuerit auctorem et antecessorem. Hoc enim modo ecclesiae apostolicae census suos deferunt: sicut Smyrnaeorum ecclesia Polycarpum ab Ioanne collocatum refert; sicut Romanorum Clementem a Petro ordinatum

another argument, applicable to heresies which claimed to have existed from Apostolic times. The episcopal succession in each church from the Apostles forms the test of catholicity, and is the guarantee for the transmission of a pure faith. This appears to have been a very natural and usual argument in the early church. It is used by Hegesippus (*apud* Euseb. iv. 22, see Lightfoot, *Philippians*, p. 239; *Clem. Rom.* i. 154); by Irenaeus very fully, whom Tertullian here copies (see especially iii. 2, 3, 4; iv. 40. 2; 53. 2; v. 20; with Harvey's notes); and by Tertullian again *adv. Marc.* iv. 5; *Apol.* 47.

7. census: see note on *censeatur*, ch. 20.

8. Smyrnaeorum ecclesia Polycarpum. Iren. iii. 3. 4 Πολύκαρπος . . . ὑπὸ Ἀποστόλων κατασταθεὶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ἐν τῇ ἐν Σμύρνῃ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἐπίσκοπος . . . ταῦτα διδάσας ἀεί, ἃ καὶ παρὰ τῶν Ἀποστόλων ἔμαθεν, ἃ καὶ ἡ ἐκκλησία παραδίδωσιν, ἃ καὶ μόνα ἐστὶν ἀληθῆ. See Lightfoot, *Ignatius*, i. 441.

9. Romanorum Clementem a Petro. This statement is opposed to the traditional order of the early Roman succession witnessed to by Irenaeus, iii. 1. 1; 3. 3; by Eusebius, *H. E.* iii. 2, 4, 13, 15, 21; by Jerome *de vir. illustr.* 15; *Chron. Dom.* 12; by Epiphanius, *Huer.* xxvii. 6 (who probably reproduced Hegesippus, see Lightfoot, *Clem. Rom.* i. 329 ff.); and by Ruffinus, *Praef. in Recogn.*; who all insert Linus and Anenctetus between Peter and Clement. Nor does it find support in the Liberian Catalogue, which placed Clement immediately after Linus. The immediate appointment of Clement by Peter is found only in the Clementine fictions (Lightfoot, *u. s.* i. 64, 158, 344) which, though valueless historically, greatly influenced popular opinion in the West. Hence Jerome, *de vir. illustr.* 15, after naming the true Irenaeian order, adds 'tametsi plerique Latinorum secundum post Petrum apostolum fuisse Clementem': comp. *adv. Iovinian.* i. 12 'Clemens successor apostoli Petri'; *Comm. in Isaiam*, lii. 13 'Clemens vir apostolicus qui post Petrum Romanam rexit ecclesiam'; and the guesses of Epiphanius and Ruffinus, *ll. cc.*, and of the writer of the *Apost. Const.* vii. 46. 1

itidem. Perinde utique et ceterae exhibent quos ab apostolis in episcopatum constitutos apostolici seminis traduces habeant.

Confingant tale aliquid haeretici. Quid enim illis post blasphemiam illicitum est? Sed etsi confinxerint, nihil 5 promovebunt. Ipsa enim doctrina eorum cum apostolica comparata, ex diversitate et contrarietate sua pronuntiabit, neque apostoli alicuius auctoris esse, neque apostolici; quia sicut apostoli non diversa inter se docuissent, ita et apostolici non contraria apostolis edidissent, nisi illi qui ab apostolis 10 didicerunt aliter praedicaverunt. Ad hanc itaque formam probabuntur ab illis ecclesiis, quae licet nullum ex apostolis vel apostolicis auctorem suum proferant, ut multo posteriores, quae denique cottidie instituuntur, tamen in eadem fide conspirantes non minus apostolicae deputantur pro consan- 15 guinitate doctrinae.

Ita omnes haereses ad utramque formam a nostris ecclesiis provocatae probent se quaquam putant apostolicas. Sed adeo nec sunt, nec probare possunt quod non sunt; nec recipiuntur in pacem et communicationem ab ecclesiis quoquo 20 modo apostolicis, scilicet, ob diversitatem sacramenti nullo modo apostolicae.

CAPUT XXXIII.

ADHIBEO super haec ipsarum doctrinarum recognitionem, quae tunc sub apostolis fuerunt, ab isdem apostolis et

Τῆς δὲ Ῥωμαίων ἐκκλησίας Λίνος μὲν ὁ Κλαυδίας πρῶτος ὑπὸ Παύλου, Κλήμης δὲ μετὰ τὸν Λίνου θάνατον ὑπ' ἐμοῦ Πέτρου δεύτερος κεχειροτόνηται [ἐπίσκοπος]. On the whole subject of the early Roman succession, see Lightfoot, *u. s. i.* 201 ff.

3. traduces: see note, ch. 20.

11. didicerunt. So *Agob.*, *Rig.*: discesserunt, *Clem.*: desciverunt *rel.*

14. denique: see note, ch. 2.

17. ad utramque formam, i.e. Apostolic succession and Apostolic doctrine.

19. recipiuntur in pacem: see note, ch. 30.

21. sacramenti, 'doctrine': see note, ch. 20.

demonstratae et deieratae. Nam et sic facilius traducentur, dum aut iam tunc fuisse deprehenduntur, aut ex illis quae iam tunc fuerunt seminia sumpsisse.

Paulus in prima ad Corinthios notat negatores et
5 dubitatores resurrectionis: haec opinio propria Sadducaeorum. Partem eius usurpat Marcion et Apelles et Valentinus, et si qui alii resurrectionem carnis infringunt. Et ad Galatas scribens, invehitur in observatores et defensores circumcisionis et legis: Hebionis haeresis sic est.

CHAP. XXXIII.—1. *deieratae*, = 'eieratae,' 'reprobatae.'

traducentur. Tertullian commonly uses 'traducere' in the sense of 'patefacere,' 'revincere'; e.g. *de fug.* 2, 12; *ad Scap.* 2; *adv. Marc.* iii. 4; iv. 25, 36; *de anim.* 1. Similarly the subst. 'tractio' = 'exposure, refutation,' above ch. 22; *adv. Marc.* ii. 20. 'Tractio,' 'traducere' are the words regularly employed by the Latin translator of Irenaeus for ἐλεγχος, ἐλέγχειν: e.g. iii. *praef.*, 4, 2; v. *praef.*, 21, 2.

3. *seminia*. So *Agob.*: *semina reliqui*.

4. *ad Corinthios*. 1 Cor. xv. 12.

5. *Sadducaeorum*. S. Matt. xxii. 23; Acts xxiii. 8: comp. *de res. carn.* 36.

6. *Marcion*. *Adv. Marc.* v. 10. This was not a prominent or characteristic tenet of Marcion, though the denial of the resurrection did form a part of his teaching in common with that of all Gnostics, being in fact a corollary from their fundamental belief as to the inherent malignity of matter: comp. Iren. i. 25, 2 '[Marcion docuit] corpus autem, videlicet quoniam a terra sit sumptum, impossibile esse participare salutem.' Ps.-Tert. *adv. omn. haer.* 1 (Basilides).

8. *ad Galatas*. Gal. v. 2.

9. *Hebionis*. The supposition of a heresiarch Ebion is first found in Tertullian: comp. *de carn. Chr.* 14, 18; *de virg. vel.* 6; but it is now agreed that no such individual existed. The name 'Ebionite' comes from the Hebrew עֲבִיּוֹן 'poor,' and was no doubt a self-assumed title of these heretics in allusion to their voluntary poverty. Origen, *de prin.* iv. 22, followed by Euseb. *II. E.* iii. 27 *ad fin.* explains it as a term of reproach applied to them because of the poverty of their intellect; but elsewhere, *contr. Cel.* ii. 1 from the poverty of the Jewish Law to which they adhered. Eusebius also *l.c.* asserts that they were so called because of their mean and beggarly conceptions of the Person of Christ. Comp. Epiph. *Haer.* xxx. 17.

haeresis sic est. The heresy and the name Ἐβιωναῖοι, Ebionaei,

Timotheum instruens nuptiarum quoque interdictores suggillat : ita instituunt Marcion et Apelles eius secutor. Aequae tangit eos qui dicerent factam iam resurrectionem : id de se Valentiniani asseverant. Sed et cum genealogias indeterminatas nominat, Valentinus agnoscitur, apud quem Aeon ille 5 nescio qui novi et non unius nominis generat ex sua Charite Sensum et Veritatem : et hi aequae procreant ex se Sermonem et Vitam ; dehinc et isti generant Hominem et Ecclesiam ; de qua prima ogdoade Aeonum exinde decem alii, et duodecim reliqui Aeones miris nominibus oriuntur in meram fabulam 10 triginta Aeonum. Idem apostolus, cum improbat elementis

first occur in Irenaeus, i. 22, where their Judaizing tendencies are clearly stated ; ‘perseverant in his consuetudinibus quae sunt secundum legem et Iudaico caractere vitae’ : comp. Hippol. *adv. haer.* x. 22 Ζῶσι δὲ πάντα κατὰ νόμον Μωϋσῆ, οὕτω φάσκοντες δικαιόσθαι. For other early references to Ebionitism see Iren. iv. 52. 1 ; v. 1. 3. Hippol. vii. 22, x. 18 ; and the passages collected in Schliemann, *Die Clementinen*, p. 471. Nitzsch, *Dogmeng.* p. 37 ff. ; Harnack, *Dogmeng.* i. 226 ff.

1. **Timotheum.** 1 Tim. iv. 3.

suggillat, ‘cudgels’ : see note, ch. 8.

3. **factam iam resurrectionem.** 2 Tim. ii. 18. Cp. *de res. carn.* 19 ‘Itaque [dicunt] et resurrectionem eam vindicandam qua quis adita veritate redanimatus et revivificatus Deo ignorantiae morte discussa velut de sepulchro veteris hominis eruperit . . . Exinde ergo resurrectionem fide consecutos cum Domino esse cum eum in baptismo induerint.’ Iren. ii. 48. 2 ‘Tantum autem absunt ab eo ut mortuum excitent . . . ut ne quidem credant hoc in totum posse fieri : esse autem resurrectionem a mortuis, agnitionem eius, quae ab eis dicitur, veritatis.’

4. **Valentiniani.** Many of the Gnostics and Docetae admitted a ‘spiritual’ resurrection.

genealogias indeterminatas. 1 Tim. i. 4.

5. **Valentinus.** See Ps.-Tert. *adv. omni. haer.* 2, where the system is more fully, but somewhat confusedly, described.

6. **novi et non unius nominis.** Comp. *adv. Val.* 7 ‘[Valentinianorum deus] substantialiter quidem Αἰῶνα Τέλειον appellant, personaliter vero Προαρχὴν et Τὴν Ἀρχήν, etiam Bythōn’ ; Iren. i. 1. 1.

7. **Sensum = Νοῦν,** Iren. *l. c.*

8. **de qua = ‘ex qua.’**

11. **elementis servientes.** Gal. iv. 9.

servientes, aliquid Hermogenis ostendit, qui materiam non natam introducens, Deo non nato eam comparat; et ita matrem elementorum deam faciens, potest ei servire, quam Deo comparat.

- 5 Ioannes vero in Apocalypsi idolothyta edentes et stupra committentes iubetur castigare. Sunt et nunc alii Nicolaitae. Gaiana haeresis dicitur. At in epistula eos maxime antichristos vocat, qui Christum negarent in carne venisse, et qui non putarent Iesum esse Filium Dei: illud Marcion,

1. aliquid Hermogenis: *adv. Herm.* 4 'Hinc denique incipiam de materia retractare, quod eam Deus sibi comparet proinde non natam, proinde non factam, proinde eternam sine initio, sine fine propositam.'

5. Apocalypsi. *Rev.* ii. 14.

6. Nicolaitae. On these heretics, named from Nicolas the Deacon, whose teaching they probably perverted, see *Iren.* i. 23, iii. 11. 7, who is followed by Hippolytus, vii. 36; *Ps.-Tert. adv. haer.* 1; *Epiph. Haer.* xxv. *Clem. Alex. Strom.* ii. 20, iii. 4 (pp. 411, 436, Paris ed.) gives an independent account quoted by Euseb. *H. E.* iii. 29, and followed by Theodore, *Haer. fab.* iii. 1. The sect is mentioned also *Apost. Const.* vi. 8; *Ps.-Ignat. Trall.* 11; *Phil.* 6, and in every case denounced for its impurities. Nothing is certainly known of the Nicolaitans beyond what is said in the Apocalypse, nor is there any evidence of their continuance as a sect after the death of the Apostle John.

7. Gaiana haeresis. So *Agob., Leid.*, and again *de bapt.* 1. The name takes various forms in different writers, see *D. C. B.* i. 380, but the sect is generally known as the 'Cainite,' a branch of the Ophites. They probably derived their appellation from a current interpretation of the name 'Cain'; *Clem. Hom.* iii. 25, 42 *Κάιν δ' ἐρμηνεύεται ζῆλος* (Νῆρ). Their tenets are described by Irenaeus, i. 28. 9; *Ps.-Tert. adv. haer.* 2; *Epiph. Haer.* 38. They regarded the Creator as an evil being, and reversed the moral judgements of the O. T., opposing all Christian principles and making immorality a necessary part of their religion. Hence Tertullian terms them 'modern Nicolaitans.' Harvey, *Iren.* i. 214, note 1, has misunderstood Tertullian's words to imply an identification of the two sects.

in epistula. 1 John iv. 3.

8. carne, carnem, *Agob.*

9. illud Marcion. Marcion, in accordance with his Gnostic beliefs, denied that Christ had a real earthly body, or a human birth. The latter would have involved in Marcion's view Christ's subjection

hoc Hebion vindicavit. Simonianae autem magiae disciplina angelis serviens, utique et ipsa inter idololatrias deputabatur, et a Petro apostolo in ipso Simone damnabatur.

CAPUT XXXIV.

HAEC sunt, ut arbitror, genera doctrinarum adulterinarum, quae sub apostolis fuisse ab ipsis apostolis discimus: et tamen 5 nullam invenimus institutionem inter tot diversitates perver- sitatum, quae de Deo creatore universorum controversiam moverit. Nemo alterum Deum ausus est suspicari. Facilius de Filio quam de Patre haesitabatur, donec Marcion praeter creatorem alium Deum solius bonitatis induceret; Apelles 10 creatorem, angelum nescio quem gloriosum superioris Dei faceret Deum legis et Israëlitis, illum igneum affirmans; Valentinus Aeonas suos spargeret, et unius Aeonis vitium in originem deduceret Dei creatoris. His solis et his primis 15 revelata est veritas divinitatis, maiorem scilicet dignationem et plenior gratiam a diabolo consecutis, qui Deum sic

to the Demiurge. His Christology is described by Hippolytus, *adv. haer.* x. 19 Τὸν δὲ Χριστὸν υἱὸν εἶναι τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ καὶ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ πεπéμφθαι ἐπὶ σωτηρίᾳ τῶν ψυχῶν, ὃν ἔσω ἄνθρωπον καλεῖ, ὡς ἄνθρωπον φανέντα λέγων, οὐκ ὄντα ἄνθρωπον, καὶ ὡς ἔνσαρκον, οὐκ ἔνσαρκον, δοκῇ πεφηνότα, οὔτε γένεσιν ὑπομείναντα οὔτε πάθος, ἀλλὰ τῷ δοκεῖν. Comp. notes Ps.-Tert. *adv. omn. haer.* 3, 6.

I. hoc Hebion. The Ebionite Christology was purely psilanthropic, regarding Jesus simply as the son of Joseph and Mary, agreeing in this point with the tenets of Cerinthus and Carpocrates. *Iren.* i. 22; *Hippol.* vii. 34; *Epiph. Haer.* 30: comp. Ps.-Tert. *adv. omn. haer.* 3.

Simonianae. *Acts* viii. 9 ff.; *Iren.* i. 16; Ps.-Tert. *adv. omn. haer.* 1.

CHAP. XXXIV.—10. Deum solius bonitatis: see above, ch. 7.

11. angelum: see above, ch. 7; comp. *de res. carn.* 5 'Futile et frivolum istud corpusculum . . . etsi ignei alicuius exstructio aequae angeli, ut Apelles docet,' &c.; *de carn. Chr.* 8; *de anim.* 23 'Apelles sollicitas refert animas terrenis escis de supercaelestibus sedibus ab igneo angelo, deo Israelitis et nostro,' &c.

13. unius Aeonis vitium. The fall of Sophia from the Pleroma; see note, ch. 7.

quoque voluerit aemulari, ut de doctrinis venenorum, quod Dominus negavit, ipse faceret discipulos super magistrum.

Eligant igitur sibi tempora universae haereses, quae quando fuerint, dummodo intersit quae quando, dum de
 5 veritate non sint et utique quae sub apostolis non fuerunt, fuisse non possint. Si autem fuissent, nominarentur et ipsae, ut et ipsae coercendae essent. Quae vero sub apostolis non fuerunt, in sua nominatione damnantur. Sive ergo eadem nunc sunt aliquanto expolitiores, quae sub apostolis rudes,
 10 habent suam exinde damnationem : sive aliae quidem fuerunt, aliae autem postea obortae, quasdam ex illis opiniones usurpaverunt, habendo cum eis consortium praedicationis, habeant necesse est etiam consortium damnationis; praecedente illo fine supradicto posteritatis, quo etsi nihil de damnaticis
 15 participarent, de aetate sola praeiudicarentur; tanto magis adulterae, quanto nec ab apostolis nominatae. Unde firmiter constat, has esse, quae adhuc tunc nuntiabantur futurae.

CAPUT XXXV.

HIS definitionibus provocatae a nobis et revictae haereses omnes, sive quae posterae, sive quae coetaneae apostolorum,

1. *aemulari*: see note, *Apol.* 2. 'Aemulus' and its kindred words are constantly used by Tertullian for 'inimicus,' &c., e. g. below, ch. 40. 'Aemulus' is uniformly used of the devil, *de spect.* 8.

4. *dummodo intersit*. An ironical parenthesis, *more Tertulliani*, the misunderstanding of which has led to many alterations of the passage. The text follows *Agob.* throughout, with the exception of the insertion of 'quae' after 'utique.' *Oehler* prints 'dum non intersit,' which is nonsense. *Routh* conjectured 'cum non intersit.'

5. *et utique*, &c. *Leid.*, *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.* omit 'et' before 'utique,' and read 'possunt' for 'possint.' *Rig.* following the conjecture of *Fulv. Ursin.* altered and recast the text—'Utique quae ab apostolis nominatae non fuerunt, sub apostolis fuisse non possunt.'

7. *Quae sub apostolis non fuerunt*. The heresies mentioned above of Marcion, Valentinus, and Apelles.

14. *quo etsi*. *Leid.*, *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*, *Rig.*; *quod etsi Agob.*, *Oehl.*

dummodo diversae; sive generaliter, sive specialiter notatae ab eis, dummodo praedamnatae; audeant respondere et ipsae aliquas eiusmodi praescriptiones adversus nostram disciplinam. Si enim negant veritatem eius, debent probare illam quoque haeresin esse, eadem forma revictam, qua ipsae 5 revincuntur; et ostendere simul ubinam quaerenda sit veritas, quam apud illas non esse iam constat.

Posterior nostra res non est, immo omnibus prior est, et hoc erit testimonium veritatis ubique occupantis principatum: apostolis ubique non damnatur, immo defenditur, 10 hoc erit indicium proprietatis. Quam enim non damnant, qui extraneam quamque damnaverunt, suam ostendunt, ideoque et defendunt.

CAPUT XXXVI.

AGE iam qui voles curiositatem melius exercere in negotio salutis tuae, percurrere ecclesias apostolicas, apud quas ipsae 15 adhuc cathedrae apostolorum suis locis praesident; apud quas [ipsae] authenticae litterae eorum recitantur, sonantes

CHAP. XXXV.—3. disciplinam: see note, ch. 6.

CHAP. XXXVI.—14. Age iam. The argument of this chapter is a striking rhetorical expansion of Iren. iii. 3. 1; cp. *adv. Marc.* iv. 5.

15. ipsae adhuc cathedrae. Comp. the legend in Euseb. *II. E.* vii. 19 of the preservation in his day of the *θρόνος* of S. James at Jerusalem; but see note below.

16. suis locis praesident, 'have jurisdiction over their own districts'; see Lightfoot, *Ignatius*, ii. 190.

17. [ipsae]: omitted, perhaps rightly, by *Leid.*

authenticae litterae, 'authentic epistles,' the churches immediately named being examples of those to which epistles were addressed. Tertullian uses 'authenticus' in the sense rather of 'genuine,' 'true,' than of 'original'; and here the contrast is implied between the true text preserved by the Apostolic Churches, and the mutilated or corrupt copies used by the heretics. For the meaning of *authenticus* see *adv. Marc.* iv. 35 '[Christus] erat authenticus Pontifex Dei Patris'; *adv. Val.* 4 'de ecclesia authenticae regulae abruptit.' So too perhaps *de monog.* 11 'Sciamus plane non sic esse *in Graeco authentico* quomodo in usum exiit,' where the italicized words may

vocem et repraesentantes faciem uniuscuiusque. Proxima est tibi Achaia? Habes Corinthum. Si non longe es a Macedonia, habes Philippos. Si potes in Asiam tendere, habes Ephesum. Si autem Italiae adiaces, habes Romam, unde nobis quoque auctoritas praesto est. Ista quam felix ecclesia cui totam doctrinam apostoli cum sanguine suo profuderunt: ubi Petrus passioni dominicae adaequatur; ubi

simply mean 'in the genuine text,' and not necessarily contain an implied contrast to the Latin Version. In the present passage, Tertullian no more meant to assert the possession of the Apostolic autographs by Apostolic Churches than their possession of the very charis used by the Apostles.

1. *repraesentantes*. 'Repraesentare' is a legal term, 'to bring into court,' and so 'to exhibit a thing and make it present to the senses or the mind.' So *Apol.* 17 (see note), *de spect.* 17; *de paen.* 3; *adv. Marc.* i. 14 'panem quo ipsum corpus suum repraesentat'; *ib.* iv. 22. So 'repraesentatio,' 'the actuality' is opposed to 'visio,' *de coron.* 15: cp. *Pass. S. Perp.* 1 'quasi repraesentatione rerum,' *Texts and Studies*, i. 2, p. 9.

3. *Philippos*. *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*, *Rig.* add 'habes Thessalonicenses'; but the adjectival form of the words suggests that they were the insertion of a copyist desirous of mentioning the other Macedonian Church to which S. Paul wrote.

4. *Romam unde nobis*. *Adv. Marc.* iv. 5 'Videamus . . . quid etiam Romani de proximo sonent, quibus evangelium et Petrus et Paulus sanguine quoque suo signatum reliquerunt.' The African Church was not founded by an Apostle, but from Italy. Rome was therefore its natural authority. Indeed as the only 'Apostolic' Church of the West, and in deference to its unique foundation and history, the Roman Church was generally regarded as the great depositary of Apostolic tradition (*Iren.* iii. 3. 1); yet still only as 'one witness to the truth,' and as standing to the West in no different position from that of Corinth or Ephesus to their respective localities. See Pusey, *Rule of Faith*, p. 31.

6. *totam doctrinam*, without any reservation such as the heretics asserted, ch. 25.

7. *Petrus . . . adaequatur*. Tertullian (here and *Scorp.* 15) is the first to relate that S. Peter suffered martyrdom by crucifixion; Origen *apud* Euseb. iii. 1 adds that he was crucified head-downwards. The martyrdom is mentioned by Clement of Rome, *Corinth.* 5, but neither the place nor the manner is specified. Dionysius of Corinth

Paulus Ioannis exitu coronatur; ubi apostolus Ioannes, posteaquam in oleum igneum demersus nihil passus est, in insulam relegatur. Videamus quid didicerit, quid docuerit, quid cum Africanis quoque ecclesiis contesserarit. Unum Deum novit, creatorem universitatis, et Christum Iesum ex 5 Virgine Maria Filium Dei creatoris, et carnis resurrectionem: legem et prophetas cum evangelicis et apostolicis litteris miscet; inde potat fidem; eam aqua signat, Sancto Spiritu vestit, eucharistia pascit, martyrio exhortatur, et ita adversus hanc institutionem neminem recipit.

10

apud Euseb. ii. 25 asserts that S. Peter and S. Paul both suffered at Rome and about the same time. Tradition generally affirmed that both apostles were martyred in the same year, if not on the same day, but on no sufficient grounds. Indeed the date of S. Peter's death is most uncertain. On his connexion with Rome see Lightfoot, *Clem. Rom.* ii. 481ff.

1. Paulus. S. Peter and S. Paul are constantly mentioned together in connexion with the Roman Church; *Clem. Rom. Corinth.* 5; Ignatius, *Rom.* 4; Dionys. Cor., and Caius *apud* Euseb. ii. 25; and the beheading of S. Paul under Nero is historically established.

Ioannis. John the Baptist.

exitu: see note, ch. 2.

Ioannes . . . passus est. Comp. Hieronym. *ad Matt.* xx. 23. This tradition has no historical value. For its possible source see Salmon, *Introduction to N. T.* p. 382.

4. **contesserarit:** see note, ch. 20.

Unum Deum, &c. The points of belief specially singled out for mention are those impugned by the Gnostics:—the Unity of God, the real Incarnation by a virgin-birth, the resurrection of the flesh, and the unity of Holy Scripture: chs. 33, 42.

8. **miscet,** 'unites'; for this sense of 'miscere,' see above, ch. 27. *Apol.* 21 (see note); *ib.* 39; *adv. Marc.* ii. 27; *Iren.* iii. 18. 3; *Leo, Sermon.* 23 in nat. Dom. iii.

signat. A frequent expression for Holy Baptism is 'signaculum fidei,' *de spect.* 24; or simply 'signaculum nostrum,' *ib.* 4.

Spiritu vestit. Comp. *de bapt.* 13 'obsignatio baptismi, vestimentum quodammodo fidei, quæ retro erat unda'; *de monog.* 7, where the 'clothing' is attributed to Christ.

9. **martyrio.** The ablative is read in *Gel., Pam.,* and seems demanded by the context. *Agob., Leid., Vat., Rhen., Gang., Rig.* give 'martyrium.'

Haec est institutio, non dico iam quae futuras haereses praenuntiabat, sed de qua haereses prodierunt. Sed non sunt ex illa, ex quo factae sunt adversus illam. Etiam de olivae nucleo mitis et opimae et necessariae asper oleaster 5 oritur; etiam de papavere ficus gratissimae et suavissimae ventosa et vana caprificus exsurgit. Ita et haereses de nostro fructice, non nostro genere, [de] veritatis grano, sed mendacio silvestres.

CAPUT XXXVII.

SI haec ita se habent, ut veritas nobis adiudicetur, qui-
10 cumque in ea regula incedimus, quam ecclesia ab apostolis, apostoli a Christo, Christus a Deo tradidit; constat ratio propositi nostri, definientis non esse admittendos haereticos ad ineundam de scripturis provocationem, quos sine scripturis probamus ad scripturas non pertinere.

15 Si enim haeretici sunt, Christiani esse non possunt, non a Christo habendo quod de sua electione sectati haereticorum

5. de papavere ficus, 'from the seed of the fig': 'papavere' = 'semine.'

6. caprificus. Comp. Plin. *H. N.* xv. 19, § 79 'Caprificus vocatur e silvestri genere ficus nunquam maturescens.'

7. [de] veritatis grano: 'de' is not found in the MSS., but seems to be required. The text follows *Ayob.*, *Rig.* Most edd. with *Leid.*, *Gorz.* read 'haereses de nostro fructicaverunt, non nostrae: degeneres veritatis grano, et mendacio silvestres.'

CHAP. XXXVII.—II. ratio propositi nostri: ch. 15.

15. Christiani esse non possunt. Comp. above, chs. 7, 14, 16; Cyprian. *de eccl. unit.* 14 'nec Christianus videri potest qui non permanet in evangelii eius et fidei veritate'; Salvian. *de Gub. Dei*, iv. 1 'qui Christiani nominis opus non agit Christianus non esse videtur'; Augustin. *Epist. 1 ad Serap.* § 28. Error in action, as well as error in belief, deprived men of the right to the Christian name, see *Apol.* 44.

non a Christo habendo. Christians are so named from Christ, but heretics from their self-chosen leaders or opinions. Comp. Ignatius, *Magn.* 10; *Rom.* 3; Epiph. *Haer.* 42; Pacian, *Epist.* 1; Lactant. *Inst. Div.* iv. 30 'Cum enim Phryges, aut Novatiani, aut Valentiniani, aut Marcionitae, aut Anthropiani, aut Ariani, seu quilibet alii nomi-

nomine admittunt. Ita non Christiani, nullum ius capiunt Christianarum litterarum ad quos merito dicendum est: Qui estis? quando et unde venistis? quid in meo agitis, non mei? quo denique, Marcion, iure silvam meam caedis? qua licentia, Valentine, fontes meos transvertis? qua potestate, 5 Apelles, limites meos commoves? Mea est possessio. Quid hic, ceteri, ad voluntatem vestram seminatis et pascitis? Mea est possessio, olim possideo, prior possideo, habeo origines firmas ab ipsis auctoribus, quorum fuit res. Ego sum heres apostolorum. Sicut caverunt testamento suo, sicut fidei 10 commiserunt, sicut adiuraverunt, ita teneo. Vos certe exheredaverunt semper et abdicaverunt, ut extraneos, ut inimicos. Unde autem extranei et inimici apostolis haeretici, nisi ex diversitate doctrinae, quam unusquisque de suo arbitrio adversus apostolos aut protulit, aut recepit? 15

nantur, Christiani esse desierunt, qui Christi nomine amisso humana et externa vocabula induerunt.' Athan. *Orat. c. Ar.* i. 3.

1. non Christiani, i. e. 'haeretici.'

4. denique: see note, ch. 2.

Marcion . . . Valentine. The one excised, the other perverted: see next chapter.

silvam meam caedis? For the metaphor comp. *Apol.* 4 'squalentam silvam legum caeditis'; *de anim.* 3; *de coron.* 10; *de pud.* 16; *ad nat.* ii. 9.

6. Apelles. Who imitated his master in the mutilation of Scripture; Hippol. x. 38 τῶν δὲ εὐαγγελίων, ἣ τοῦ ἀποστόλου τὰ μὴ ἀρέσκοντα αὐτῷ αἰρεῖται.

8. origines firmas, 'sure title-deeds.'

10. caverunt. This is the technical legal sense of 'cavere,' 'to dispose,' 'decree by will or in writing.' Comp. Cicero, *in Verr.* ii. 1. 11; *de fin.* ii. 31. 103; Sueton. *Aug.* 1, *et saep.*

fidei commiserunt. 1 Tim. i. 18; 2 Tim. i. 14, ii. 2; Tit. i. 5.

11. adiuraverunt. 1 Tim. v. 21, vi. 13; 2 Tim. iv. 1.

12. abdicaverunt. The technical law-term in late Latin for 'disinheriting,' 'disowning'; Quint. iii. 6. 97 *et saep.*; *Apol.* 3, 6; *de exh. cast.* 13.

extraneos, 'aliens,' 'outsiders'; so *Apol.* 7, 16, 31.

14. unusquisque de suo arbitrio. Tertullian is following Hegippus who, after naming various heretical sects, adds ἕκαστος ἰδίως καὶ ἐτέρως ἰδίαν δόξαν παρεισηγάγosan (*apud* Euseb. *II. E.* iv. 22).

CAPUT XXXVIII.

- ILLIC igitur et scripturarum et expositionum adulteratio deputanda est, ubi doctrinae diversitas invenitur. Quibus fuit propositum aliter docendi, eos necessitas coegit aliter disponendi instrumenta doctrinae. Alias enim non potuissent
 5 aliter docere, nisi aliter haberent per quae docerent. Sicut illis non potuisset succedere corruptela doctrinae sine corruptela instrumentorum eius; ita et nobis integritas doctrinae non competisset sine integritate eorum, per quae doctrina tractatur.
- 10 Etenim quid contrarium nobis in nostris? quid de proprio intulimus, ut aliquid contrarium ei et in scripturis deprehensum detractatione vel adiectione vel transmutatione remediaremus? Quod sumus, hoc sunt scripturae ab initio suo. Ex illis sumus, antequam aliter fuit, antequam a vobis inter-
 15 polarentur. Cum autem omnis interpolatio posterior credenda sit, veniens utique ex caussa aemulationis, quae neque prior, neque domestica unquam est eius, quod aemulatur; tam incredibile est sapienti cuique, ut nos adulterum stilum intu-

CHAP. XXXVIII.—4. instrumenta doctrinae. ‘Instrumentum’ is a common word in Tertullian for the Scriptures: *Apol.* 18 ‘instrumentum litteraturae,’ *ib.* 19, 47 ‘vetus instrumentum,’ ‘the Old Testament’; *adv. Jud.* 1; *de monog.* 4, 7; *adv. Marc.* i. 10, 19 ‘utriusque instrumenti,’ ‘of each Testament’; iv. 1 ‘duos deos dividens . . . alterum alterius instrumenti, vel, quod magis usui est dicere, Testamenti,’ iv. 2; v. 2; *de spect.* 5; *de res. carn.* 39. Below ‘integralo instrumento’ is the ‘whole volume’ of the sacred writings, like ‘tota instrumenta,’ *adv. Prax.* 28. Tertullian also uses ‘instrumenta’ of heathen documents, *Apol.* 10; *de test. anim.* 1. Late Latin writers apply it to public or official records, Sueton. *Vesp.* 8; *Cal.* 8.

14. antequam aliter fuit, &c. So *Agob.*, *Rig.* This will mean ‘before any divergent teaching existed.’ *Leid.*, *Rhen.*, *Gang.* ‘antequam nihil aliter fuit quam sumus. Quid denique fuit antequam nobis interpolarentur.’ But the sense demands ‘vobis.’

18. stilum. Loosely used for ‘text’ or ‘reading,’ as above, ch. 17. Below it is simply ‘pen,’ as generally. Comp. its use *adv. Marc.* i. 1; *de idol.* 23; *de bapt.* 12; *Apol.* 19.

lisce videamur scripturis, qui sumus a principio et primi, quam illos non intulisse, qui sunt et posterius et adversi.

Alius manu scripturas, alius sensus expositione intervertit. Neque enim si Valentinus integro instrumento uti videtur, non callidior ingenio quam Marcion manus intulit veritati. 5 Marcion enim exserte et palam machaera, non stilo usus est, quoniam ad materiam suam caedem scripturarum confecit. Valentinus autem pepercit, quoniam non ad materiam scripturas, sed materiam ad scripturas excogitavit: et tamen plus abstulit et plus adiecit, auferens proprietates singulorum 10 quoque verborum, et adiciens dispositiones non comparentium rerum.

CAPUT XXXIX.

ERANT ingenia de spiritalibus nequitiae, cum quibus luctatio est nobis, fratres, merito contemplanda, fidei necessaria, ut electi manifestentur, ut reprobi detegantur. Et ideo 15

3. intervertit. Comp. ch. 17.

6. Marcion. Comp. Iren. i. 25; Epiph. *Haer.* 42: from these writers and from Tertullian's treatise against him, we learn that Marcion rejected the whole of the Old Testament, and received only S. Luke's Gospel and ten of S. Paul's Epistles (*Galat.*, 1 and 2 *Corinth.*, *Rom.*, 1 and 2 *Thess.*, *Eph.*, *Coloss.*, *Phil.*, *Philipp.*), all in a greatly mutilated condition. For a detailed account of his alterations, see Lardner, *Hist. of Heretics*, ch. x. §§ 35 ff. Cf. Theodoret, *Haer. fab.* i. 24; Cyr. Jer. *Catech.* vi. 16; xvi. 7; Orig. *c. Cels.* ii. 27; Ps.-Tert. *adv. omn. haer.* 6.

8. Valentinus autem, &c. Occasionally however Valentinus did 'invent scripture to suit his theme': see Theodoret, *Haer. fab.* i. 7; Iren. i. 1. 8, where it appears that he added *θεόρητες* to *Coloss.* i. 16; and again Iren. i. 1. 16, where *οὐκ οἶδα* is added to S. John xii. 27. Comp. too the Valentinian Ptolemaeus' heretical reading and perversion of S. John i. 14, quoted Iren. i. 1. 18 (with Harvey's note, i. p. 79). The Valentinian perversions are detailed by Iren. i. 1. 15 ff.

CHAP. XXXIX.—13. Erant. *Agob., Rig.*: Haec sunt *rel.*

ingenia, 'inventions,' 'artifices': so *Apol.* 15 'lasciviae ingenia' (see note); *ib.* 22 'cetera ingenia vel etiam vires fallaciae spiritalis'; *ib.* 49; *ad mart.* 4 'omne carnificis ingenium in tormentis.'

spiritalibus nequitiae. Eph. vi. 12.

15. ut electi manifestentur. Comp. 1 Cor. xi. 19.

habent vim, et in excogitandis instruendisque erroribus facilitatem, non adeo mirandam, quasi difficilem et inexplicabilem, cum de saecularibus quoque scripturis exemplum praesto sit eiusmodi facilitatis. Vides hodie ex Vergilio fabulam in
 5 totum aliam componi, materia secundum versus, et versibus secundum materiam concinnatis. Denique Hosidius Geta Medeam tragoediam ex Vergilio plenissime exsuxit. Meus quidam propinquus ex eodem poeta inter cetera stili sui otia Pinacem Cebetis explicuit. Homerocentones etiam vocari
 10 solent, qui de carminibus Homeri propria opera more cen-

4. Vides. So *Agob.*, *Rig.* : quo ius *Leid.*, *Rhen.* : vis *Gel.*, *Pam.*

in totum. This form of the adverbial phrase is common in late prose writers (Quintillian, Pliny, Seneca), and very usual in Tertullian.

6. Denique : see note, ch. 2.

Hosidius Geta. So *Rig.* The name varies in the MSS. : Vosidius *Agob.* ; Ovidius citra *Leid.* : Offidius *Vatic.* Nothing is known of this writer beyond this isolated notice of him. He was evidently a contemporary of Tertullian, and therefore cannot be identified with *Ῥαῖος* 'Οσίδιος Γέρας mentioned in Dion Cass. lx. 9, 20.

7. Medeam tragoediam. This tragedy is extant, and is included in Burmann's *Anthol. Lat.* i. 178, and in Wernsdorf's *Poet. Lat. Min.* vii. 441 (Paris, 1826). It is a Virgilian cento consisting of 462 verses, and is 'perhaps the earliest specimen' of that kind of literature.

8. stili sui otia, 'literary trifles'; comp. Ovid. *Trist.* ii. 224 'Excultasque oculis otia nostra tuis.'

9. Pinacem Cebetis. Πίναξ, Tabula, was the title of one of three Dialogues by Cebes, the Pythagorean philosopher of Thebes. This most popular work is referred to by several ancient writers : Diog. Laert. ii. 125 ; Lucian. *Apol.* 42 ; in *rhét. pr.* 6 ; Pollux, iii. 16. Scaliger suggested that 'Cebetis' should be read for 'Cerberi,' *de coron.* 7 'Habes tragoediam Cerberi.'

Homerocentones. Properly applied to the patchwork poems, but according to the text *Agob.*, *Leid.*, *Rig.* here used of the poetasters. The early edd. printed 'Homeri- (v. Homero-) centonas . . . vocare.' For a specimen see *Iren.* i. 1. 20. Comp. Hieronym. *Epist.* 103 *ad Paulin.* On the literary influence of the poems of Homer at this period see Hatch, *Hibbert Lect.*, p. 30 ; and for traces of the influence of Homeric centones on the early Christian sacred literature, Harris, *Study of Codex Bezae*, pp. 49, 237. These curious patchworks are treated by Manitius, *Gesch. d. christl. latein. Poesie* (Stuttgart, 1891).

tonario ex multis hinc inde compositis in unum sarciant corpus. Et utique fecundior divina litteratura ad facultatem cuiusque materiae. Nec periclitor dicere ipsas quoque scripturas sic esse ex Dei voluntate dispositas ut haereticis materias subministrarent; cum legam oportere haereses esse, quae sine scripturis esse non possunt.

CAPUT XL.

SEQUETUR a quo intellectus interpretetur eorum quae ad haereses faciant? A diabolo scilicet, cuius sunt partes intervertendi veritatem, qui ipsas quoque res sacramentorum divinatorum idolorum mysteriis aemulatur. Tingit et ipse quosdam, utique credentes et fideles suos; expositionem delictorum de lavacro repromittit; et si adhuc memini,

5. oportere haereses esse. 1 Cor. xi. 19.

CHAP XL.—7. *Sequetur.* So *Agob.*, *Rig.* Sed quaeritur *rel.*

interpretetur. Passive, as *de bapt.* 19 ‘nec incongruenter ad figuram interpretabitur’; *ad nat.* i. 3 ‘Christianum nomen de unctione interpretatur.’ Cicero, *de div.* i. 25. 53; Ammian. Marc. xxiv. 6; Lactant. iv. 7. 7.

8. A diabolo. Comp. *de virg. vel.* 15 ‘Hoc vos interdum diabolo interpretamur, ipsius est enim boni odium’; where note that *interpretari* with dat. = *deputare*, *adtribuere*.

10. aemulatur: see note, ch. 34.

tingit: see *de bapt.* 5 ‘Nam et sacris quibusdam per lavacrum initiantur, Isidis alicuius aut Mithrae. . . Certe ludis Apollinaribus et Eleusiniis tinguntur.’ Comp. Iust. Mart. *dial. c. Try.* 70, 78; Clem. Alex. *Strom.* v. 11; August. *c. Don.* vi. 25.

11. expositionem delictorum. So *Agob.*, *Rig.*: expiationem (by an easy correction) *rel.* By African writers ‘exponere’ is constantly used for ‘deponere’; see *de pall.* 5; *de orat.* 15; *adv. Marc.* v. 10; *de res. carn.* 45. Cyprian. *Epist.* 73 *ad Iubai.* § 21 ‘peccata antiqua non exposuerit’; Firmilian *apud* Cypr. *Epist.* 75, § 20. Lactant. iii. 26, vii. 5. Arnob. ii. 41, iv. 26. Comp. Paul. Nolan. *Carm.* xxiii. 609

‘Ne maneam terrenus Adam, sed virgine terra
Nascar, et exposito veteri, nova former imago.’

12. de lavacro. On *de instrumenta*, see note, ch. 3.

Mithra signat illic in frontibus milites suos; celebrat et panis oblationem, et imaginem resurrectionis inducit, et sub gladio redimit coronam. Quid? quod et summum pontificem in unius nuptiis statuit? Habet et virgines, habet et con-

1. **Mithra signat**; comp. *adv. Marc.* i. 13; Augustin. *Enarr. in Psalm.* i 'Ceterum opinari etiam liceat Mithram sive Satanam signasse in frontibus milites suos, aemulatione unctionis Christianae.' Iust. Mart. *Dial. c. Try.* 70; Orig. *c. Cels.* vi. 22. On the Mithraic sacraments see King, *Gnostics*, pp. 122 ff, and on the 'Mark of Mithras,' *ib.* p. 139. Döllinger, *Heidenthum*, p. 373. Hardwick, *Christ and other Masters*, pp. 568 ff. Hatch, *Infl. of Greek ideas*, p. 292.

illic, in lavacro, in mysteriis.

panis oblationem. Iust. Mart. *Apol.* i. 66 ὅπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς τοῦ Μίθρα μυστηρίοις παρέδωκαν γίνεσθαι μμησάμενοι οἱ πονηροὶ δαίμονες· ὅτι γὰρ ἄρτος καὶ ποτήριον ὕδατος τίθεται ἐν τοῖς τοῦ μνουμένου τελεταῖς μετ' ἐπιλόγων τινῶν.

2. **imaginem resurrectionis.** See the account of Mithraic ceremonies in Iul. Firm. Maternus, *de err. prof. rel.* 20, 21, 27 *apud* Migne, *P. L.* xii. King, *u. s.* would explain this phrase by that 'simulation of death' in the Mithraic rites—one of the tests of the candidate's fortitude—which is referred to by Lampridius, *Commod.* 9 (quoted next note), and 'typified on so many talismans by the corpse bestridden by the Solar Lion.'

sub gladio redimit coronam, 'wins a crown under the sword.' This is explained by a passage *de coron.* 15 'cum [Mithrae miles] initiatur in spelaeo, in castris vere tenebrarum, coronam interposito gladio sibi oblatam, quasi minimum martyrii, dehinc capiti suo accommodatam, monetur obvia manu a capite pellere et in humerum, si forte, transferre.' Comp. Lamprid. *Commod.* 9 'sacra Mithriaca homicidio vero polluit, cum illic aliquid ad speciem timoris vel dici vel fingi soleat.' For an account of the Mithraic rites see King, *u. s.*; Lajard, *Recherches sur le culte de Mithra* (Paris, 1847); Prof. Stark, *Zwei Mithraeen der Grossherzoggl. Alterthümersammlung in Karlsruhe* 1864; Sainte-Croix, *Myst. du Paganisme*, ii. p. 120 ff.; de Boze in *Mém. des Inscr.* ii. 443.

3. **summum pontificem . . . statuit.** *Ad uxor.* i. 7 'Pontificem Maximum rursus nubere nefas est'; *de esh. cast.* 13 'Certe Flaminica non nisi univira est: quae et Flaminis lex est. Nam quod ipsi Pontifici Maximo iterare matrimonium non licet'; *de monog.* 17. Hieronym. *Epist.* 123 *ad Ageruch.* § 8 'Flamen unius uxoris ad sacerdotium admittitur.' The implied reference is of course to the rule laid down. 1 Tim. iii. 2; Tit. i. 6.

4. **virgines . . . continentes.** The two terms are distinct. 'Conti-

tinentes. Ceterum si Numae Pompilii superstitiones revolvamus, si sacerdotalia officia et insignia et privilegia, si sacrificalia ministeria, et instrumenta et vasa ipsorum sacrificiorum, ac piaculorum et votorum curiositates consideremus, nonne manifeste diabolus morositatem illam Iudaicae legis 5 imitatus est?

Qui ergo ipsas res, de quibus sacramenta Christi administrantur, tam aemulanter affectavit exprimere in negotiis idololatriae; utique et idem et eodem ingenio gestiit, et potuit instrumenta quoque divinarum rerum et sanctorum 10 Christianorum, sensum de sensibus, verba de verbis, parabolas de parabolis, profanae et aemulae fidei attemperare. Et ideo neque a diabolo immissa esse spiritalia nequitiae, ex quibus etiam haereses veniunt, dubitare quis debet, neque ab idololatria distare haereses, cum et auctoris et operis eiusdem 15 sint, cuius et idololatria. Deum aut fingunt alium adversus creatorem; aut si unicum creatorem confitentur, aliter eum disserunt, quam in vero est. Itaque omne mendacium, quod de Deo dicunt, quodammodo genus est idololatriae.

CAPUT XLI.

NON omittam ipsius etiam conversationis haereticæ de- 20

nentia' is used of self-control in and after marriage, *ad uxor.* 1. 6; and is contrasted with 'virginitas' *de virg. vel.* 10; *adv. Marc.* v. 15.

3. sacrificalia ministeria. From this point to the end of ch. 44 *Codex Agobardinus* is wanting.

4. curiositates, 'fantastic niceties'; see note, ch. 7.

5. morositatem = 'scrupulositatem'; comp. *adv. Marc.* iv. 35 'morositatem legis'; and of the Mosaic ritual *ib.* ii. 18 'Sacrificiorum quoque onera et operationum et oblationum negotiosas scrupulositatis nemo reprehendit'; *ad nat.* ii. 4; *de virg. vel.* 12.

10. sanctorum Christianorum = 'a sanctis Christianis scripta.' For 'sanctorum' *Routh* conjectured and preferred 'sacramentorum.'

CHAP. XLI.—20. conversationis. 'Conversatio,' like 'disciplina,' is used by the Latin Fathers for 'conduct, mode of life,' the Greek πολιτεία, the N. T. ἀναστροφή Heb. xiii. 7; 1 Pet. ii. 12. Comp. above ch. 23, 27, and again ch. 43; *de idol.* 20; *de coron.* 8; *ad mart.* 2; *de virg. vel.* 1; *ad nat.* i. 10, ii. 5; *de orat.* 11; *de cult. fem.* ii. 10; *adv. Marc.* i. 20, v. 12, 14; *de paen.* 1, 9, &c.

scriptionem, quā̄m̄ futilis, quā̄m̄ terrena, quā̄m̄ humana sit; sine gravitate, sine auctoritate, sine disciplina, ut fidei suae congruens. Inprimis quis catechumenus, quis fidelis, incertum est; pariter adeunt, pariter audiunt, pariter orant, 5 etiam ethnici si supervenerint: sanctum canibus et porcis margaritas, licet non veras, iactabunt. Simpliciter volunt esse prostrationem disciplinae, cuius penes nos curam lenocinium vocant. Pacem quoque passim cum omnibus miscent. Nihil enim interest illis, licet diversa tractantibus, dum ad 10 unius veritatis expugnationem conspirent. Omnes tument, omnes scientiam pollicentur. Ante sunt perfecti catechumeni, quam edocti. Ipsae mulieres haereticæ, quā̄m̄ procaces! quǣ audeant docere, contendere, exorcismos agere, curationes repromittere, forsitan et tingere.

2. *sine disciplina.* The words which follow seem to shew that Tertullian had in his mind the *disciplina arcani* practised with respect to catechumens. Cp. note, ch. 6; and for the idea, *adv. Val.* i 'disciplina non terretur.'

3. *catechumenus . . . fidelis.* We learn from Jerome that the rejection of any distinction in public worship between the catechumens and the faithful was a characteristic of Marcion's teaching. Hieronym. *Comm. in Gal.* vi. 6 'Marcion hunc locum ita interpretatus est ut putaret fidelis et catechumenos simul orare debere.'

fidelis, i. e. baptizatus.

4. *adeunt, audiunt, orant.* There may be an early reference here to different classes of catechumens in the African Church: those who were not allowed to enter the sacred building, those admitted as hearers, and those admitted to the prayers; but it is possible that *adeunt* bears the technical meaning of approach to the altar, and refers to the presence of unbaptized persons during the celebration of the Holy Eucharist.

5. *sanctum canibus.* S. Matt. vii. 6. 'Sanctum' is used, absolutely, for the Eucharist *de spect.* 25; [Cyprian] *de spect.* 7; also with the addition of 'Domini,' Cypr. *de unit.* 8; *de laps.* 15, 26.

7. *lenocinium, i. e. 'affectationem.'*

8. *Pacem . . . miscent,* 'share the Peace,' 'unite in communion.' On *pacem* see note, ch. 30; and for *miscere* = 'to share,' Seneca *Epist.* iii. 3 'cum amico omnes curas omnes cogitationes tuas misce.'

13. *contendere* = 'disputare.'

14. *et tingere.* *De virg. vel.* 9 'Non permittitur mulieri in ecclesia

Ordinationes eorum temerariae, leves, inconstantes : nunc neophytos collocant, nunc seculo obstrictos, nunc apostatas nostros, ut gloria eos obligent, quia veritate non possunt. Nusquam facilius proficitur, quam in castris rebellium, ubi ipsum esse illic, promereri est. Itaque alius hodie episcopus, 5 cras alius ; hodie diaconus, qui cras lector ; hodie presbyter, qui cras laicus : nam et laicis sacerdotalia munera iniungunt.

CAPUT XLII.

DE verbi autem administratione quid dicam, cum hoc sit negotium illis, non ethnicos convertendi, sed nostros ever- 10 tendi ? Hanc magis gloriam captant, si stantibus ruinam, non si iacentibus elevationem operentur. Quoniam et ipsum opus eorum non de suo proprio aedificio venit, sed de veritatis destructione, nostra suffodiunt, ut sua aedificent. Adime illis legem Moysi et prophetas, et creatorem Deum, 15 accusationem eloqui non habent. Ita fit ut ruinas facilius

loqui, sed nec docere, nec tingere, nec offerre, nec ullius virilis muneris, nedum sacerdotalis officii sortem sibi vindicare.' *De bapt.* 17 'Petulantiae autem mulier, quae usurpavit docere, utique non etiam tingendi ius sibi pariet,' &c. *Comp. Apost. Const.* iii. 9 ; *Epiphan. Haer.* lxx.

2. neophytos. 1 Tim. iii. 6.

saeculo obstrictos. On secular service as a disqualification for Holy Orders, see Bingham *Ant.* iv. 4.

6. lector. This is the first mention of the Order of Readers, the oldest of the minor orders, and thus early adopted by heretics. On their duties see Bright's note on *Chalc. Conc. can.* xiv.

hodie presbyter . . . laicus. Indifference to the special value and distinctiveness of Holy Orders is here expressly attributed to heretics. In his later treatises, as a Montanist, Tertullian himself adopted the novel notion of the obliteration of all distinction between cleric and laic ; *de exh. cast.* 6. Dr. Hatch *Bapt. lect.* p. 124, with a bold disregard for Tertullian's alteration of views, blends together passages from catholic and montanistic writings.

CHAP. XLII.—16. eloqui non habent : see note, ch. 18.

operentur stantium aedificiorum quam exstructiones iacentium ruinarum. Ad haec solummodo opera humiles et blandi et submissi agunt. Ceterum nec suis praesidibus reverentiam noverunt. Et hoc est quod schismata apud
 5 haereticos fere non sunt, quia cum sint, non parent. Schisma est enim unitas ipsa. Mentior si non etiam a regulis suis variant inter se, dum unusquisque proinde suo arbitrio modulatur quae accepit, quemadmodum de suo arbitrio ea composuit ille qui tradidit. Agnoscit naturam
 10 suam et originis suae morem profectus rei. Idem licuit Valentinianis quod Valentino, idem Marcionitis quod Marcioni, de arbitrio suo fidem innovare. Denique penitus inspectae haereses omnes in multis cum auctoribus suis dissentientes deprehenduntur. Plerique nec ecclesias habent,
 15 sine matre, sine sede, orbi fide, extorres, sua in vilitate vagantur.

CAPUT XLIII.

NOTATA sunt etiam commercia haereticorum cum magis quam pluribus, cum circulatoribus, cum astrologis, cum

1. *exstructiones.* So again of 'construction' *adv. Herm.* 40; *de res. carn.* 5: but note its different use *ad uxor.* ii. 3 ('adornment').

14. *Plerique nec ecclesias habent.* Ironical: all heresies were churchless by their very nature. *Comp. adv. Marc.* iv. 5 'Habet plane et illud ecclesias, sed suas, tam posteras quam adulteras, quarum si census requiras, facilius apostaticum invenias quam apostolicum, Marcione scilicet conditore, vel aliquo Marcionis examine. Faciunt favos et vespae, faciunt ecclesias et Marcionitae.'

15. *sua in vilitate.* *Oehler's* emendation of the passage, which stands in *Leid.* quasi sibilat evagatur: in *Rhen. and Gang.* quasi sibilatae vagantur: in *Vatic., Pam.* quasi sibi late vagantur, which is followed by *Dodgson* in *Lib. Fath.* and translated 'they all for themselves as it were' = 'themselves are their all.' *Rig.* adopting a suggestion of *Fulv. Ursinus*, printed sine lare vagantur.

CHAP. XLIII.—17. *magis.* *Iren.* i. 7; 16. 3; 17. 1; 20. 2. *Epiphan. Haer.* xxvii. 3.

18. *circulatoribus:* *circulatores* = 'itinerant jugglers,' popularly invested with magical powers. *Apuleius, Metam.* 4, relates a trick

philosophis, curiositati scilicet deditis. Quaerite et invenietis, ubique meminerunt. Adeo et de genere conversationis qualitas fidei aestimari potest. Doctrinae index disciplina est. Negant Deum timendum: itaque libera sunt illis omnia et soluta. Ubi autem Deus non timetur, 5 nisi ubi non est? Ubi Deus non est, nec veritas ulla est. Ubi veritas nulla est, merito et talis disciplina est. At ubi Deus, ibi metus in Deum, qui est initium sapientiae. Ubi metus in Deum, ibi gravitas honesta, et diligentia adtonita, et cura sollicita, et adlectio explorata, et communicatio 10 deliberata, et promotio emerita, et subjectio religiosa, et apparitio devota, et processio modesta, et ecclesia unita, et Dei omnia.

performed by one of such men. Celsus, v. 27. 3, uses the word of quack medicine-men. Comp. *de idol.* 9, where Simon Magus is spoken of as belonging to 'circulatoria secta'; and *Apol.* 23, where magicians' tricks are described as effected 'circulatoriis praestigiis.

astrologis. Iren. i. 10.

1. Quaerite et invenietis. See above, ch. 8.

2. conversationis. See note, ch. 41.

4. disciplina. See note, ch. 6.

itaque libera, &c. As amongst the Cainites; ch. 33.

8. qui est initium sapientiae. Ps. cxi. 10; Prov. ix. 10.

9. adtonita: i.e. 'quae semper est in metu ne quid peccet' (*Rig.*).

10. adlectio: sc. 'in ordinem ecclesiasticum.' *Adlegere* is thus specifically used *de idol.* 9; *de exhort. cast.* 7 'Usque adeo nisi et laici ea observent per quae presbyteri adleguntur, quomodo erunt presbyteri qui de laicis adleguntur?'

explorata: 'well-assured,' after due investigation and publicity; in contrast to the 'ordinationes temerariae leves inconstantes' of the heretics (ch. 41).

communicatio deliberata, 'well considered communion,' both in its celebration and in those who are admitted to it; in contrast to the indiscriminate communion of the heretics (ch. 41).

11. subjectio, 'submissiveness,' 'obedience.' 1 Tim. ii. 11 *Vulg.* Comp. *Apol.* 2 'filium subiectum [patri].'

12. apparitio, 'attendance,' 'service': *apparere* is used synonymously with *ministrare*, *Apol.* 13 (see note), 48; *de idol.* 17; *de spect.*

17. Comp. Liv. ii. 55 'Quattuor et viginti lictores apparere consulibus.' processio modesta, 'going forth,' 'walking abroad,' 'modesto

CAPUT XLIV.

PROINDE haec pressioris apud nos testimonia disciplinae ad probationem veritatis accedunt, a qua divertere nemini expedit, qui meminerit futuri iudicii, quo omnes nos necesse est apud Christi tribunal adstare, reddentes rationem in
5 primis ipsius fidei.

Quid ergo dicent qui illam stupraverint adulterio haeretico, virginem traditam a Christo? Credo allegabunt, nihil unquam sibi ab illo vel ab apostolis eius de saevis et perversis doctrinis futuris praenuntiatum et de cavendis
10 abominandisque praeceptum. Agnoscent suam potius culpam et suorum, qui nos non ante praestruxerunt. Adicient

habito vultuque'; see *de cult. fem.* ii. 11 'Vobis autem nulla procedendi causa non taetrica [= *seria, gravis*] . . . Aut sacrificium offertur aut Dei sermo administratur: quidvis horum gravitatis et sanctitatis negotium est, cui opus non sit habitu extraordinario.' In *ad uxor.* ii. 4 'si procedendum erit' has the same meaning.

CHAP. XLIV.—I. pressioris disciplinae, 'of a stricter discipline,' such as is described *Apol.* 39.

3. omnes nos necesse, &c. 2 Cor. v. 10.

7. virginem. Comp. 2 Cor. xi. 2. It was probably some figurative expression like this in the text that gave rise to the false scandals respecting the moral character of Cerdo, Marcion, and Apelles. The phrase is taken from Hegesippus, Euseb. *H. E.* iii. 32; iv. 22.

Credo. The intense irony of this passage can hardly be matched even in the writings of Tertullian himself. 'Credo' is repeated below, and appears to be a stronger expression than Tertullian's usual 'opinor' in ironical passages, see note, ch. 3.

8. saevis. So the MSS. and Edd. (except *Rig. seris*). *Junius* suggested scaevis which *Oehler* adopts.

10. Agnoscent, sc. Christus et Apostoli. *Van der Vliet* would emend Agnoscet [Christus].

11. et suorum, &c. The harsh change of subject in the sentence has been overlooked, and the MSS. and Edd. exhibit considerable variations:—quam illorum *Rig.*, *Fulv. Urs.*: quam suorum *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Pam.* The text follows *Leid.*, *Gel.*

nos non ante. So *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*: nos ante *Leid.*, *Rhen.*: nos tanto ante *Rig.*, *Fulv. Urs.*

Adicient. The subject shifts back again to 'haeretici.'

praeterea multa de auctoritate cuiusque doctoris haeretici; illos maxime doctrinae suae fidem confirmasse, mortuos suscitasse, debiles reformasse, futura significasse, uti merito apostoli crederentur. Quasi nec hoc scriptum sit, venturos multos, qui etiam virtutes maximas ederent, ad fallaciam 5 muniendam corruptae praedicationis.

Itaque veniam merebuntur. Si vero memores dominicarum et apostolicarum et scripturarum denuntiationum in fide integra steterint, credo, de venia periclitabuntur, respondente Domino: Praenuntiaveram plane futuros fallaciae 10 magistros in meo nomine, et prophetarum et apostolorum etiam, et discentibus meis eadem ad vos praedicare mandaveram; scilicet cum vos non crederetis. Semel evangelium et eiusdem regulae doctrinam apostolis meis delegaveram; libuit mihi postea aliqua inde mutare. Resurrectionem 15 promiseram, etiam carnis; sed recogitavi, ne implere non possem. Natum me ostenderam ex virgine; sed postea turpe mihi visum est. Patrem dixeram qui solem et pluvias facit; sed alius me pater melior adoptavit. Prohibueram vos aurem accommodare haereticis; sed erravi. 20

Talia capit opinari eos qui exorbitant et fidei veritatis periculum non cavent.

2. mortuos suscitasse, &c. Miracles of deceit wrought by false Christs and false prophets, S. Matt. xxiv. 24.

4. Quasi nec . . . praedicationis. This is parenthetical: the irony is resumed with 'Itaque veniam,' and continued down to 'sed erravi.'

scriptum sit. S. Matt. xxiv. 24.

5. virtutes. See note, ch. 13.

13. scilicet cum vos non crederetis, 'with the idea of course that you would not believe it.' Sed vos non crederetis is the reading of *Leid. Rhen., Gang., Gel.* insert cum before vos. Scilicet is *Oehler's* correction for Sed.

16. sed recogitavi. The Gnostic tenets are again specially in Tertullian's mind; see ch. 33, 36, and notes.

19. alius pater melior. The higher god of Marcion, who sent Christ to reveal him (see above. ch. 7, 34); or the 'summus Deus nomine Abraxas' of Basilides (see Ps.-Tert. *adv. haer.* 1).

21. capit opinari, = 'potest fieri ut talia opinentur.' Capit with

XLV.

SED nunc quidem generaliter actum est nobis adversus haereses omnes certis et iustis et necessariis praescriptionibus repellendas a collatione scripturarum. De reliquo, si Dei gratia adnuerit, etiam specialiter quibusdam respondebimus.
 5 Haec in fide veritatis cum otio perlegendibus pax et gratia Dei nostri Iesu Christi in aeternum.

infin. is frequently used by Tertullian like the Greek ἐνδέχεται: see *Apol.* 17 'dum aestimari non capit' (and note there): *adv. Marc.* i. 6; ii. 9; iii. 6; iv. 11; v. 14; *de test. an.* 2; *de bapt.* 1; *de fug. in pers.* 1; *de idol.* 10; *de pud.* 1; *ad Nat.* ii. 3; *de cult. fem.* i. 2; *de anim.* 4. exorbitant. See note, ch. 4.

CHAP. XLV.—I. Sed nunc. *Codex Agobard.* is again available.

nunc, 'in view of present circumstances,' see ch. I *ad init.*; 'nunc' is contrasted with 'de reliquo' below.

generaliter, on principles, that is, applicable to all heresies; contrasted with 'specialiter' below.

2. praescriptionibus. Comp. *de carn. Chr.* 3 'sed plenius huiusmodi praescriptionibus adversus omnes haereses alibi iam usi sumus.'

3. a collatione scripturarum: i.e. from the use and discussion of the scriptures in their arguments; comp. ch. 15, 19.

4. quibusdam: e.g. Marcion, Praxeas, Valentinus, Hermogenes, Apelles (a lost work).

respondebimus. *Codex Leidensis* ends here.

5. cum otio perlegendibus. *Oehler's* conjectural emendation of the MS. 'cum oci . . . legentibus.'

AD MARTYRAS

INTRODUCTION

THIS inspiring Address has been usually regarded as the earliest of Tertullian's Christian writings, composed in the year A.D. 197, while the slaughter of Albinus' army near Lyon (February 27), and the still more terrible massacre of his partisans in Rome by Severus' orders were fresh in the minds of men¹. But the reference on which this view of the treatise is based is vague, and might be interpreted equally well of the detection and punishment of the adherents of Niger in the East some years later². There is, however, really no need to seek for the particular instances of imperial vengeance which may have been in Tertullian's mind. Any of the earlier years of Severus' reign would afford examples such as are alluded to; for punishment as widely spread as that which this Emperor inflicted could certainly not have been completed in a single year³.

The Address contains no traces of Montanism, although imaginative commentators have found evidences of a leaning towards it in the simple allusion to the possibility of jealousies and dissensions arising amongst the imprisoned confessors⁴. It is scarcely necessary to point out the gratuitousness of reading such an idea into the passage; while there are on the other hand positive reasons for

¹ Dodgson in *Library of Fathers Tertullian*, p. 151.

² *Dion Cass.* lxxvi. 4; *Herodian.* iii. 12.

³ See the references in note chap. 6.

⁴ Chap. 1; Dodgson *v. s.* p. 152 note.

believing that the writer was not yet committed to the extravagances of the Eastern heresy.

There is, for instance, no undue exaltation of martyrdom, no fierce fanatical joy at the confessors' prospect of death *Dei causa*; they are encouraged only to hold themselves still in the calm steadfast fortitude of patient enduring faith in their Lord, and in the assurance of the abiding presence of His Spirit. With this view of martyrdom it is only necessary to contrast such Montanistic passages as 'De Corona' 1, and almost any page of the treatise 'De fuga in persecutione,' in order to see at once the wide difference of tone which pervades this treatise.

Two other points also mark out this Address from the Montanistic writings. (1) The custom of unrestored penitents seeking *libelli* from imprisoned confessors, by whose intercession the lapsed were wont to be recommended to the merciful consideration of the Church; and (2) the practice of the Church contributing food and money to her imprisoned members, are both mentioned (chap. 1) in terms of approval; whereas both customs are broadly denounced in Montanistic treatises—the former *de pudicitia* 22, and the latter *de ieiuniis* 12.

It seems strange that Tertullian, when exhorting the confessors to courage by reminding them of past examples of fortitude, should make no mention of the brave witness unto death borne by the earlier African sufferers—Nymphamo, and the Scillitan martyrs, A.D. 180¹—and that all his examples should be drawn from paganism. This, however, may be intentional—'tanti vitreum, quanti verum margaritum?'

Still stranger is it to observe the liberty which was allowed to the Christians to openly visit and contribute to the support of their friends in prison. It is a curious feature which meets us constantly from the time of St. Paul down to

¹ Augustin. *Epist.* 15, 16

the close of the era of persecutions¹. The intercourse of the prisoners with each other, with their friends, or with the lapsed who sought their intercession, seems to have been unrestricted, or at any rate easily obtainable by bribery². Cyprian states that it had long been the custom in Africa for the clergy of the Church to have access to the imprisoned members of their flock³, and the Acts of SS. Perpetua and Felicitas show that they were able to obtain certain privileges for them by giving gratuities to the prison officials⁴. Another passage in the same Acts proves that the large powers entrusted to the governor of the prison (*optio, praepositus carceris*) might be used at his will for the amelioration or aggravation of the prisoners' condition⁵. The whole of this Address to the Martyrs, indeed, is illustrated in its details by the account of S. Perpetua's 'Passion,' to which it bears so many resemblances in tone, in style, and in diction that the editing of the Acts in their present form has been attributed to Tertullian himself⁶. It has been further conjectured that the 'Ad Martyras' itself was specially written and addressed to Perpetua and her companions⁷; the conjecture being supported by the following facts:—(a) both groups of martyrs contained men as well as women; (b) in both cases the martyrs were young in years; (c) several of Tertullian's metaphors closely resemble scenes in the visions of the prisoners. The coincidences are certainly sufficient to establish the applicability of the Address to the circumstances of Perpetua and her fellow-sufferers. Nor is there anything in the treatise itself to

¹ On this point see Lightfoot *Ignatius* i. 357 f.; Apost. Const. v. 1; Aristides *Apol.* 15; Tert. *Apol.* 39.

² Lucian *de mort Peregr.* 12.

³ *Epist.* 15 *ad mart.*

⁴ Ch. 1.

⁵ Ch. 3.

⁶ Robinson *Pass. of S. Perp.*, Texts and Studies i. 2. pp. 47 ff. Bonwetsch *Die Schriften Tert.* pp. 75 ff. Salmon in *D. C. B.* iii. 944.

⁷ Harris *Acts of Perp. and Fel.* pp. 28 ff.

preclude its date being fixed as late as 202 or 203. The Catholic tone of the Address might at first sight seem to bar a later date for it than about 200, but the Address to Scapula written in 212 is equally free from any signs of Montanism; while various reasons combine to lead to the conclusion that Perpetua and her friends, although they may have belonged to the stricter party in the African Church, were Catholic, and not, as has been asserted¹, Montanist, confessors. They had not separated from the communion of the Church, nor do they once mention the Paraclete in their accounts of their visions. And surely the Catholic bishop Optatus, in the vision of Saturus, would have been reprovèd in very different terms had the martyrs been Montanists. Whatever the views of the editor and supplementer of the Visions may have been—and they do not appear to have been those of a keen Montanist, for the tone of the Acts cannot be said to demand such an author—it is hard to see why they should be held to reflect upon the character of the belief of the martyrs.

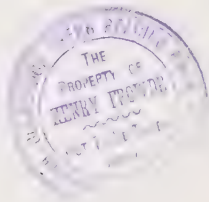
An interesting example of Tertullian's concentration of vision and immersion in the point before him is seen in his treatment of the martyrs' prison which he views under five different aspects (see the notes). This tendency towards the overdevelopment of an idea is characteristic of our author, and in his polemical treatises sometimes leads him to indulge in unsatisfactory methods of argument. But the '*Ad Martyras*' is wholly devoted to bracing the courage of the condemned confessors, and is charged with the breath of that sympathy and encouragement which springs only from a deep and inspiring faith.

¹ Harris *v. s.* pp. 2 ff.

SYNOPSIS



- I. Let these words of mine be for the nourishment of your spirit, as the gifts of the brethren are for the refreshment of your bodies. Your prison is the devil's house; trample upon him in his own domain, and be at peace among yourselves.
- II. You are severed from the world; and your prison has become a watch-house, where the spirit is relieved from the outward temptations which assail it in the world. You are in retreat, free in spirit, though restrained in body.
- III. Hardship and discipline are inevitable in warfare, and you have been called to the warfare of God. Your prison is a training-place to prepare as spiritual athletes for the last contest.
- IV. Let the flesh serve the spirit. Remember the heroic examples of pagan fortitude, both in women and men: how much more willingly and bravely ought you to suffer for the truth!
- V. Mere vanity and love of display have often spurred men on to suffer; how much more should we be ready to suffer for our salvation!
- VI. Suffering, tortures, and death, either from accident or from hostility, are not uncommon disasters. They are often risked in a human cause: still less ought we to hesitate when the cause is divine.



TEXT



I. Manuscripts.

1. Codex Vindobonensis (*Vind.*): a paper MS. of the fifteenth century, of the same family as the Codex Leidensis.
2. Codex Leidensis (*Leid.*).
3. A Florentine MS. (*Flor.* 12) in the Laurentian Library, number xxvi. 12, of the fifteenth century.
- 4, 5, 6. Three Florentine MSS. in the Magliabechian Library, numbered 527, 528, 529, of the same type as *Flor.* 12.
- 7, 8. Codex Divionensis (*Divion.*), and Codex Pithoei (*Pith.*) used by Rigalt.
- 9, 10, 11. Three Vatican MSS. (*Vat.*), used by Pamelius.
12. Codex Gorziensis (*Gorz.*), used by Pamelius.

II. Editions.

Rhenanus.
Gangnaeus.
Gelenius.
Pamelius.
Rigalt.
Migne.
Leopold.
Oehler.

AD MARTYRAS



CAPUT PRIMUM.

INTER carnis alimenta, benedicti martyres designati, quae vobis et domina mater ecclesia de uberibus suis et singuli fratres de opibus suis propriis in carcerem subministrant, capite aliquid et a nobis quod faciat ad spiritum quoque educandum. Carnem enim saginari et spiritum esurire non 5 prodest. Immo, si quod infirmum est curatur aequè quod infirmius est negligi non debet. Nec tantus ego sum, ut vos alloquar; veruntamen et gladiatores perfectissimos non tantum magistri et praepositi sui, sed etiam idiotae et

TITLE.—The best supported form of the title is AD MATRYRAS which is found in *Flor.* 529, three Vatican MSS, and the editions of *Pam.*, *Rig.*, and *Oehl.* In *Vindl.*, *Leid.*, *Flor.* 12, 527, 528, it is corrupted into AD MARTIRIAS. *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, printed AD MARTYRES.

Strictly speaking the Christian prisoners were as yet only ‘confessores,’ ‘martyres designati,’ as Tertullian terms them, ch. I. The seal of their confession by death would promote them to the rank of ‘martyres.’

2. *domina mater ecclesia.* Cp. *de orat.* 2 ‘mater ecclesia’; *de anim.* 43 ‘vera mater viventium, ecclesia’; Cyprian *de unit. eccl.* 6 ‘Habere iam non potest Deum patrem qui ecclesiam non habet matrem.’ *Educandum* below carries on the same idea of the Church as a nursing-mother; comp. Varro *ap. Non.* p. 447 (ed. Merc.) ‘educit enim obstetrix, educat matrix, instituit paedagogus, docet magister.’

3. *de opibus suis.* So *Rig.*, *Rhen.* (note in ed. 1528): *operibus rel.* I have remarked in the Introduction upon the frequency of such actions in times of persecution. Comp. *Apol.* 39 (note), and the earlier Apology of Aristides ch. 15 (*Texts and Studies* i. 1. p. 49), Euseb. iv. 23. 9, *Pass. S. Perp.* 2. See too the direction in the *Apost. Const.* v. 1 for contributions to be sent to those condemned to the beasts or in the mines, in order that they might buy food or bribe the soldiers to alleviate their wretched condition. As a Montanist, Tertullian disapproved of the Church feeding her prisoners, *de ieiun.* 12.

supervacue quique adhortantur de longinquo, ut saepe de ipso populo dictata suggesta profuerint. Inprimis ergo, benedicti, nolite contristare Spiritum Sanctum, qui vobiscum introiit carcerem. Si enim non vobiscum nunc introisset, 5 nec vos illic hodie fuissetis. Et ideo date operam, ut illic vobiscum perseveret: et ita vos inde perducatur ad Dominum. Domus quidem diaboli est et carcer, in qua familiam suam continet. Sed vos ideo in carcerem pervenistis, ut illum etiam in domo sua conculcetis. Iam enim foris congressi 10 conculcaveratis. Non ergo dicat: In meo sunt, temptabo illos vilibus odiis, defectionibus, aut inter se dissensionibus. Fugiat conspectum vestrum, et ima sua delitescat contractus et torpens, tamquam coluber excantatus aut effumigatus.

2. dictata suggesta, 'hints suggested': *dictata* is used of 'rules of combat' Sueton. *Iul. Caes.* 26. On *suggerere* see note *de praescr. haer.* 6; *Apol.* 18.

3. nolite contristare Spiritum. Eph. iv. 30.

7. Domus diaboli, 'the devil's house,' the abode of criminals, and yet to be the scene of the devil's discomfiture. This is the first aspect in which Tertullian views the martyrs' prison.

9. conculcetis. With this phrase and the immediately following description of the baffled dragon compare Perpetua's account of her trampling upon the dragon's head in her ascent of the ladder in her first vision: *Pass. S. Perp.* 4.

congressi. Tertullian appropriately employs military terms in speaking of the Christian warfare; so below, *munitos*, &c. Cp. Eph. vi. 11 ff.

11. odiis. This is the reading of *Vind.*, *Leid.*, *Flor.* 529, *Flor.* 12, three *Vat. MSS.*, *Pam.*, *Rig.*: inediis *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*: oediis *Divion.*: scidiis *Rig. conj.* It is a wholly arbitrary interpretation to make this refer to the refusal of the Catholic confessors to recognize their Montanist fellow-sufferers in prison (comp. Euseb. v. 16. 22); for there is absolutely nothing to suggest the presence of two such classes of martyrs amongst those addressed (*Lib. Fath.* note *ad loc.*). It seems to have been overlooked that Tertullian is not asserting that dissensions had actually arisen (as Kaye assumed, and even described their character, p. 140), but only that this was a likely form of temptation to befall them. His words are a warning, not a statement of fact.

13. excantatus aut effumigatus. Cp. *adv. Val.* 3. 'Excantatus' is read Hor. *Epod.* v. 45; Prop. iv. 2. 29, but in the sense of attraction, not of repulse as here: 'effumigatus' appears to be a ἀπαξ λεγ.

Nec illi tam bene sit in suo regno, ut vos committat, sed inveniatur munitus, et concordia armatus: quia pax vestra bellum est illi. Quam pacem quidam in ecclesia non habentes a martyribus in carcere exorare consueverunt. Et ideo eam propterea in vobis habere et fovere et custodire 5 debetis, ut, si forte, et aliis praestare possitis.

CAPUT II.

CETERA aequae animi impedimenta usque ad limen carceris deduxerint vos, quousque et parentes vestri. Exinde segregati estis ab ipso mundo, quanto magis a saeculo, rebusque eius? Nec hoc vos consternat, quod segregati estis 10 a mundo. Si enim recogitemus ipsum magis mundum carcerem esse, exisse vos e carcere, quam in carcerem introisse, intellegemus. Maiores tenebras habet mundus, quae hominum praecordia excaecant. Graviore catenas induit mundus, quae ipsas animas hominum constringunt. 15 Peiores immunditias exspirat mundus, libidines hominum.

1. ut vos committat, 'so as to set you at variance'; see note *de praescr. haer.* 24.

3. pacem. Something has been already said upon this custom in the Introduction. Originally the *libellus* of a martyr was a recommendation of a lapsed friend to the bishop's consideration, in order that after due penance he might be restored to the number of the faithful. But in time the exaggerated honours paid to martyrdom led to a subversion of all church discipline, and the martyrs' *libelli* superseded confession, penance, and absolution; see Cyprian. *Epist.* 9 ff.; Euseb. v. 2, of the Gallican martyrs; note *de praescr. haer.* 30. These *libelli* given by the martyrs must not be confused with two other kinds of documents bearing the same name:—(a) recantations tendered to the magistrates, Cyprian. *de laps.* 27, *Epist.* 30; (b) certificates of exemption from sacrificing purchased from the magistrates by apostatising Christians, Cyprian. *Epist.* 55 *ad Anton.*

6. si forte, 'it may be'; *ἐι ῥύχου*: so below ch. 2, *de coron.* 5, 8; *Pass. S. Perp.* 18. Tertullian also uses 'si forte' like *ἐι ἅπα*, 'if at all,' *Apol.* 16, 41; and 'si utique' in the same way *Apol.* 49.

CHAP. II.—8. parentes vestri. The youthfulness of some of the prisoners may be deduced from this sentence.

15. induit: imbuat, *Vind.*, *Leid.*, *Flor.* 12, *Flor.* 529, *Rhen.*

Plures postremo mundus reos continet, scilicet universum hominum genus. Iudicia denique non proconsulis, sed Dei sustinet. Quo vos, benedicti, de carcere in custodiarium, si forte, translatos existimetis. Habet tenebras, sed lumen
 5 estis ipsi: habet vincula, sed vos soluti Deo estis. Triste illic exspirat, sed vos odor estis suavitatis Iudex exspectatur, sed vos estis de iudicibus ipsis iudicaturi. Contristetur illi, qui fructum saeculi suspirat. Christianus etiam extra carcerem saeculo renuntiavit, in carcere autem etiam carceri.
 10 Nihil interest, ubi sitis in saeculo, qui extra saeculum estis. Et si aliqua amisistis vitae gaudia, negotiatio est aliquid amittere, ut maiora lucreris. Nihil adhuc dico de praemio, ad quod Deus martyres invitat. Ipsam interim conversationem saeculi et carceris comparemus, si non plus in
 15 carcere spiritus acquirit quam caro amittit. Immo et quae iusta sunt caro non amittit per curam ecclesiae et agapen fratrum; et insuper quae semper utilia fidei, spiritus adi-

3. *sustinet*, 'awaits,' 'looks for,' *sustinere* frequently has the sense of *expectare* in Tertullian: *Apol.* 35; *de test. an.* 5; *adv. Herm.* 29; *Scorp.* 2, 13; *de paen.* 6; *de fug. in pers.* 11; *adv. Iud.* 6.

in *custodiarium*, 'into a place of safety' or 'watching.' Here is a second aspect in which to view the martyrs' prison—as an escape from the prison-house of the world into a watch-house. 'Custodiarium' is used *adv. Iud.* 3 of the 'garden-watcher's hut' in citing Isaiah i. 7.

4. *Habet tenebras*. Comp. the description of the prison given by Perpetua, *Pass.* ch. 1; and the horrors endured by the Gallican martyrs *apud* Euseb. v. 1.

lumen estis ipsi. S. Matt. v. 14; Eph. v. 8; 1 Thess. v. 5. Cp. Cyprian. *Epist.* 81.

5. *soluti Deo*. Gal. v. 1.

6. *odor estis suavitatis*. Eph. v. 3; 2 Cor. ii. 15.

7. *iudicaturi*. 1 Cor. vi. 2.

8. *fructum saeculi suspirat*, 'who sighs for the enjoyment of the worldly life': *suspirare* is thus constructed with a simple acc. *Apol.* 15; *de spect.* 28; *de cult. fem.* i. 2, ii. 6. Cp. Iuven. xi. 152; Hor. *Carm.* iii. 7. 10; Tibull. i. 6. 35, iv. 5. 11.

16. *agapen*. This is one of many instances which will recur of the direct transliteration of Greek words in this treatise. The same feature is noticeable in the *Pass. S. Perp.*

piscitur. Non vides alienos deos, non imaginibus eorum incurris, non sollemnes nationum dies ipsa commixtione participas, non nidoribus spurcis verberaris, non clamoribus spectaculorum, atrocitate, vel furore, vel impudicitia celebrantium caederis: non in loca libidinum publicarum oculi 5 tui impingunt: vacas a scandalis, a temptationibus, a recordinationibus malis, iam et a persecutione. Hoc praestat carcer Christiano, quod eremus prophetis. Ipse Dominus in secessu frequentius agebat, ut liberius oraret, ut saeculo cederet. Gloriam denique suam discipulis in solitudine 10 demonstravit. Auferamus carceris nomen, secessum vocemus. Etsi corpus includitur, etsi caro detinetur, omnia spiritui patent. Vagare spiritu, spatiare spiritu, et non stadia opaca aut porticus longas praeponens tibi, sed illam viam, quae ad Deum ducit. Quotiens eam spiritu deambulaveris, totiens 15 in carcere non eris. Nihil crus sentit in nervo, cum animus in caelo est. Totum hominem animus circumfert, et quo

3. *nidoribus spurcis verberaris.* Comp. the description of the disgusting scenes at a popular festival, *Apol.* 35.

4. *atrocitate: sc. in arena, see Apol.* 38.

furore: in circo.

impudicitia: in theatro.

6. *vacas a scandalis: see note below, ch. 3.*

8. *Dominus in secessu.* S. Mark i. 35, vi. 31, 46, &c.

10. *Gloriam . . . demonstravit.* S. Matt. xvii. 1 ff.; S. Mark ix. 2 ff.; S. Luke ix. 28 ff.

11. *secessum vocemus:* 'let us call it a retreat'; the third aspect of the martyrs' prison—a place of retirement for spiritual refreshment.

13. *Vagare spiritu.* *Vacare spiritus, Vind., Leid., Flor.* 12, *Flor.* 529.

spiritu: spiritus, Vind., Leid., Flor. 12, *Flor.* 529.

stadia opaca. The recreation walks planted with trees seem to be designated; and *stadium* is similarly used (*de cor.* 4) of the garden-walks in Susanna's garden. Cp. Propert. iv. 21. 25 'Illic aut stadiis animum emendare Platonis Incipiam aut hortis, docte Epicure, tuis.'

stadia . . . porticus . . . viam. There is a reference in these words to the athletic and intellectual contests of the stadium and 'porch,' both of which are contrasted with the 'Via' through Whom alone the true 'brabium' could be gained. S. John xiv. 6 'Ego sum Via,' &c.

velit transfert. Ubi autem erit cor tuum, illic erit et thesaurus tuus. Ibi ergo sit cor nostrum, ubi volumus habere thesaurum.

CAPUT III.

SIT nunc, benedicti, carcer etiam Christianis molestus? 5 Vocati sumus ad militiam Dei vivi iam tunc, cum in sacramenti verba respondimus. Nemo miles ad bellum cum deliciis venit, nec de cubiculo ad aciem procedit, sed de papilionibus expeditis et substrictis, ubi omnis duritia et imbonitas et insuavitas constitit. Etiam in pace labore et 10 incommodis bellum pati iam ediscunt, in armis deambulando, campum decurrendo, fossam moliendo, testudinem densando.

1. Ubi autem cor. S. Matt. vi. 21.

CHAP. III.—5. ad militiam Dei: 'to the military service of the living God,' for which the hardships of the prison-life are only a natural and appropriate training: cp. 2 Tim. ii. 3. This is a fourth aspect of imprisonment. Cp. *de orat.* 19 'nam et militia [= milites] Dei sumus.'

in sacramenti verba. As the soldier was bound to the military service of the emperor by an oath (sacramentum), so also the soldier of Christ to a spiritual warfare by the baptismal vow of obedience. Cp. *Scorp.* 4 'Huic sacramento militans ab hostibus provocor.' Cyprian. *de laps.* 7, 13. On 'sacramentum' see note *de praeser. haer.* 20.

6. respondimus: 'we pledge our faith,' 'enter into the engagement' in the words of the baptismal oath of fealty. Cp. *de cor.* 10 'Credimusne humanum sacramentum divino superduci licere et in alium dominum respondere post Christum?'

9. imbonitas. This word does not seem to occur elsewhere. The glossaries recognize it; see Ducange.

insuavitas. Cp. *de paen.* 10; Aul. Gell. *N. A.* i. 21 'insolentia et insuavitas [dictionis].'

11. testudinem densando: 'by closing up so as to form the *testudo*.' This seems the most satisfactory reading, and so *Rig.* desudando *Vat.*: dessicando desudando *Vind.*, *Leid.*, *Flor.* 529: dessicando *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*: densitando *La Cerda*: destinando, desudando *Oehl.* 'Testudo' in military language had two significations, (1) a wooden penthouse to shelter besiegers (*Caes. B. G.* v. 43; *Vitruv.* x. 13); and (2) a shelter formed by the soldiers interlocking their shields over their heads like the shell of the tortoise (*testudo*), so *Tacit. Ann.* xiii. 39, *Hist.* iii. 31; *Liv.* xxxiv. 39, xlv. 9 'scudis super capita densatis'; *Caes. B. G.* ii. 6.

Sudore omnia constant, ne corpora atque animi expavescant de umbra ad solem et sole ad caelum, de tunica ad loricam, de silentio ad clamorem, de quiete ad tumultum. Proinde vos, benedicti, quodcumque hoc durum est, ad exercitationem virtutum animi et corporis deputate. Bonum agonem ⁵ subituri estis in quo agonotheses Deus vivus est; xystarches Spiritus Sanctus, corona aeternitatis; brabium angelicae substantiae, politia in caelis, gloria in saecula saeculorum. Itaque epistates vester Christus Iesus, qui vos Spiritu unxit,

1. *expavescant*. Cp. the similar use of this verb *Apol.* 39; *de spect.* 17; *de orat.* 22; *adv. Prax.* 3; *Pass. S. Perp.* 1.

2. *ad caelum*. So *Vind.*, *Leid.*, *Flor.* 529, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*; but it is an extraordinary use of 'caelum' for 'cold weather,' and has led to the corrections *ad gelum* *Oehl.* following corr. of *Ios. Mercerus* and *Iunius*: *ad gelu* *Latinus*.

4. *benedicti*. The MSS. all read 'benedictae,' which *Rig.* first altered because the exhortation is a general one addressed to all the martyrs. In chap. 4 'benedictae' is undoubtedly right, the women being specially singled out.

5. *Bonum agonem*. 1 Tim. vi. 12; 2 Tim. ii. 4 f.; iv. 8. Comp. *de coron.* 15; *de spect.* 11. This metaphorical passage, based upon the athletic contests in the public games, furnishes another parallel to the visions of Perpetua; see *Pass. S. Perp.* 10. The same eloquent simile is used *Clem. Alex. Strom.* vii. 839.

6. *agonotheses*, 'the president' of the games, *Spart. Had.* 13. Comp. *de fug. in pers.* 1 'Ita agnosces ad eundem agonothesam pertinere certaminis arbitrium, qui invitat ad praeium.'

xystarches, 'the trainer' of the *xystici* or *athletes*, who directed their discipline and prepared them for competition.

7. *corona*: the victor's garland (*στέφανος*).

aeternitatis: *aeternitas*, *Rig.*

brabium, 'the prize' (*βραβεῖον*) assigned to the victor by the president. Comp. 1 Cor. ix. 24; Phil. iii. 14; *Clem. Rom.* 5.

angelicae substantiae. Comp. *Apol.* 48 'superinduti substantia propria aeternitatis'; *ad uxor.* i. 1 'translatis in angelicam qualitatem'; *de res. carn.* 26, 36. The idea was based on S. Luke xx. 36.

8. *politia in caelis*: 'citizenship (*πολιτεία*) in the heavens'; Phil. iii. 30; cp. Heb. xi. 13; 1 Pet. ii. 11.

9. *Spiritu unxit*. Comp. 1 S. John ii. 20. The metaphor is still that of the palaestra; see Ignatius *Ephes.* 3 with Lightfoot's note; *Pass. S. Perp.* 10.

et ad hoc scamma produxit, voluit vos ante diem agonis ad
 duriorem tractationem a liberiore condicione seponere, ut
 vires corroborarentur in vobis. Nempe enim et athletae
 segregantur ad strictiorem disciplinam, ut robori aedificando
 5 vacent. Continentur a luxuria, a cibis laetioribus, a potu
 iucundiore. Coguntur, cruciantur, fatigantur: quanto plus
 in exercitationibus laboraverint, tanto plus de victoria
 sperant. Et illi, inquit Apostolus, ut coronam corruptibilem
 consequantur. Nos aeternam consecuturi carcerem nobis
 10 pro palaestra interpretamur, ut ad stadium tribunalis bene
 exercitati incommodis omnibus producamur, quia virtus
 duritia exstruitur, mollitia vero destruitur.

CAPUT IV.

SCIMUS ex dominico praecepto, quod caro infirma sit,
 spiritus promptus. Non ergo nobis blandiamur, quia
 15 Dominus consensit carnem infirmam esse. Propterea enim
 praedixit spiritum promptum, ut ostenderet, quid cui debeat
 esse subiectum, scilicet, ut caro serviat spiritui, infirmior
 fortiori, ut ab eo etiam ipsa fortitudinem assumat. Collo-
 quatur spiritus cum carne de communi salute, nec iam de
 20 incommodis carceris, sed ipso agone et proelio cogitans.

1. *scamma*. The *σκάμμα* was properly a portion of the palaestra dug out and sanded for the wrestlers or leapers; Krause *Hellen.* i. 105 f.; cp. Clem. Rom. 7 (Lightfoot's note). The martyrs' prison, then, from a fifth point of sight is a 'wrestling ground,' where the last contest is to be entered upon and the victory won.

4. *disciplinam*, 'training': see note *de praescr. haer.* 6.

5. *vacent*: 'that they may be free *for*': constructed with *a* and the *abl.* *vacare* = 'to be free *from*,' see above ch. 2; *de idol.* 8. For another use of *vacare* (= *non exsistere*) see note *Apol.* 1.

8. *inquit Apostolus*. 1 Cor. ix. 25.

coronam corruptibilem. The fading chaplet of leaves, oleaster, pine, ivy, parsley or bay.

10. *pro palaestra*: 'as a wrestling-school,' or 'training-ground,' see above on '*scamma*.'

CHAR. IV.—13. *ex dominico praecepto*. S. Matt. xxvi. 41.

Timebit forsitan caro gladium gravem, et crucem excelsam, et rabiem bestiarum, et summam ignium poenam, et omne carnificis ingenium in tormentis. Sed spiritus contraponat sibi et carni, acerba licet ista, a multis tamen aequo animo excepta, immo et ultro appetita, famae et gloriae caussa; 5 nec a viris tantum, sed etiam a feminis, ut vos quoque, benedictae, sexui vestro respondeatis. Longum est, si enumerem singulos, qui se gladio confecerint, animo suo ducti. De feminis ad manum est. Lucretia, quae vim stupri passa est, cultrum sibi adegit in conspectu propin- 10 quorum, ut gloriam castitati suae pareret. Mucius manum suam dexteram in ara cremavit, ut hoc factum eius fama haberet. Minus fecerunt philosophi: Heraclitus, qui se bubulo stercore oblitum exussit; item Empedocles, qui in ignes Aetnaei montis desilivit; et Peregrinus, qui non olim 15 se rogo immisit: cum feminae quoque contempserint ignes: Dido, ne post virum dilectissimum nubere cogeretur; item

1. Timebit forsitan, &c. Compare the description of the tortures undergone by the Gallican martyrs in the Epistle *ap.* Euseb. v. 1.

9. Lucretia. Liv. i. 58; Cicero *de rep.* ii. 25. 47; Aur. Vict. *de vir. ill.* 9; Val. Max. vi. 1. 1.

11. Mucius. Liv. ii. 12; Aur. Vict. 12; Val. Max. iii. 3. 1. Comp. *Apol.* 50; Min. Felix 37; Martial x. 25.

13. Heraclitus. There are three accounts of the death of this philosopher given by Diogenes Laertius in his life, ix. 3, 4.

14. Empedocles. Diog. Laert. viii. 70. Comp. *Apol.* 50; *de anim.* 32.

15. Peregrinus. Peregrinus Proteus whose life is related by Lucian *de mort. Peregr.* If the details are not fictitious, he was a criminal refugee from his home at Parium on the Hellespont. In Palestine he became a Christian, and was imprisoned for his faith. Subsequently he apostatised and became a Cynic philosopher. Banished from Rome he went to Greece, and, to rival the death of Hercules, burnt himself alive at the Olympic games, A.D. 165. Ammian. Marc. xxix. 1 '[Peregrinus Proteus] qui cum mundo digredi statuisset, Olympiae quinquenniali certamine sub Graeciae conspectu totius adscenso rogo quem ipse construxit, flammis absumptus est.' Aul. Gell. [viii. 3] xii. 11; Athenag. pro Christ. 26; Tatian. *Orat.* 25.

17. Dido. Verg. *Aen.* iv. 504 ff. Comp. *Apol.* 50; *ad Nat.* i. 18.

Asdrubalis uxor, quae iam ardente Carthagine cum maritum suum supplicem Scipionis videret, cum filiis suis in incendium patriae devolavit. Regulus, dux Romanorum, captus a Carthaginiensibus, cum se unum pro multis captivis
 5 Carthaginiensibus compensari noluisset, maluit hostibus reddi et in arcae genus stipatus undique extrinsecus clavis transfixus, tot cruces sensit. Bestias femina libens appetiit, et utique horridiores aspides serpentes tauro vel urso, quas Cleopatra immisit sibi, ne in manus inimici perveniret. Sed
 10 mortis metus non tantus est, quantus tormentorum. Itaque, cessit carnifici meretrix Atheniensis, quae conscia coniurationis cum propterea torqueretur a tyranno, et non prodidit coniuratos et novissime linguam suam comestam in faciem tyranni expuit, ut nihil agere in se sciret tormenta, etsi
 15 ultra perseveraret. Nam quod hodie apud Lacedaemonas sollemnitas maxima est, διαμαστίγωσις, id est, flagellatio, non

1. Asdrubalis uxor. Flor. ii. 15; Val. Max. iii. 28. Comp. *ad Nat.* i. 18.

cum maritum. *Rig.*: ne maritum *Oehl.* following *Ios. Scaliger*: maritum *rel.*

3. Regulus. His brave story was told by Livy in his 18th (lost) book. Comp. Cicero *de offic.* iii. 26. 99; Hor. *Carm.* iii. 5; Val. Max. ii. 10. 8; Aul. Gell. vi. 4; *Apol.* 50; *ad Nat.* i. 18; *de exhort. cast.* 31.

9. Cleopatra. Flor. iv. 11; Hor. *Carm.* i. 37. 26; but Plutarch doubtfully, *vit. Ant.* xlv. Comp. *ad Nat.* i. 18.

10. Itaque, cessit, &c. This is ironical: *cessit* = 'succumbed.' Tertullian frequently thus glides into irony without inserting his favourite 'plane' or 'opinor.' Below *cesserit plagis* = 'should yield itself to stripes'; and *cessit* here might bear the meaning of 'yielded herself to the power of,' 'let him do his worst upon her,' not ironically said; though I prefer it as given above.

11. meretrix Atheniensis. Leæna, see her story in Plin. *H. N.* vii. 23; Pausan. i. 23; comp. *Apol.* 50; *ad Nat.* i. 18. A similar feat is recorded of Zeno and of Anaxarchus, Diogen. Laert. ix. 58, x. 59; Val. Max. iii. 3. 4.

13. novissime = postremo; see note *de praescr. haer.* 14.

14. in se. *Iun., Oehl.*: se sciret in tormenta *Vind., Leid., Flor.* 529, *Rhen.*: se scierent tormenta *Gang., Gel., Pam., Rig.*

16. διαμαστίγωσις. On these flagellations see Plutarch. *de Lac.*

latet. In quo sacro, ante aram nobiles quique adolescentes, flagellis affliguntur, astantibus parentibus et propinquis, et uti perseverent adhortantibus. Ornamentum enim et gloria deputabitur maiore quidem titulo, si anima potius cesserit plagis, quam corpus. Igitur si tantum terrenae gloriae licet 5 de corporis et animi vigore, ut gladium, ignem, crucem, bestias, tormenta contemnat, sub praemio laudis humanae, possum dicere, modicae sunt istae passionem ad consecutionem gloriae caelestis et divinae mercedis. Tanti vitreum, quanti verum margaritum? Quis ergo non libentissime tantum pro 10 vero habeat erogare, quantum alii pro falso?

CAPUT V.

OMITTO nunc gloriae causam. Eadem omnia saevitiae et cruciatus certamina, iam apud homines affectatio quoque et morbus quidam animi conculcavit. Quot otiosos affectatio armorum ad gladium locat? Certe ad feras ipsas affectatione 15

Inst. 4. They were connected with the worship of the Brauronian Artemis, before whose altar they were inflicted. They have been explained as inculcating fortitude, or as a substitute for the human sacrifices offered to the goddess. Comp. *Apol.* 50; *ad Nat.* i. 18.

1. In quo sacro: 'in this religious ceremony': *sacro* is here used as *Apol.* 9 'de infanticidis nihil interest, sacro an arbitrio.'

10. margaritum. This is the form of the word which Tertullian uses, *ad uxor.* ii. 5; *de pall.* 5. For the thought, comp. Ignatius *Ephes.* 11 writing of his bonds τὰ δεσμὰ περιφέρω τοῦς πνευματικοῦς μαργαρίτας Tert. *adv. Marc.* ii. 4. The proverb occurs often in Jerome's writings.

11. habeat. On this use of *habere* [=debere] see note *de praescr. haer.* 18.

erogare = impendere. Its other uses in Tertullian have been noted *de praescr. haer.* 2.

CHAP. V.—15. Certe ad feras, &c. Even Roman citizens forgot their dignity and descended into the arena. The shameless Commodus gloried in such deeds, Lampr. *Comm.* 8; Dion Cass. lxxii. 15; comp. Sueton. *Iul. Caes.* 39. Juvenal bewails such degradation of nobly-born Romans *Sat.* ii. 143 ff.; see too Dion Cass. lxi. 19 ff., Suet. *Ner.* 22 of Nero's exhibitions of himself in the Circus Maximus.

descendunt et de morsibus et de cicatricibus formosiores sibi videntur. Iam et ad ignes quidam se auctoraverunt, ut certum spatium in tunica ardente conficerent. Alii inter venatorum taureas scapulis patientissimis inambulaverunt. 5 Haec, benedicti, non sine caussa Dominus in saeculum admisit; sed ad nos et nunc exhortandos, et in illo die confundendos, si reformidaverimus pati pro veritate in salutem, quae alii affectaverunt pro vanitate in perditionem.

CAPUT VI.

SED haec exempla constantiae omittamus de affectatione 10 venientis. Convertamur ad ipsam condicionis humanae contemplationem, ut et illa nos instruant, si qua constanter adeunda sint, quae et invitis evenire consueverunt. Quotiens enim incendia vivos cremaverunt! quotiens ferae et in silvis suis et in mediis civitatibus elapsae caveis homines devora- 15 verunt! quot a latronibus ferro, ab hostibus etiam cruce extincti sunt, torti prius, immo et omni contumelia expuncti! Nemo non etiam hominis caussa pati potest, quod in caussa Dei pati dubitat. Ad hoc quidem vel praesentia nobis

2. se auctoraverunt. See note *ad Scap.* 1.

3. tunica ardente. Comp. *ad Nat.* i. 18. For the tunica molesta, made of pitch, in which criminals were burnt alive, see Iuven. i. 155, viii. 235; Martial. x. 25; Seneca *de ira* ii. 3, *Epist.* 14; cp. Tacit. *Ann.* xv. 44.

4. taureas. *Taurea* is here the long hunting-whip of cowhide: Iuvenal. vi. 492; Salvian. *de gub. Dei* viii. 4. Comp. *ad Nat.* i. 18.

6. in illo die. 2 Tim. iv. 8.

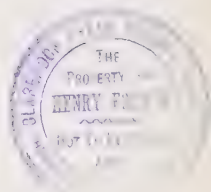
CHAP. VI.—16. expuncti: 'having been disposed of,' 'got rid of,' with every kind of insult. *Expungere* is used very curiously by Tertullian: the original and underlying idea is that of 'pricking out of a list' and so 'discharging,' 'disposing of,' 'fulfilling.' For instances see *Apol.* 2, 15, 21, 35; *ad Nat.* i. 7; *de orat.* 9; *de coron.* 1; *de idol.* 1, 13.

18. praesentia nobis tempora, &c. These words may be interpreted of Severus' wholesale slaughter of the followers of Albinus and Niger which is related by Spartian. *Ser. 12*; Dion Cass. lxxv. 8,

tempora documenta sint, quantae qualesque personae inopinatos natalibus et dignitatibus et corporibus et aetatibus suis exitus referunt hominis caussa ; aut ab ipso, si contra eum fecerint : aut ab adversariis eius, si pro eo steterint.

lxxvi. 4 ; Herodian. iii. 8, 12. The eradication of the suspected traitors must have spread over several years, and might well have continued as late as the year 202 or 203 ; see the Introduction.

AD SCAPULAM



INTRODUCTION

SOME fifteen years had passed since Tertullian had pleaded for Christianity in the 'Apology,' pouring scorn and contempt upon the persecutors for their disregard of the simplest rules alike of justice and of common sense, in condemning the Christian religion unheard and unknown; and now he once more takes up his pen to recapitulate his arguments in a personal appeal to the proconsul of the African province. The edict of Severus, which forbade Jews and Christians to proselytize¹, had been issued in the year 202 whilst he was in the East; and this prohibition was made the occasion of open attacks upon the Church in various parts of the Empire. The martyrdom of Perpetua and Felicitas with their companions at Karthage under Hilarian the procurator was, we may be sure, no isolated case, and throughout the next decade persecutions were frequent, their recurrence depending on the indifference, good nature, or hostility of the provincial executive². Severus died at York early in 211, and his sons, the two Augusti Caracalla and Geta, shared between them the sovereignty of the Roman empire. But that fraternal

¹ Spartian, *Sever.* 17 'In itinere Palestinis plurima iura fundavit. Iudaeos fieri sub gravi poena vetuit. Idem de Christianis sanxit.' Two points in this edict deserve notice: (1) it refers only to new converts, and does not legislate with regard to persons already Christians; (2) the Jews and Christians are now formally and explicitly distinguished in a legal enactment.

² Chap. 4.

hatred which Tertullian had satirically denounced in the 'Apology'¹ as customary amongst the Romans received a signal exemplification in the case of these joint rulers; for little more than a year elapsed before Caracalla contrived his brother's assassination in his mother's arms, himself assisting in the bloody deed². The exiles of Severus' reign had been early recalled³, and although this action presumably carried with it to some extent a cessation of persecution, it may be inferred from expressions in this treatise that attacks upon the Christians, after the death of Severus and murder of Geta⁴, were abetted by the African proconsul Scapula, and that Tertullian was on these grounds led to address the present dignified remonstrance to that governor.

The true nature of Christianity appears to be no better known to the magistrates than when the 'Apology' was written; its position is the same—that of a 'religio illicita,' and the persecutors are still ignorant of its aims and doctrines. Yet a loftier tone breathes through the condensed sentences of this Address, the opening chapters of which admirably epitomize the 'Apology.' Time had taught Tertullian rather to pity than to deride the aggressors.

The Address is free from any taint of Montanism, although Tertullian had for some years been engaged *inter alia* in the defence of Montanistic tenets. The claim of religious liberty and of freedom of conscience as a civil right, which was advanced in the 'Apology,' reappears here; and the natural tendency to see the hand of Divine judgement in the temporal afflictions which befel persecuting governors and people is especially marked.

The proconsul Scapula has been identified with great pro-

¹ Chap. 39.

² February 27, 212. Dion Cass. lxxvii. 23; Herodian, iv. 4; Spartian, *Sever.* 21; *Geta* 6.

³ Dion Cass. lxxvii. 3.

⁴ See note chap. 4.

bability with Scapula Tertullus, who was consul in the year 195, and whose proconsulship, according to the usual rules of promotion at this time, would fall some fifteen years later. This would coincide with the date already suggested for the Address, viz., sometime later than February in the year 212. The authorities for the text of AD SCAPULAM are the same as those for AD MARTYRAS.

SYNOPSIS



CHAPTER

- I. Fear for you, not for ourselves, has prompted this address.
- II. Our worship is that of the True God, and your refusal to allow us freedom of conscience is contrary to the principles of all religion. We are honest and loyal citizens.
- III. Punishment has invariably overtaken those who have persecuted us: do you therefore take warning.
- IV. It is your duty to punish crime, whereas your perverse administration of the law shews that you know us to be innocent. Other governors, aware of the same thing, have connived at our acquittal, or even shewn us honour. The manner of our life is just, pure, and benevolent.
- V. We do not shrink from martyrdom; but we beg you to pause, and consider our numbers and our position, before you proceed to further persecutions.

AD SCAPULAM



CAPUT PRIMUM.

Nos quidem neque expavescimus, neque pertimescimus ea quae ab ignorantibus patimur, cum ad hanc sectam utique suscepta condicione eius pacti venerimus, ut etiam animas nostras auctorati in has pugnas accedamus, ea quae Deus repromittit consequi optantes, et ea quae diversae vitae 5 comminatur pati timentes. Denique cum omni saevitia vestra concertamus, etiam ultro erumpentes, magisque damnati quam absoluti gaudemus. Itaque hunc libellum non nobis timentes misimus, sed vobis et omnibus inimicis nostris,

AD SCAPULAM. The MSS. and Edd. agree in the Title of this address. Rigalt quotes an inscription in the Farnese palace at Rome DEDICATA III. ID. APRIL. SCAPULA TERTULLO ET TINEIO CLEMENTE COS.

4. *auctorati*, 'having hazarded our very lives.' This deponent form *auctorari* is found in Apul. *Metam.* ix. 19; Digest. xxvi. 8. 4, xxvii. 6. 9. Elsewhere Tertullian uses the active, *ad mart.* 5; *ad Not.* i. 18. The metaphor is taken from the gladiators who 'hired themselves out' to risk their lives in the shows.

6. *Denique*, 'Accordingly.' There are many instances of *denique* in the sense of *igitur*, *adeo*, *ex consequenti*, *proinde* in Tertullian's writings; below ch. 2, *Apol.* 42; *de bapt.* 10; *de paen.* 3; *de pat.* 4; *de pud.* i. 13; *de fug. in pers.* 2, 6; *de exh. cast.* 13; *adv. Marc.* i. 10, iv. 5, 25, 28, 39, v. 9, 10, 15, 17. For another very frequent use (= *exempli gratia*) see note *de praescr. haer.* 2.

7. *concertamus*. The metaphor is that of the battle-field: comp. *Apol.* 50 'Proelium est nobis, quod provocamur ad tribunalia, ut illic sub discrimine capitis pro veritate certemus.'

8. *gaudemus*. Comp. *Apol.* i. 46, 50. 1 S. Pet. iv. 14 ff.

nedum amicis. Ita enim disciplina iubemur diligere inimicos quoque, et orare pro iis qui nos persequuntur, ut haec sit perfecta et propria bonitas nostra, non communis. Amicos enim diligere omnium est, inimicos autem solorum Christianorum. Qui ergo dolemus de ignorantia vestra, et miseremur erroris humani, et futura prospicimus, et signa eorum cottidie intentari videmus, necesse est vel hoc modo erumpere ad proponenda vobis ea quae palam non vultis audire.

CAPUT II.

Nos unum Deum colimus, quem omnes naturaliter nostis, ad cuius fulgura et tonitrua contremiscitis, ad cuius beneficia gaudetis. Ceteros et ipsi putatis deos esse, quos nos daemonas scimus. Tamen humani iuris et naturalis potestatis est unicuique quod putaverit colere; nec alii obest aut prodest alterius religio. Sed nec religionis est cogere religionem, quae sponte suscipi debeat, non vi; cum et hostiae ab animo

1. disciplina, 'by our religion'; see note *de praescr. haer.* 6.

diligere inimicos. S. Matt. v. 44, 48; S. Luke vi. 28. Comp. *Apol.* 31.

5. de ignorantia. On this use of *de* (= *propter*) see note *de praescr. haer.* 3.

CHAP. II. 9. Nos unum Deum colimus. *Apol.* 17.

naturaliter. This is an echo of the argument touched upon *Apol.* 17, and elaborated in the treatise 'De Testimonio Animae.' The same confidence in the natural instincts of the human conscience towards the truth no doubt influenced Tertullian in his assertion of the claim of religious liberty, and in his repudiation of legal coercion in questions of worship.

11. deos esse . . . daemonas. The identity of the heathen gods with daemons had been already proved, *Apol.* 23.

12. Tamen humani iuris, &c. Comp. *Apol.* 24, where Tertullian complains that although this principle was recognized by the Romans so far that they admitted even the most ridiculous foreign cults, yet the Christians were debarred the free exercise of their religion and formed a solitary exception to the otherwise universal extension of toleration.

15. ab animo libenti. On the necessity of spontaneity in worship see *Apol.* 9, 24, 28.

libenti expostulentur. Ita etsi nos compuleritis ad sacrificandum, nihil praestabitis diis vestris: ab invitis enim sacrificia non desiderabunt, nisi si contentiosi sunt; contentiosus autem Deus non est. Denique qui est verus, omnia sua ex aequo et profanis et suis praestat. Ideoque et iudicium constituit aeternum de gratis et ingratis. Tamen nos, quos sacrilegos existimatis, nec in furto unquam deprehendistis, nedum in sacrilegio. Omnes autem qui templa despoliant, et per deos iurant, et eosdem colunt, et Christiani non sunt, et sacrilegi tamen deprehenduntur. Longum est si retexamus, quibus aliis modis et derideantur et contemnantur omnes dii ab ipsis cultoribus suis. Sic et circa maiestatem imperatoris infamamur, tamen nunquam Albiniani, nec Nigriani, vel Cassiani inveniri potuerunt Christiani, sed idem ipsi qui per genios eorum in pridie usque iuraverant, qui pro salute eorum hostias et fecerant et voverant, qui Christianos saepe damnaverant, hostes eorum sunt reperti. Christianus

5. et profanis et suis. S. Matt. v. 45. Comp. *Apol.* 41, where Tertullian answers a retort based on the common sufferings of Christians and heathens in this world.

7. nec in furto. The integrity and loyalty of the early Christians were points on which they might deservedly boast: see below ch. 4; *Apol.* 2, 42, 44, 46; Aristid. *Apol.* 15; Iust. Mart. *Apol.* i. 16, 17. Comp. Plin. *Epist.* x. 96.

8. nedum in sacrilegio. *Apol.* 15, 37.

11. contemnantur, &c. This was shewn with much acuteness and satire *Apol.* 12, 14, 15.

12. circa maiestatem. The crime of 'majesty' or disloyalty was even more heinous than that of 'atheism' or 'sacrilege,' and formed one of the most frequent charges brought against the Christians. This indictment was fully answered *Apol.* 28 ff.

13. Albiniani, Nigriani, 'adherents of Albinus and Niger,' the two claimants to the imperial title, and rivals of Severus, in 193. They are mentioned *Apol.* 35 in a similar way as types of traitors along with Cassius, a usurper of the purple in the East in the reign of Marcus Aurelius, 175. Comp. below ch. 3.

14. Cassiani, 'followers of Cassius,' the usurper mentioned in the last note.

nullius est hostis, nedum imperatoris, quem sciens a Deo suo constitui, necesse est ut et ipsum diligat et revereatur et honoret et salvum velit, cum toto Romano imperio, quousque saeculum stabit: tamdiu enim stabit. Colimus ergo et
 5 imperatorem sic quomodo et nobis licet et ipsi expedit, ut hominem a Deo secundum, et quicquid est a Deo consecutum et solo Deo minorem. Hoc et ipse volet. Sic enim omnibus maior est, dum solo vero Deo minor est. Sic et ipsis diis maior est, dum et ipsi in potestate sunt eius. Itaque et sacri-
 10 ficamus pro salute imperatoris, sed Deo nostro et ipsius, sed quomodo praecepit Deus, pura prece. Non enim eget Deus, conditor universitatis, odoris aut sanguinis alicuius. Haec enim daemoniorum pabula sunt. Daemones autem non tantum respuimus, verum et revincimus, et cottidie traducimus, et de
 15 hominibus expellimus, sicut plurimis notum est. Ita nos magis oramus pro salute imperatoris, ab eo eam postulantes

1. nullius: *i. q.* neminis, as frequently; *e g.* ch. 4; *Apol.* 8; *de idol.* 18; *Scorp.* 6.

a Deo suo constitui. *Apol.* 33 'noster est magis Caesar, ut a nostro Deo constitutus.' *Rom.* xiii. 1; *Titus* iii. 1; 1 *S. Peter* ii. 13.

4. tamdiu enim stabit. Tertullian states the common Christian belief of the early centuries that the destruction of the Roman empire would involve, and synchronize with, that of the world. 2 *Thess.* ii. 6 was frequently so interpreted; see note *Apol.* 32; *Cyr. Ier. Catech.* xv. 11 f.; *August. de cir. Dei* xx. 19; *Lactant.* vii. 25; *Ambros. ad Epist. i. ad Thess.* 'Non prius veniet Christus quam regni Romani defectio fiat, et appareat Antichristus'; &c.

6. a Deo secundum. *Apol.* 30, 33, 34.

9. in potestate sunt eius. *Apol.* 5, 13, 29, 30.

sacrificamus. *Apol.* 30; *de orat.* 28 'haec est hostia spiritalis quae pristina sacrificia delevit.' Tertullian also applies the term 'sacrificium' to fasting and mortification, *de res. carn.* 8; and to the Holy Eucharist, *de orat.* 19; *de cult. fem.* ii. 11.

13. daemoniorum pabula. See note *Apol.* 22.

14. traducimus = patefacimus; Tertullian often employs this word for *convincere, refutare*: *de anim.* 1; *de pud.* 8, 22; *adv. Herm.* 38; *adv. Prax.* 1.

de hominibus expellimus. *Apol.* 23: for *de* [= *ex*] see note *de praescr. haer.* 3.

qui praestare potest. Et utique ex disciplina patientiae divinae agere nos, satis manifestum esse vobis potest, cum tanta hominum multitudo, pars paene maior civitatis cuiusque, in silentio et modestia agimus, singuli forte noti magis quam omnes, nec aliunde noscibiles quam de emendatione vitiorum 5 pristinorum. Absit enim ut indigne feramus ea nos pati quae optamus, aut ultionem a nobis aliquam machinemur, quam a Deo exspectamus.

CAPUT III.

TAMEN, sicut supra diximus, doleamus necesse est, quod nulla civitas impune latura sit sanguinis nostri effusionem; 10 sicut et sub Hilariano praeside, cum de areis sepulturarum nostrarum adclamassent: Areae non sint! areae ipsorum

1. disciplina. See note *de praescr. haer.* 6.

3. pars paene maior civitatis. Comp. ch. 5; and for other early references to the numbers of the Christians see note *Apol.* I, 37; and add Ignat. *Magn.* 10, *Rom.* I.

5. noscibiles, 'recognizable': a word confined to ecclesiastical Latin. It is found in Augustin. *de Trin.* ix. 5. 12.

de emendatione vitiorum. *Apol.* 3.

7. ultionem . . . a Deo exspectamus. *Apol.* 37; Lactant. *de mort. pers.* I.

CHAP. III.—II. Hilariano. Hilarian was the governor under whom Perpetua and her fellow-martyrs suffered at Karthage in 203: *Pass. S. Perp.* 6 'Hilarius procurator qui tunc, loco proconsulis Minuci Timiniani defuncti, ius gladii acceperat.'

praeside. *Praeses* is the generic title which Tertullian gives to provincial governors, *Apol.* 2, 9, 30, 50; *de spect.* 30. Comp. Digest. i. tit. 18 'praesidis nomen generale est, eo quod et proconsules et legati Caesaris et omnes provinciae regentes, licet senatores sint, praesides appelluntur.' Gai. *Inst.* i. 6 (quoted Introd. to *Apol.* p. xviii); Suet. *Oct.* 23; Capitol. *Ant. Pius* 6.

12. Areae non sint! &c. "Let them have no cemeteries!" they themselves had no threshing-floors: for they gathered no harvests.' The refusal of burying-places to the Christians was avenged by the failure of the harvests. Any open vacant spaces were termed *areae*, and Tertullian plays upon the word as applied, first, to the spaces outside the cities which were used as cemeteries, and secondly, to the

non fuerunt: messes enim suas non egerunt. Ceterum et imbres anni praeteriti quid commemoraverint genus humanum apparuit, cataclysmum scilicet et retro fuisse propter incredulitates et iniquitates hominum; et ignes qui super moenia
 5 Carthagini proxime pependerit per noctem, quid minati sint, sciunt qui viderunt; et pristina tonitrua quid sonaverint, sciunt qui obdurerunt. Omnia haec signa sunt imminentis irae Dei, quam necesse est, quoquo modo possumus, ut et annuntiemus et praedicemus, et deprecemur interim localem
 10 esse. Universalem enim et supremam suo tempore sentient, qui exempla eius aliter interpretantur. Nam et sol ille in conventu Uticensi, extincto paene lumine, adeo portentum

raised and levelled plats constructed in the fields for threshing-floors. For the former use of the word see Pont. Diac. in *Actis Cyprian.* 5 'eius corpus . . . sublatum ad areas Macrobbii Candidiani procuratoris, quae sunt in via Mappaliensi iuxta piscinas': for the latter Verg. *Georg.* i. 178 ff.; Colum. v. i. 4; 2. 20; Varro *de re rust.* i. 51.

2. commemoraverint. So *Vind.*, *Leid.*, *Rhen.* Commemorare = commonere, commonefacere similarly August. *de unit. eccl.* 11; *contr. Cresc.* i. 38; *post Collat.* 20. See too Plaut. *Pseudol.* v. i. 36. *Flor.* 12 reads commeruerunt: other MSS. and Edd. commeruerit.

3. retro = antea, as frequently in Tertullian; *Apol.* i, 2, 3, 4, 21, 27, 40; *de idol.* 15; *de spect.* 9, 39; *de res. carn.* 58; *Pass. S. Perp.* 8.

4. ignes. Probably the Northern Lights described by Dion Cass. lxxvi. 4, writing of the year 196 πῦρ αἰφνίδιον νυκτὸς ἐν τῇ ἀέρι τῇ πρὸς βορρᾶν τοσοῦτον ὥφθη, ὥστε τοὺς μὲν τὴν πύλιν ὕλην, τοὺς δὲ καὶ τὸν οὐρανὸν αὐτὸν καίεσθαι δοκεῖν. (I owe this and the following note to Prof. Harris *Acts of Perp. and Fel.* p. 8.)

6. tonitrua. The thunderings and darkness have been explained as due to volcanic causes; since Dion Cass. lxxvi. 2 records an eruption of Vesuvius and very loud mutterings audible for many miles, sometime about the year 203.

11. in conventu Uticensi. 'Conventus' is the Latin equivalent of *διοίκησις*, the term applied to the 'political districts' or 'jurisdictions' into which certain Roman provinces were divided: see Plin. *II. N.* v. 29, where 'conventus' is used synonymously with 'iurisdictio.' Cicero *pro Lig.* 8 'conventus firmi atque magni [erant in Africa].' This is probably the meaning of the word here; though it is explained of the 'session of the annual African assembly' at Utica by Professor Salmon (*D. C. B.* iv. 592). 'Conventus' is also used of the judicial metropolis of a district,

fuit, ut non potuerit ex ordinario deliquio hoc pati, positus in suo hypsomate et domicilio. Habetis astrologos. Possumus æque et exitus quorundam praesidium tibi proponere, qui in fine vitae suae recordati sunt deliquisse, quod vexassent Christianos. Vigellius Saturninus, qui primus hic gladium in 5

Plin. *II. N.* iii. 1. 3 'iuridici conventus [Baeticae] quattuor, Gaditanus, Cordubensis,' &c. It may be in this sense that Jerome's phrase is to be understood, *de vir. illustr.* 17, where he asserts that Polycarp's letter was still read 'in conventu Asiae.'

extincto paene lumine. Astronomical calculations fail to discover any eclipse about this time visible in Africa which would explain this phenomenon; and Tertullian's reference to the astronomers implies that it baffled contemporary scientific opinion.

2. **hypsomate** = ὑψώματι, 'in its ascension,' or 'altitude.' ὑψωμα and ταπείνωμα are converse astrological terms used of the ascension and declension of stars; Sext. Empiric. v. 35. Tertullian's meaning is not very clear; but by 'suo hypsomate' he may mean the highest point of the plane of the ecliptic above the plane of the moon's orbit; and in such a position an eclipse of the sun would be, as he says, impossible. See however Petrus Possinus *apud* Migne *P. L.* iii. 59.

domicilio. This again is an astrological term, the technical signification of which in this connexion is obscure.

astrologos = ἀστρολόγους, 'astronomers': see note *Apol.* 1, and add *de idol.* 9; Apuleius *Apol.* 47; Hippol. *Philosoph.* iv *passim*.

3. **exitus.** See note *de praescr. haer.* 2. Lactantius in the fourth century collected instances of the dooms of persecutors and embodied them in his treatise 'De mortibus persecutorum' (comp. Euseb. i. 8). In more recent times Spelman ('De non temerandis ecclesiis') and Wayland Joyce ('Doom of Sacrilege') have attempted historical reviews of a similar nature.

5. **Vigellius Saturninus.** Under this proconsul, who had been 'legatus Augusti' in Lower Moesia, and whose full name was Publius Vigellius Rains Plarius Saturninus Atilius Braduanus Aucidius Tertullus, Namphamo the 'archimartyr' of Africa, with his companions Miggin, Lucitas, and Samaë, suffered martyrdom at Karthage on July 4, 180; Augustin. *Epist.* 15, 16. A fortnight later, July 17, the twelve Scillitan martyrs were put to death (for their names see *D. C. B.* ii. 501 s. v. FELIX 212). On Saturninus see a paper by Renier *Rev. Archéol.* 1864 x. 396; Comptes Rend. de l'Acad. des Inscr. 1864, pp. 256 ff. Lightfoot *Ignatius* i. 522 ff., where the martyrdoms are discussed and further references given.

nos egit, lumina amisit. Claudius Lucius Herminianus in Cappadocia, cum, indigne ferens uxorem suam ad hanc sectam transisse, Christianos crudeliter tractasset, solusque in praetorio suo vastatus peste, convivis vermibus ebullisset : Nemo
 5 sciat, aiebat, ne gaudeant Christiani aut sperent Christianae. Postea cognito errore suo, quod tormentis quosdam a proposito suo excidere fecisset, paene Christianus decessit. Caecilius Capella in illo exitu Byzantino : Christiani gaudete !

1. *lumina amisit.* This is almost entirely a poetic use of *lumina* for 'the eyes': Cicero *Tusc. disp.* v. 39. 114 has the exact expression, 'luminibus amissis.'

Herminianus. If the order be chronological the date of this governor will lie between that of Saturninus in 180, and that of Caecilius Capella in 196, and therefore probably during the reign of Commodus. The form of the name is very uncertain, *Herminianus Gang., Gel., Pam., Rig., Oehl.* : *Gerominianus 3 Vat.* : *Hierorainianus Vind., Leid.* : *Hierominianus Rhen.* : *Hieronymianus alii.* Lightfoot has pointed out that in the middle of the fourth century the name Clodius Hermogenianus occurs in the inscriptions as belonging to two African proconsuls (*Ignatius* i. 539).

3. *praetorio.* The official residence of the provincial governor; originally 'the tent of the general' in time of war. 'Praetorium' was further applied to any splendid mansion or palatial residence, see *Pass. S. Perp.* 3; *Martial.* x. 79. 1.

4. *convivis.* Scaliger's emendation of the MSS. *cum muris Vind., Leid.* : *cum vivis Gang., Gel., Pam., Rig.* : *cum vivis Rhen.*

ebullisset. Tertullian uses *ebullire* in the sense of *fervere, ardere* *adv. Marc.* i. 27; *Scorp.* 1; *de idol.* 3.

5. *aut sperent Christianae.* These words are omitted in *Gorz., Gang., Gel., Pam., Rig.* : for 'sperent,' *Vind., Leid.* present 'spe.'

8. *Caecilius Capella.* Caecilius seems to have commanded the garrison at Byzantium on behalf of Niger, 194-196, and the Christians to have incurred his hatred by their loyalty to Severus, or at least by their refusal to aid his rival. Burton *Ecccl. Hist.* p. 444 ff., Lightfoot *Ignatius* i. 526 f. Tertullian's oft-repeated boast that no Christian sided with Niger or Albinus seems to appeal to a fact that was notorious. The Byzantine persecution was referred to the reign of Marcus Aurelius by Tillemont *Mém.* ii. 315; and Renan *Marc. Aurèle* 279; but this would rob Tertullian's references to it of all point.

Byzantino. Byzantium was the last stronghold to remain in the hands of Niger's party; *Spartian. Sever.* 8. After a three years'

exclamavit. Sed qui videntur sibi impune tulisse, venient in diem divini iudicii. Tibi quoque optamus admonitionem solam fuisse, quod cum Adrumeticum Mavilum ad bestias damnasses, et statim haec vexatio subsecuta est, et nunc ex eadem caussa interpellatio sanguinis. Sed memento de cetero.

CAPUT IV.

NON te terremus, qui nec timemus; sed velim, ut omnes salvos facere possimus, monendo *μὴ θεομαχεῖν*. Potes et officio iurisdictionis tuae fungi et humanitatis meminisse, vel quia et vos sub gladio estis. Quid enim amplius tibi mandatur 10

siege it finally surrendered in 196 to Severus, who inflicted upon its inhabitants a terrible vengeance; Dion Cass. lxxiv. 10; Herodian. iii. 6.

Christiani gaudete! 'Gaudete!' was the congratulatory formula indicative of exultation or victory. Rigalt quotes the inscription on a gold coin commemorating a victory of Maximian GAUDETE ROMANI. Comp. Prudent. *Cath.* xii. 201; Martial xi. 61.

3. Adrumeticum Mavilum. Nothing more is known of this martyr. He is commemorated on Jan. 4 in the Bollandis Acts. Adrumetum (modern Susa), a city on the coast 100 miles south of Karthage, was the capital of the African province of Byzacium. Caes. *B. G.* ii. 23; Liv. xxx. 29; Plin. *H. N.* v. 4. 3.

ad bestias damnasses. This was contrary to law, see below ch. 4. The nobly-born Perpetua was thus illegally condemned.

4. et statim haec vexatio, &c. This sentence is very obscure: *haec vexatio* may be (1) identical with *interpellatio sanguinis*, and then will probably refer to an attack of illness which had seized the praconsul, and was now again repeated as a warning; *interpellatio* on this view simply = monitus. Or (2) on the other hand they may be distinguished, *vexatio* referring to the destructive rains mentioned above, and *interp. sang.* to a new outbreak of pestilence.

5. interpellatio. The 'interruption,' in the form of some personal or public calamity, which put a stop to the governor's persecuting policy. In the Oxford translation, however, the phrase has been interpreted quite differently of the blood of the Christian martyrs appealing for justice; *interpellatio* being in legal terminology an 'appeal to the court': Digest. v. 1. 23, l. 16. 1.

de cetero, 'for the future': comp. *Apol.* 2 'quid de cetero ageret.'

CHAP. IV.—8. *μὴ θεομαχεῖν*. Acts v. 39.

quam nocentes confessos damnare, negantes autem ad tormenta revocare? Videtis ergo quomodo ipsi vos contra mandata faciatis, ut confessos negare cogatis. Adeo confitemini innocentes esse nos, quos damnare statim ex confessione
 5 non vultis. Si autem contenditis ad elidendos nos, iam ergo innocentiam expugnatis. Quanti autem praesides, et constantiores et crudeliores, dissimulaverunt ab huiusmodi caussis! ut Cincius Severus, qui Thysdri ipse dedit remedium, quomodo responderent Christiani, ut dimitti possent; ut
 10 Vespronius Candidus, qui Christianum quasi tumultuosum civibus suis satisfacere dimisit; ut Asper, qui modice vexatum

3. *negare cogatis.* *Apol.* 2.

5. *ad elidendos nos*, 'to squeeze a denial out of us.' I believe *elidere* here bears this meaning rather than 'to strangle our existence,' 'to stamp us out.' Tertullian's use of *elidere* is not confined to its more usual signification of 'throttling,' see note *Apol.* 23; *de spect.* 18 'primos homines diabolus elisit,' where it simply means 'overthrew.' 'From your persistent efforts to make us deny our confession,' Tertullian would say, 'it is obvious that the object of your assault (*expugnatis*) is our innocence.'

6. *Quanti*=quot, as frequently; see note *de praescr. haer.* 10.

7. *dissimulaverunt ab h. caussis*=neglexerunt has caussas. *Dissimulare*=neglegere *Apol.* 2 'Parcit et saevit, dissimulat et animadvertit.' So *dissimulatio*=neglegentia *adv. Marc.* v. 5.

8. *Cincius Severus*. This governor was put to death by Severus some time after the slaughter of the numerous and distinguished partizans of Albinus in 197; Spartian. *Sever.* 13. Tertullian may have had Cincius in his mind when writing in *Apol.* 35 of those who were daily being detected as disloyal subjects.

Thysdri. Thysdrus, *Θυσδρός*, a fortified city in the province of Byzacium, 150 miles south of Karthage; modern El Djem. It was at this city that the proconsul Gordian assumed the purple in February 238; Capitol. *Gord.* 8; Herodian. vii. 6.

10. *Vespronius Candidus*. Proconsul A.D. 190-192. Vespronius had been sent as one of the legates of the Senate to the legions under Severus in 193 to persuade them to desert their commander and support Didius Julianus; Spartian. *Iul.* 5.

11. *Asper*. Julius Asper, proconsul of Africa cir. 205.
modice vexatum, 'only slightly racked.'

hominem et statim deiectum, nec sacrificium compulit facere, ante professus inter advocatos et adsessores, dolere se incidisse in hanc caussam. Pudens etiam missum ad se Christianum in elogio concussionis eius intellecta dimisit, scisso eodem 5 elogio, sine accusatore negans se auditurum hominem secundum mandatum. Haec omnia tibi et de officio suggeri possunt, et ab eisdem advocatis, qui et ipsi beneficia habent Christianorum, licet adclament, quae volunt. Nam et cuiusdam notarius, cum a daemone praecipitaretur, liberatus est;

1. *deiectum*; *sc. fide*: 'apostatized.' The word is thus used of 'steadfastness overthrown' *Pass. S. Perp.* 3, 5.

2. *advocatores et adsessores*. Two forensic terms: 'advocatus' being a counsel or witness called in to the aid of a litigant; and 'adessor,' exactly what the English derivative denotes, the assistant of a judge; *Sueton. Galb.* 14; *Digest.* i. 22; *August. Conf.* vi. 10.

3. *Pudens*. This governor may perhaps be identified with Quintus Servilius Pudens who was consul 166; *Lamprid. Comm.* 11. If so, his proconsulship may be dated just before that of Saturninus, cir. 178 or 179. He may, however, as the last governor mentioned by Tertullian, have been the immediate predecessor of Scapula, A.D. 210.

4. *elogio*. *Elogium* is a word of very frequent recurrence in Tertullian. Here it signifies the written 'warrant,' capable of being torn (*scisso*), which contained the summary of the criminal charge. More generally it is used of the 'indictment,' 'accusation,' or 'crime': see note *Apol.* 2; and add *Apol.* 15 'Iovis elogia,' 'the crimes of Jupiter'; *de idol.* 1; *de coron.* 5; *de ieiun.* 17.

concussione. In juridical Latin 'concussio' is 'an extortion of money under threats'; *Digest.* xlv. 17; and so below ch. 5 (see note), *Apol.* 7 (see note). Here of a 'vexatious' indictment. The verb 'concussere' is used in its ordinary sense of natural or political disturbances *Apol.* 25, 31; and so 'concussio totius mundi' of the Last Day, *de monogam.* 16.

5. *secundum mandatum*. Anonymous accusations had been forbidden by Trajan, and it is to that ruling that the words refer; *Plin. Epist.* x. 97 'Sine auctore vero propositi libelli, nullo crimine locum habere debent: nam et pessimi exempli, nec nostri saeculi est.' Lightfoot, following Rigalt, refers it to the rescript of Hadrian to Fundanus, *Euseb.* iv. 9 (*Ignatius* i. 476 ff., 522).

6. *suggeri possunt*, 'might be suggested': see notes *Apol.* 18; *de praescr. haer.* 6.

8. *cuiusdam notarius*, 'a short-hand writer in the employ of a certain attorney (*advocatus*).'

et quorundam propinquus et puerulus; et quanti honesti viri (de vulgaribus enim non dicimus) aut a daemoniis aut valetudinibus remediati sunt! Ipse etiam Severus pater Antonini, Christianorum memor fuit. Nam et Proculum
 5 Christianum qui Torpacion cognominabatur, Euhodiae procuratorem, qui cum per oleum aliquando curaverat, requisivit et in palatio suo habuit usque ad mortem eius; quem et Antoninus optime noverat lacte Christiano educatus. Sed et

3. **Severus pater Antonini.** The form of this expression implies that Antoninus, i.e. Bassianus Caracalla, was reigning alone, otherwise 'et Getae' would naturally have been added. This address was therefore written after the murder of Geta in February 212.

5. **Euhodiae.** There can be little doubt that this is the right form of the name, which also occurs in an inscription quoted by Oehler from Gruter DCCLXXXIX. 5. The text follows *Rig.*, *Scaliger*, *Oehl.*: Euhodiae *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*: Euhodiae *Vind.*: Euhodiae *Leid.*: Euhodiae *Gorz.*: Euhodiae *Pith.* Rigalt, however, was disposed to follow Pamelius and Junius in their suggestion to read 'euhodiae' (not as a proper name), and to refer it to the duties of Proculus as overseer of the roads (τῆ εὐδοῖα). This Proculus they would identify with Eutychius Proculus the grammarian, a friend of Antoninus Pius (who is mentioned Capitol. *Ant. Pius* 2; Trebell. Poll. *Trig. tyr.*, *Aemilian*), on the ground that Eutychius is the Greek equivalent of the Punic name Torpacion (Topacron, Toparcion); but these conjectures were rightly rejected by Casaubon *Hist. August.* p. 57.

procuratorem, 'the agent' of Euhodia. The 'procurator' was the steward or man of business of a private citizen, and often the manager of his estates. In the senatorial provinces under the empire the 'procurator' was the emperor's steward and took charge of his private revenues, on emergency also assuming the duties of the proconsul, as Hilarian did, *Pass. S. Perp.* 6 (quoted above ch. 3); comp. Tacit. *Hist.* i. 11; *Ann.* xii. 60. In the imperial provinces he filled the place of the 'quaestor'; while in some special districts, such as Judaea and the Alpine regions, the direct deputy of the emperor received the title of 'procurator.' Gibbon i. 201; Merivale *Hist. Rom.* iv. 125.

6. *per oleum . . . curaverat.* Severus suffered from gout; Spartian. *Sever.* 16.

8. *lacte Christiano educatus.* These words have been understood to imply that Caracalla had had a Christian wet-nurse, or at least had been brought up under Christian influences. Spartian mentions incidentally that as a boy he had a Jewish (=most probably, Christian)

clarissimas feminas et clarissimos viros Severus, sciens huius sectae esse, non modo non laesit, verum et testimonio exornavit, et populo furenti in nos palam restitit. Marcus quoque Aurelius in Germanica expeditione Christianorum

playmate; *Caracalla* 1, 'Septennis puer, cum conlusorem puerum ob Iudaicam religionem gravius verberatum audisset, neque patrem suum neque patrem pueri velut auctores verberum diu respexit.' *Cod. Divion.* reads instead of the text, 'Christianis educatum,' referring the Christian education to Proculus instead of Caracalla.

1. clarissimas . . . clarissimos. That Christianity did include amongst its disciples some persons of rank and distinction is proved both by the words of Pliny (*Epist.* x. 96 'omnis ordinis') written in 112, and by incidental notices in other writers: below ch. 5 'tui ordinis viros'; see note *Apol.* 1: Lightfoot *Philippians* p. 21, *Ignatius* ii. 186, 196, *Clem. Rom.* i. 30.

2. exornavit. The occasion of this clemency and protection seems to have been on Severus' entry into Rome after the victory over Albinus (Feb. 197), when the Christians were attacked by the mob for consistently holding aloof from the riotous and to them idolatrous demonstrations of public joy; comp. *Apol.* 35. A writer in *D. C. B.* i. 401 suggests, from conjecture, 'exoneravit' for the text.

3. Marcus Aurelius, &c. Comp. *Apol.* 5. Of the story of the 'Thundering Legion' the historical facts are these. During the intense heat of the summer of 174, during his expedition against the Quadi, M. Aurelius was surprised near Carnuntum and cut off from all water supplies. At this juncture an opportune storm relieved the wants of his soldiers, who were then led on to victory; and the Emperor wrote to announce the fact to the Senate. The rain was attributed by the Christians in the army to their own prayers; by the pagans to the prayers of Aurelius (*Capitol. M. Ant. Phil.* 24; Themistius *Orat.* 15), to Jupiter Pluvius (Anton. Column), or to the incantations of two magi Arnuphis and Julian (*Dion Cass.* lxxi. 8 ff.). The miraculous element disappears from the story entirely under scrutiny, and the additions of later writers need not be noticed (*Oros.* vii. 15; *Niceph.* iv. 12). To the statement of Claudius Apollinaris (*apud* Euseb. v. 5) that the name 'Thundering Legion' was given by Aurelius to the Legion of Christian soldiers, at whose intercession the relief had been vouchsafed, it is sufficient to oppose the fact that in the time of Nero there was already a Legion so called—the XIIth (*C. I. L.* iii. 30, 6097; *Dion Cass.* lv. 23) τὸ κεραυνόφορον, 'Fulminata.' It is clear too that at this time a whole legion could not have been composed entirely of Christians. In *Apol.* 5 Tertullian hazards a conjecture that the letter written by Aurelius to

militum orationibus ad Deum factis imbres in siti illa impe-
travit. Quando non geniculationibus et ieunationibus nostris
etiam siccitates sunt depulsae? Tunc et populus exclamans
Deo deorum, qui solus potens, in Iovis nomine Deo nostro
5 testimonium reddidit. Praeter haec depositum non abne-
gamus, matrimonium nullius adulteramus, pupillos pie
tractamus, indigentibus refrigeramus, nulli malum pro malo
reddimus. Viderint, qui sectam mentiuntur, quos et ipsi
recusamus. Quis denique de nobis alio nomine queritur?
10 Quod aliud negotium patitur Christianus, nisi suae sectae
quam incestam, quam crudelem, tanto tempore nemo pro-
bavit? Pro tanta innocentia, pro tanta probitate, pro iustitia,
pro pudicitia, pro fide, pro veritate, pro Deo vivo, cremamur;
quod nec sacrilegi, nec hostes publici veri, nec tot maiestatis

the Senate would be found among the archives and that it would contain a reference to the Christians. He nowhere claims to have seen the letter however, and the latter part of his conjecture is certainly unfounded. Merivale *Hist. Rom.* viii. 338; Lightfoot *Ignatius* i. 485 ff.

3. siccitates sunt depulsae. Comp. *Apol.* 40.

5. testimonium reddidit. See notes *Apol.* 14, 46.

depositum non abnegamus. See note ch. 2.

6. nullius. See note ch. 2.

pupillos pie tractamus. Comp. Juvenal, vi. 628 ff. for the dangers menacing rich wards from the avarice of their relatives or guardians.

7. refrigeramus, 'we relieve,' 'refresh': it is a common verb in Tertullian, as also the subst. 'refrigerium'; *Apol.* 39, 49; *adv. Marc.* iii. 24, iv. 16; *de idol.* 13; *Pass. S. Perp.* 1, 3, 5; *de anim.* 51; *de ieun.* 10; *adv. Prax.* 16.

nulli malum, &c. *Rom.* xii. 17.

8. Viderint: see note *de praeser. haer.* 7.

quos et ipsi recusamus. Heretics or delinquents, who were excommunicated; comp. *Apol.* 39, 44, 46; *de pudic.* 3, 18; *de paen.* 9. The Church often suffered through heretical misrepresentations of her doctrines, and the gross immoralities of certain heretical sects; *de praeser. haer.* 4; Euseb. iv. 7.

9. alio nomine. *Apol.* 44.

14. hostes publici. *Apol.* 35.

veri. So *Vind.*, *Leid.*, *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*: verum *Rig.*, *Latinus*.

rei pati solent. Nam et nunc a praeside Legionis, et a praeside Mauritaniae vexatur hoc nomen, sed gladio tenus, sicut et a primordio mandatum est animadverti in huiusmodi. Sed maiora certamina, maiora praemia.

CAPUT V.

CRUELITAS vestra gloria est nostra. Vide tantum ne 5 hoc ipso, quod talia sustinemus, ad hoc solum videamur erumpere, ut hoc ipsum probemus, nos haec non timere, sed ultro vocare. Arrius Antoninus in Asia cum persequeretur instanter, omnes illius civitatis Christiani ante tribunalia eius se manu facta obtulerunt. Tum ille, paucis duci iussis, 10 reliquis ait, ὦ δέῖλοι, εἰ θέλετε ἀποθνήσκειν, κρημνοὺς ἢ βρόχους ἔχετε. Hoc si placuerit et hic fieri, quid facies de tantis millibus hominum, tot viris ac feminis, omnis sexus, omnis

1. Legionis. Numidia is no doubt intended, where the IIIrd Augustan Legion had its camp at the town of Lambaesa; Dion Cass. lv. 23; Cyprian. *Epist.* 55.

2. Mauritaniae. Mauritania had been temporarily annexed to the empire in B. C. 33 on the death of king Bocchus (Dion Cass. xlix. 43); but eight years later Augustus presented it to Juba, a son of the late king of Numidia. In A. D. 42 it was again incorporated, and divided by Claudius into the two provinces of Tingitana and Caesariensis.

gladio tenus, 'only by the sword,' not by the inhuman deaths inflicted by Scapula, such as throwing to the beasts (ch. 3) or burning at the stake.

3. huiusmodi. See note *de praescr. haer.* 4.

CHAP. V.—8. Arrius Antoninus. A proconsul of Asia of this name, whose character agrees with what is here told of him, was put to death on a false charge by Commodus; Lamprid. *Comm.* 7. An earlier proconsul of the same name under Titus or Domitian, is addressed by Pliny (*Epist.* iv. 3) and mentioned by Capitolinus (*Ant. Pius* 1). See Lightfoot *Ignatius* i. 539.

10. manu facta. See note *Apol.* 39.

duci, 'to be executed': *duci* is used thus absolutely (*sc.* 'ad mortem') Phil. *Epist.* x. 96; Sueton. *Calig.* 27; Lactant. *de mort. pers.* 40; Acts Scillit. mart. *ad fin.*

12. tantis. See note *de praescr. haer.* 10.

tantis millibus hominum. See above chap. 2.

aetatis, omnis dignitatis, offerentibus se tibi? Quantis ignibus, quantis gladiis opus erit! quid ipsa Carthago passura est, decimanda a te, cum propinquos, cum contubernales suos illic unusquisque cognoverit, cum viderit illic
 5 fortasse et tui ordinis viros et matronas, et principales quasque personas, et amicorum tuorum vel propinquos vel amicos? Parce ergo tibi, si non nobis. Parce Carthagini, si non tibi. Parce provinciae, quae visa intentione tua obnoxia facta est concussionibus et militum et inimicorum
 10 suorum cuiusque. Magistrum neminem habemus, nisi Deum solum. Hic ante te est, nec abscondi potest, sed cui nihil facere possis. Ceterum quos putas tibi magistros, homines sunt et ipsi morituri quandoque. Nec tamen deficient haec secta, quam tunc magis aedificari scias, cum caedi videtur.
 15 Quisque enim tantam tolerantiam spectans, ut aliquo scrupulo percussus, et inquirere accenditur, quid sit in caussa, et ubi cognoverit veritatem, et ipse statim sequitur.

omnis sexus. *i. q.* utriusque sexus; so again *Apol.* 1; *Min. Fel.* 9. 28; *Lactant.* i. 20, 25.

8. intentione tua, 'by your purpose': an unusual meaning of 'intentio'; but see *Plin. Paneg.* 78; *Digest.* xxxiv. 1, 10.

9. obnoxia . . . concussionibus, 'liable to violent extortions (to avert accusation) at the hands of the soldiery and one's private enemies.' See note ch. 4; comp. *de fug. in pers.* 12; *Apol.* 7.

10. Magistrum neminem habemus. *Apol.* 34; *de idol.* 18.

12. magistros, homines. *Apol.* 33.

14. tunc magis aedificari. *Apol.* 50.

APPENDIX



PSEUDO-TERTULLIANI

ADVERSUS OMNES HAERESES

INTRODUCTION



THIS Appendix is not from Tertullian's pen, but is usually printed along with the treatise 'De Praescriptione Haereticorum.' In the editions of Gangnaeus, Gelenius, and Pamelius, it forms an immediate continuation of the last chapter of that treatise. Rigalt separated it, but without a fresh heading. It is not found in Codices *Agob.*, *Corb.*, *Brit.* The MSS. which contain it are *Leid.*, *Flor.* 13, *Flor.* 55, *Magl.* 527, *Magl.* 528, *Gorz.*, *Vatic.*, *Patern.*, *Hirsauy.* Its title in *Leid.*, *Flor.* 55, *Magl.* 528, *Vatic.*, is ADVERSUS OMNES HAERESSES: in *Flor.* 13, *Magl.* 527, ADVERSUS OMNES HAERETICOS. *Patern.* gives no title. It was included by Routh in his *Opuscula Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum* under the title 'Adversus omnes Haereticos Libellus.'

The Appendix is now generally believed to be an abridged Latin translation of the short work of Hippolytus which Photius (*Bib. Cod.* 121), calls a σύνταγμα or 'Compendium,' and entitles *Katà αἵρεσέων βιβλιδάριον*¹. This work of Hippolytus comprised an account of thirty-two heresies, beginning with the Dositheans and ending with the Noëtians. It was based on some lectures which he had heard Irenaeus deliver in Rome, probably about the year 177. Its date would be certainly earlier than 190. The work itself is lost, but

¹ Lightfoot, *Clem. Rom.* ii. 413 ff.; Lipsius, *Quellenkritik des Epiphanius*, Wien 1865; *Quellen der ältesten Ketzergesch.*; Harnack, *Quellenkritik der Gesch. des Gnost.* Salmon in *D. C. B.* iii. 93 ff.

Lipsius has succeeded in partly restoring it by a method described in his work on Epiphanius cited in the footnote. The contents of the Appendix agree remarkably with Photius' description of Hippolytus' little treatise. The heresies enumerated are about thirty-two, beginning with Dositheus and ending with Praxeas, whose Patripassianism was identical with that of Noëtus, and who perhaps occupied a more prominent place in the translator's mind at the time¹. The absence of the names of heretics later than Praxeas makes it probable that the Appendix was subjoined to Tertullian's treatise sometime about the pontificate of Zephyrinus (A. D. 199-217) and at Rome, but by whom it is impossible to determine².

¹ See *Christian Remembrancer* Jan. 1853, p. 239. Tertullian's own work against Praxeas was largely indebted to Hippolytus' work against Noëtus; Noedechen *Tert. wider Praxeas* in *Jahrb. f. Prot. Theol.* xiv. 576 (1888).

² Oehler conjectured that the Appendix was the work of Victorinus (martyred 303) of Petavium, 'Adversus omnes Haereses,' mentioned by Jerome *de vir. illustr.* 74. This view has been criticized and rejected by Dr. Caspari (Plummer's Döllinger's *Hippolytus*, p. 357).

PSEUDO-TERTULLIANI

ADVERSUS OMNES HAERESSES

CAPUT I.

* * * * *

QUORUM haereticorum, ut plura praeteream, pauca perstringam. Taceo enim Iudaismi haereticos, Dositheum, inquam, Samaritanum, qui primus ausus est prophetas, quasi non in Spiritu Sancto locutos, repudiare. Taceo Sadducaeos, qui ex huius erroris radice surgentes, ausi sunt ad hanc 5 haeresim etiam resurrectionem carnis negare. Praetermitto Pharisaeos, qui additamenta quaedam legis adstruendo a Iudaeis divisi sunt; unde etiam hoc accipere ipsum quod habent nomen digni fuerunt: cum his etiam Herodianos, qui Christum Herodem esse dixerunt. Ad eos me converto, 10 qui ex evangelio haeretici esse voluerunt.

Ex quibus est primus omnium Simon Magus, qui in Actis

2. Taceo enim, &c. This opening sentence is extracted by Hieronym. *adv. Lucif.* iv. 304 (Bened.).

Dositheum. Dositheus was probably a Samaritan false Messiah. He is included in the list of heresies given by Hegesippus *apud* Euseb. *H. E.* iv. 22, and is mentioned several times by Origen *de prin.* iv. 1 ff., *contra Cels.* vi. 11, *Tract. 27 in Matth.*, *Comm. in Ioann.* iv. The sect is described *Clem. Recog.* ii. 8, *Hom.* ii. 24; Epiphan. *Haer.* 13; but see Salmon *s. v.* in *D. C. B.*

9. nomen, i. e. Pharisees = the separated. The name is derived from the Hebrew root פָּרַשׁ *separavit*.

12. Simon Magus. Simon Magus is usually regarded as the earliest Gnostic heretic, but Salmon has given reasons for doubting the correctness of the early heresiologists in identifying Simon the Samaritan heretic with the Simon of the 'Acts of the Apostles' (*D. C. B.* iv. 682 ff.). Justin Martyr is the first authority on the Simonian heresy

Apostolorum condignam meruit ab apostolo Petro iustamque sententiam. Hic ausus est summam se dicere Virtutem, id est, summum Deum; mundum autem ab angelis suis institutum; ad daemonem se errantem, qui esset Sapientia, 5 descendisse quaerendum; apud Iudaeos se in phantasmate Dei non passum, sed esse quasi passum.

Post hunc Menander discipulus ipsius, similiter magus, eadem dicens quae Simon, aequè quicquid se Simon dixerat, hoc se Menander esse dicebat, negans habere

(*Apol.* i. 16, 56, *Dial.* 120; Euseb. ii. 13), and he is followed by Irenaeus i. 16; Hippol. *Philosoph.* vi. 7, 18, 19; Tertull. *de anim.* 34; Epiphan. *Haer.* 31; Philast. 29; Theodor. *Haer. fab.* i. 1. Simon apparently adopted a current Gnostic terminology and teaching, but added the doctrine of the transmigration of souls in order to enable him to identify himself with the Supreme Power and his companion Helena with the female principle. His followers were guilty of the grossest immoralities. His Christology, like that of all the Gnostics, was Docetic. He taught that he himself had appeared as Jesus amongst the Jews.

in *Actis Apostolorum.* Acts viii. 20 f.

3. mundum ab angelis institutum. This was a common tenet of all the Gnostic teachers.

4. ad daemonem se errantem. Oehler's correction. a daemone se errante *Leid.*, *Hirsaug.*: a daemone se oberrante *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Pam.*, *Rig.*: ac daemone se oberrante *Rhen.*: ad oves aberrantes se *Rig. conj.*: ad Ennoiam se ovem errantem *Herald.*: ad daemonem secum errantem *Jun.* The 'daemon' or 'lost sheep' was Helen, Simon's first Ennoia, whom he had purchased at Tyre; *Iren.* i. 16.

Sapientia = *Σοφία* of the common Gnostic myths, here identified with the fallen Helen, to effect whose deliverance Simon had appeared.

7. Menander. A Samaritan teacher in Antioch and a pupil of Simon, our knowledge of whom is derived from Justin Martyr *Apol.* i. 26, 56, and Irenaeus i. 17: comp. Euseb. iii. 26; Tertull. *de anim.* 23. 50; *de res. carn.* 5. The Menandrianists are named in the list of Hegesippus; Euseb. iv. 22.

8. aequè. *Leid.*: ipse reliqui.

quicquid se Simon dixerat. According to Irenaeus, whose ultimate authority was no doubt Justin Martyr, Menander did not identify himself, as Simon did, with the Supreme Power, Whom he declared to be unknown to all, but asserted that he himself was sent as a Saviour for mankind; *Iren.* l. c.

posse quemquam salutem, nisi in nomine suo baptizatus fuisset.

Secutus est post haec et Saturninus, et hic similiter dicens: innascibilem Virtutem, id est Deum, in summis et illis infinitis partibus et in superioribus manere; longe 5 autem distantes ab hoc angelos inferiorem mundum fecisse: et quia splendor quidam luminis desursum in inferioribus refukisset, ad similitudinem illius luminis angelos hominem instituere curasse; hunc super terram iacuisse reptantem;

1. in nomine suo baptizatus. By this 'baptism,' which was doubtless some form of magical incantation (Justin Mart. *l. c.*), he taught that a resurrection was assured to his disciples, and that they would be preserved from death and from growing old; Iren. and Iust. *ll. cc.*

3. Saturninus. A native of the Syrian Antioch, and possibly a pupil of Menander; Iren. iii. 4, 3; Tert. *de anim.* 23. His name is variously given as Σατορνίνος (Iren., Euseb.), Σατορνείλος or Σατορνίλος (Hippol., Epiph., Theodor.). His system is described by Irenaeus (i. 18) and by Hippolytus (*Philos.* vii. 16, 28), both accounts being probably taken from Justin Martyr's 'Syntagma.' Comp. Euseb. iv. 7; Philast. 31; Epiph. *Haer.* 23; Theodor. *Haer. fab.* i. 3. He postulated One Supreme Unknown, the Father of all, from Whom issued a series of spiritual beings. Creation was the work of seven angels, who also made man, a frail creature unable to do more than wriggle on the ground like a worm until raised by the Supreme Power. The same myth as to the creation of man is attributed below (chap. 3) and in Iren. i. 28. 3 to the Ophites, in whose system however the seven sons of Sophia-Prunikos replace the seven creator angels of Saturninus. A close affinity can be traced throughout between the Irenaeian Ophites and Saturninus, the latter no doubt having evolved the original and simpler elements of the system. Saturninus' Christology was Docetic, his rule of life Encratite.

4. innascibilem. Oehler quotes Iren. i. 18 'Salvatorem autem innatum demonstravit'; Theodor. *l. c.* τὸν δὲ Σωτῆρα . . . ἀγγένητον ἔφησε καὶ ἀσώματον καὶ ἀνείδεον; but these phrases do not refer to the First Principle. Junius (rightly I think) conjectured 'innoscibilum,' quoting Iren. *l. c.* 'Saturninus . . . unum patrem incognitum omnibus ostendit.'

6. inferiorem. Rig. following conjecture of *F. Ursin.*: inferiores rel.

9. instituere curasse. The MSS. insert angelos between these two words.

cuius lumen illud et Virtutem illam superiorem propter misericordiam, scintillam salvam esse, cetera hominis perire; Christum in substantia corporis non fuisse, et phantasmate tantum quasi passum fuisse; resurrectionem carnis nullo
5 modo futuram esse.

Postea Basilides haereticus erupit. Hic esse dicit summum Deum nomine Abraxan, ex quo mentem creatam, quam Graece *νοῦν* appellat; inde Verbum: ex illo Providentiam, Virtutem et Sapientiam; ex ipsis inde principatus
10 et potestates et angelos factos, deinde infinitas angelorum editiones et probolas; ab istis angelis trecentos sexaginta quinque caelos institutos et mundum in honore Abraxae, cuius nomen hunc in se habeat numerum computatum. In ultimis quidem angelis; et qui hunc fecerunt mundum,
15 novissimum ponit Iudaeorum Deum, id est, Deum legis et

super terram, &c. Tertull. *de anim.* 23. See note above, and below chap. 3.

6. Basilides. Basilides lived about A.D. 130, and was the originator of a modified Docetism, according to which Jesus exchanged His outward form and appearance with Simon the Cyrenian who was crucified in His stead. His heretical system is described Iren. i. 19; Hippol. *Philos.* vii. 2 ff.; Epiph. *Haer.* 21. It was refuted by a powerful writer Agrippa Castor, of whom nothing more is known, Euseb. iv. 7; Theodor. *Haer. fab.* i. 4. A commentary of Basilides on the Gospels called 'Exegetica' is quoted by Clem. Alex. *Strom.* iv. 12, and Acta Archel. 55.

7. Abraxan. This form of the word appears also in the Latin translation of Irenaeus; the Greek writers invariably, and the legends on gems generally, present the truer form Ἀβραάξ. No satisfactory etymology has been suggested for it; and it was probably adopted by the Basilidians from some foreign mythology because of its numerical value (365). Abrasax was the chief of the 365 archons in the Basilidian system, the supreme power and source of being. See Hort. in *D.C.B.* s. v. ABRASAX, BASILIDES; King *Gnostics* p. 117; Harvey *Irenaeus* i. 203.

8. Providentiam. This represents the *Φρόνησιν* of Irenaeus and Hippolytus. Harvey proposes 'Prudentiam.' *Rig., Pam.* insert ex Providentia between Providentiam and Virtutem, following Iren. i. 19 'a Phronesi autem Sophiam et Dynamin.'

prophetarum ; quem Deum negat, sed angelum dicit. Huic sortito obtigisse semen Abrahae, atque ideo hunc de terra Aegypti filios Israël in terram Chanaan transtulisse. Hunc turbulentiore prae ceteris angelis, atque ideo et seditiones frequenter et bella concutere, sed et humanum sanguinem 5 fundere. Christum autem non ab hoc qui fecerit mundum, sed ab illo Abraxa missum venisse in phantasmate, sine substantia carnis fuisse ; hunc passum a Iudaeis non esse, sed vice ipsius Simonem crucifixum esse : unde nec in eum credendum esse, qui sit crucifixus, ne quis confiteatur in 10 Simonem credidisse. Martyria negat esse facienda. Carnis resurrectionem graviter impugnat, negans salutem corporibus repromissam.

Alter haereticus Nicolaus emersit. Hic de septem diaconis, qui in Actis Apostolorum allecti sunt, fuit. Hic 15 dicit tenebras in concupiscentia luminis, et quidem foeda et obscena fuisse : ex hac permixtione pudor est dicere quae fetida et immunda sint. Sunt et cetera obscena. Aeones enim refert quosdam turpitudinis natos, et complexus et permixtiones execrabiles, obscenosque coniunctus, et quaedam 20 ex ipsis adhuc turpiora. Natos praeterea daemones et deos et spiritus septem et alia satis sacrilega pariter et foeda, quae referre erubescimus, et iam praeterimus. Satis est

9. **Simonem.** Cyrenaeum. Comp. Epiphan. *Haer.* 24 Οὐχὶ Ἰησοῦν φάσκων πεπονηθέναι ἀλλὰ Σίμωνα τὸν Κυρηναῖον· καὶ φησιν ἐκεῖνον, ἐν τῷ βαστάζειν τὸν σταυρόν, μεταμεμορφωκέναι εἰς τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ εἶδος, καὶ ἑαυτὸν εἰς τὸν Σίμωνα· ἐκείνου δὲ σταυρωμένου, ἐστήκει κατάντικρυς ἀόρατος ὁ Ἰησοῦς, καταγελῶν τῶν τὸν Σίμωνα σταυρῶντων.

11. **Martyria, &c.** This was a common tenet of the antinomian Gnostics ; comp. Iren. iii. 19. 4 writing of the Docetists ‘ad tantam temeritatem progressi sunt quidam ut etiam martyres spernant, et vituperant eos qui propter Domini confessionem occiduntur.’

14. **Nicolaus.** See note *de praeser. haer.* 33.

18. **Aeones.** Rigalt’s emendation of the MSS. Omnes or Homines. Comp. Epiphan. *Haer.* 25.

20. **obscenosque coniunctus.** The MSS. present the reading *obscenasque conjunctas*, which is explained by Rigalt, but not justified, as = *coniunctiones*.

nobis quod totam istam haeresim Nicolaitarum Apocalypsis Domini gravissima sententiae auctoritate damnavit, dicendo : Quia hoc tenes, odisti doctrinam Nicolaitarum, quam et ego odi.

CAPUT II.

ACCESSERUNT his haeretici etiam illi, qui Ophitae nuncupantur. Nam serpentem magnificent in tantum, ut illum etiam ipsi Christo praeferant. Ipse enim, inquiunt, scientiae nobis boni et mali originem dedit. Huius animadvertens potentiam et maiestatem Moyses, inquiunt, aereum posuit serpentem : et quicumque ipsum adspexerunt, sanitate consecuti sunt. Ipse, aiunt praeterea, Christus in evangelio suo imitatur serpentis ipsius sacram potestatem, dicendo : Et sicut Moyses exaltavit serpentem in deserto, ita

1. Apocalypsis. Rev. ii. 6.

CHAP. II.—4. *Ophitae*. The account here given of the Ophites agrees more or less closely with the unnamed system described by Irenaeus i. 28, and which Theodor. *Haer. fab.* i. 14 calls indiscriminately Sethiani, Ophiani, Ophites. It has but little in common with Hippolytus' account of the Naassenes or Serpentarians (*Philos.* v. 1 ff.). Serpent worship had a place amongst Phoenician and Aegyptian rites, and was doubtless suggested from these to certain Gnostic sects to whom it would be especially commended by the mention of the serpent in the O.T. account of the Fall. From the Gnostic point of view the serpent, as the enemy of the Demiurge or Creator of (evil) matter, was the friend of mankind; and was sometimes identified with Nous, sometimes with Sophia, and even (by the Naassenes) with the Logos (Iren. i. 28, 3, 8). The Ophite system was an extraordinary mixture of Zoroastrianism, Gnosticism, and Christianity, and was largely indebted to Old Testament terms and ideas. It postulated a triplicity in the Supreme Principle—Light (Pater omnium, Primus Homo), Ennoia (Filius Hominis, Secundus Homo), Spirit (Prima Femina). From the Spirit was generated a third male, Christ, and a bisexual Sophia-Prunikos who fell into the world of matter, and was eventually, through her seven sons, the cause of the creation. Such is the commencement of the Irenaeian account; for a comparison of it with the Hippolytean Naassenes see Salmon *D. C. B.* iv. 80 ff.

7. boni et mali. Gen. iii. 1 ff.

8. aereum serpentem. Numb. xxi. 4 ff.

12. Et sicut Moyses. S. John iii. 14.

exaltari oportet Filium hominis. Ipsum introducunt ad benedicenda eucharistia sua. Sed tota istius erroris et scena et doctrina inde fluxit. Dicunt enim de illo summo primario Aeone complures alios Aeones exstitisse inferiores; omnibus tamen istis Aeonem antestare, cuius sit nomen Ialdabaoth. 5 Hunc autem conceptum esse ex altero Aeone Aeonibus inferioribus permixto; seque postea cum in superiora voluisset eniti, gravitate materiae permixta sibi, non potuisse ad superiora pervenire, in medietate relictum, extendisse se totum, effecisse sic caelum. Ialdabaoth tamen inferius 10 descendisse et fecisse sibi filios septem: quem occlusisse superiora dilatatione, ut, quia angeli quae superiora essent scire non possent, ipsum solum Deum putarent. Virtutes igitur illas et angelos inferiores hominem fecisse, et quia ab infirmioribus et mediocribus virtutibus institutus esset, 15 quasi vermem iacuisse reptantem: illum vero Aeonem, ex quo Ialdabaoth processisset, invidia commotum, scintillam quandam iacenti homini immisisse, qua excitatus per prudentiam saperet et intellegere posset superiora. Sic rursum Ialdabaoth istum in indignationem conversum ex semetipso 20

2. eucharistia = εὐχαριστεῖα. This is the reading of *Leid.*, *Divion.*, *Rhen.*, *Gang.*, *Gel.*, *Rig.*: eucharistica *Pam.* This revolting practice of allowing tame serpents to crawl over and sanctify the eucharistic bread is described by Epiph. *Haer.* 37; comp. Augustin. *Haer.* 17.

3. inde, 'from the following sources.'

5. Ialdabaoth, i. e. perhaps יְהוֹאֵל־בְּרֵהוּת, *Dominus Deus patrum*; or יְלֵדָא בְּרַהוּת, *son of Chaos*; see Harvey *Irenaeus* i. 230, where other suggested etymologies are given. Ialdabaoth was the son born to Sophia from her contact with the waters; and from him came six successive generations of sons. In his distress at their revolt from him he produced another son Ophiomorphus, the serpent-shaped Nous; see below.

7. seque, quae *Leid.*: quem seems to be required.

11. filios septem. This is an error perhaps of the epitomator. The sons of Ialdabaoth were six in number and named as follows—Iao, Sabaoth, Adoneus, Eloeus, Oreus, Astaphaeus. These with Ialdabaoth formed the Hebdomad who ruled the seven heavens, and created man.

16. quasi vermem, see note on Saturninus ch. 1.

edidisse virtutem et similitudinem serpentis, et hanc fuisse virtutem in paradiso, id est, istum fuisse serpentem, cui Eva quasi filio Dei crediderat. Decerpsit, inquit, de fructu arboris, atque ideo generi humano scientiam bonorum et
 5 malorum contribuit. Christum autem non in substantia carnis fuisse; salutem carnis sperandam omnino non esse.

Necnon etiam erupit alia quoque haeresis, quae dicitur Cainaeorum. Et ipsi enim magnificant Cain, quasi ex quadam potenti Virtute conceptum, quae operata sit in ipso.
 10 Nam Abel ex inferiore Virtute conceptum, procreatum, et ideo inferiorem repertum. Hi qui hoc adserunt, etiam Iudam proditorem defendunt, admirabilem illum et magnum esse memorantes propter utilitates, quas humano generi contulisse iactatur. Quidam enim ipsorum gratiarum
 15 actionem Iudae propter hanc caussam reddendam putant. Animadvertens enim, inquit, Iudas, quod Christus vellet veritatem subvertere, tradidit illum, ne subverti veritas posset. Et alii sic contra disputant et dicunt: Quia potestates huius mundi volebant pati Christum, ne humano generi
 20 per mortem ipsius salus pareretur, saluti consulens generis humani, tradidit Christum, ut salus, quae impediabatur per virtutes, quae obsistebant ne pateretur Christus, impediri omnino non posset, et ideo per passionem Christi non posset salus humani generis retardari.

25 Sed et illa haeresis processit, quae dicitur Sethoitarum. Huius perversitatis doctrina haec est: Duos homines ab angelis constitutos, Cain et Abel; propter hos magnas inter angelos contentiones et discordias exstitisse, ob hanc caussam

1. similitudinem serpentis. Comp. Iren. i. 28. 3 ὁφείδμορφον.

8. Cainaeorum, see note de praescr. haer. 33. Chaldaeorum is the reading of *Leid.*, *Rhen.*

25. Sethoitarum. The Sethoites or Sethians are not mentioned by Irenaeus, and the sect so-named, Σεθιανοί, in Hippolytus (*Philos.* v. 21), differs in many respects from the one here described. Epiphanius gives an account of them, substantially the same as Pseudo-Tertullian; comp. *Philast.* 3. See Salmon *D. C. B.* iv. 87.

illam virtutem, quae super omnes virtutes esset, quam matrem pronuntiant, dum Abel interfectum dicerent, voluisse concipi et nasci hunc Seth loco Abelis, ut evacuarentur angeli illi, qui duos priores illos homines condidissent, dum hoc semen mundum oritur et nascitur. Permixtiones enim 5 dicunt angelorum et hominum iniquas fuisse: ob quam causam illam virtutem, quam, sicut diximus, pronuntiant matrem, ad vindictam etiam cataclysmum inducere, ut et illud permixtionis semen tolleretur, et hoc solum semen, quod esset purum, integrum custodiretur. Sed enim illos, 10 qui seminis illos prioris instituissent, occulte et latenter, et ignorante illa matre virtute, cum illis octo animabus in arcam misisse, etiam semen Cham, quo semen malitiae non periret, sed cum ceteris conservatum et post cataclysmum terris redditum exemplo ceterorum excresceret et effun- 15 deretur et totum orbem et impleret et occuparet. De Christo autem sic sentiunt, ut dicant illum tantummodo Seth et pro ipso Seth ipsum fuisse.

CAPUT III.

CARPOCRATES praeterea hanc tulit sectam. Unam esse

2. dicerent. Routh acutely suggested 'disceret' quoting Epiph. *l. c.* γνοῦσα ὅτι ἀπέκτανται Ἄβελ, &c.

3. evacuarentur: 'Hoc est viribus privarentur vel superarentur' (Oehl.). *Evacuare* is found in Tertullian in the sense of *infirmare*, *abolere*, *de pat.* 12; *de monog.* 7, 13; *de res. carn.* 24, 51; *adv. Marc.* v. 7, 11; and in Irenaeus v. 21, 22, 24. In the Cod. Iustinian. it is used of 'cancelling' an obligation, viii. 43. 4; comp. Vulg. 1 Cor. i. 17.

6. iniquas, inaequales, impares. Routh suggested 'impias.'

13. Cham. *Rhen., Rig., Oehl.*: *Chain Leid.*: *Cain rel.* Comp. Epiph. *l. c.* εἰσέδυσαν τὸν Χάμ εἰς τὴν κίβωτον ὄντα τοῦ αὐτῶν σπέρματος.

18. ipsum. Christum.

CHAP. III.—18. Carpocrates. Carpocrates was a Platonist of Alexandria in the reign of Hadrian, and his followers were the first to call themselves Gnostics; *Iren.* i. 20. He maintained the Unity of the First Principle, from Whom issued a series of spiritual beings, the lowest

dicit Virtutem in superioribus principalem; ex hac prolato
angelos atque Virtutes, quos distantes longe a superioribus
Virtutibus mundum istum in inferioribus partibus condi-
disse; Christum non ex virgine Maria natum, sed ex semine
5 Ioseph, hominem tantummodo genitum, sane prae ceteris
iustitiae cultu, vitae integritate meliorem; hunc apud
Iudaeos passum, solam animam ipsius caelo receptam, eo
quod et firmior et robustior ceteris fuerit; ex quo colligeret,
retentata animarum sola salute, nullas corporis resurrec-
10 tiones.

Post hunc Cerinthus haereticus erupit, similia docens.
Nam et ipse mundum institutum esse ab illis dicit; Christum
ex semine Ioseph natum proponit, hominem illum tantum-
modo sine divinitate contendens, ipsam quoque legem ab

of whom formed the world and man. Man's object was to overcome by magical arts the spiritual rulers of this world, and so to regain the Father of all. The Carpocratians thus laid great stress on magic, held the transmigration of souls, and the final salvation of the souls of all. They used secret marks, and inasmuch as all actions were regarded as indifferent, the immorality of the sect became proverbial, and probably afforded a foundation for many of the infamous charges brought against the Christians by the heathen (see note *Apol.* 7). Carpocrates' Christology was purely Psilanthropic. The authorities upon the sect are *Iren.* i. 20, ii. 48 f.; *Hippol.* vii. 20; *Clem. Alex. Strom.* iii. 2; *Tertull. de anim.* 23, 35.

9. retentata. Oehl.: tentatam *Leid.*: tentata Edd.

11. Cerinthus. Cerinthus, an Aegyptian by race, lived at the close of the Apostolic age, and is said by Irenaeus on the authority of Polycarp (*Iren.* iii. 3. 4) to have personally encountered S. John at Ephesus. The distinctive characteristic of his Docetism was the separation of the man Jesus from the divine Christ, Who (he taught) descended on Jesus at his baptism and left him before the crucifixion. Unlike other Gnostics he admitted the resurrection of the human body of Jesus. His views on creation and the First Principle resemble those of Menander. *Iren.* i. 21; *Hippol.* vii. 33, x. 17; Caius *apud* Euseb. iii. 25; Dionysius *apud* Euseb. vii. 25; Theodor. *Haer. fab.* ii. 3; Epiph. *Haer.* 28.

12. ab illis, sc. angelis: probably 'angelis' should be read instead of 'illis.'

14. legem ab angelis. Comp. *Acts* vii. 53; *Gal.* iii. 19; *Heb.* ii. 2; *Deut.* xxxiii. 2; *Ps.* lxviii. 17.

angelis datam perhibens, Iudaeorum Deum non Dominum, sed angelum promens.

Huius successor Ebion fuit, Cerintho non in omni parte consentiens, quod a Deo dicat mundum, non ab angelis factum; et quia scriptum sit: Nemo discipulus super 5 magistrum, nec servus super dominum, legem etiam proponit, scilicet ad excludendum evangelium et vindicandum Iudaismum.

CAPUT IV.

VALENTINUS autem haereticus multas introduxit fabulas: has ego circumcidens breviter expediam. Introducit enim 10 Pleroma et Aeonas triginta; exponit autem hos per syzygias, id est, coniugationes quasdam. Nam dicit in primis esse Bython et Silentium, ex his processisse Mentem et Veritatem; ex quibus erupisse Verbum et Vitam, de quibus rursum creatum Hominem et Ecclesiam. Sed enim ex his 15 quoque processisse duodecim Aeonas; de Sermone autem et Vita Aeonas alios decem. Hanc esse Aeonum triacontada, quae fit in Pleromate ex ogdoade et decade ac duodecade. Tricesimum autem Aeonem Bython illum videre voluisse, et ad videndum illum ausum esse in superiora conscendere; et 20 quoniam ad magnitudinem ipsius videndam capax non fuit, in defectione fuisse et paene dissolutum esse, nisi qui missus ad constabiliendum illum ille quem appellant Horon, con-

3. Ebion. See notes *de praescr. haer.* 33.

5. scriptum sit. S. Matt. x. 24; S. Luke vi. 40; S. John xiii. 16.

9. Valentinus. See *de praescr. haer.* 7, 30, 33.

10. circumcidens. *Leid., Rhen. (marg.), Routh, Oehl.*: circumdicens *Rhen.*: circumducens *rel.*

13. Silentium. Sigé had a place in nearly all the Gnostic systems. even in Simon's; Greg. Naz. *Orat.* xxv. S. 1; and Hippolytus (*Philos.* vi. 21) states that Valentinus' system was founded on that of Simon.

processisse Mentem. The MSS. present processisse semen mentem by repetition of the last two letters of the first word and the first three of the second.

firmasset illum dicto Iao pronuntiato. Istum autem Aeonem in defectionem factum Achamoth dicit in passionibus desiderii quibusdam fuisse, et ex passionibus materias edidisse. Expavit enim, inquit, et extimuit, et contristatus
 5 est, et ex his passionibus concepit et edidit. Hinc fecit caelum et terram et mare et omnia quaecumque sunt in eis, ob quam caussam omnia infirma esse et fragilia et caduca et mortalia, quaecumque sunt ab ipso facta; quoniam quidem ipse fuerit de deceptione conceptus atque prolatus; hunc
 10 tamen instituisse istum mundum ex his materiis, quas

1. Iao. This mystic word is either an attempt to represent the sound of the Ineffable Name יהוה , or more probably is a symbolic combination of the initial letter of the Greek form of the tetragrammaton with the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet, signifying 'Eternal Existence.' But see King's *Gnostics* p. 319; Harvey *Irenaeus* i. 33; and especially Driver in *Studia Biblica* i. 7 ff. 'Iáo was undoubtedly the name by which the God of the Jews was known to some of the ancient Greek writers; Diodor. Sic. i. 94 *παρὰ δὲ τοῖς Ἰουδαίοις Μωσῆν τὸν Ἰάω ἐπικαλουμένον θεόν*; and it appears in several of the Gnostic schemes (see note ch. 2; Iren. i. 1. 7, 28, 3; Tertull. *adv. Val.* 10, 14; Epiph. *Haer.* 34. The name is associated in engravings with Horus, the Aegyptian God of Spring, as well as with the Abrasax figure (King *u.s.* Plate C), a fact which illustrates the extraordinary syncretism of the Gnostic systems.

pronuntiato. *Oehl.*: hoc pronuntiatio appellat. *Rig., Routh*: hoc pronuntiat Io Apelles. *Migne.*

2. Achamoth. There is considerable confusion in the account here given. The thirtieth Aeon was a female, the higher Sophia, and was the parent of Achamoth or Enthymesis, the lower Sophia, from whose emotions the universe was derived; see note *de praescr. haer.* 7. Lipsius in *D.C.B.* iv. 1084.

9. deceptione. *Leid., Rhen.* This word must represent *ἀπορία* of Iren. i. 1. 7. *Oehler* corrects into 'defectione' or 'desperatione': other editions print 'aporiatiōe.'

hunc tamen, &c. The abruptness of this change of construction is not unparalleled (see note on *seque* ch. 2), but it points to a careless transcription or still more careless translation. It may be, however, that the sources from which the original Greek of Hippolytus was compiled were not harmonized or consecutively adjusted. If, as seems to be the case, Hippolytus' work was a transcription of notes taken at

Achamoth vel pavendo, vel timendo, vel contristando, vel sudando praestiterat. Nam ex pavore, inquit, tenebrae factae sunt; ex timore et ignorantia spiritus nequitiae et malignitatis; ex tristitia et lacrimis humida fontium, fluminum materia marisque. Christum autem missum ab illo propatore, qui est Bythos. Hunc autem in substantia corporis nostri non fuisse, sed spiritale nescio quod corpus de caelo deferentem, quasi aquam per fistulam, sic per Mariam virginem transmeasse, nihil inde vel accipientem vel mutuante. Resurrectionem huius carnis negat, sed alterius. Legis et prophetarum quaedam probat, quaedam improbat: id est, omnia improbat, dum quaedam reprobat. Evangelium habet etiam suum praeter haec nostra.

Post hunc exstiterunt Ptolemaeus et Secundus haeretici,

Irenaeus' lectures, which were themselves based upon Justin Martyr's 'Syntagma' and another work on heresiology, some confusion is not altogether surprising.

7. corpus de caelo. The artificial Christology of Valentinus allowed to Jesus Christ a visible and passible, but not a material, body. His body (it was held) was not of the Virgin's substance, but was conveyed through her (see next note). This quasi-Docetic view was reproduced later in Apollinarianism and Monophysitism, and was revived in the sixteenth century by the mystical Anabaptists; see Bright *Serm. S. Leo*, note 24. Marcion held a view of Christ's Body very similar to this according to Athanasius *contr. Apollin.* i. 12, ii. 3, comp. note *de praescr. haer.* 33.

8. aquam per fistulam. Iren. iii. 16 'Iesus qui per Mariam transierit'; Epiph. *Haer.* 31; Philast. 38; Augustin. *Haer.* 11.

10. sed alterius. Legis. So all the MSS.: sed non alterius. Legis *Lat.*: sed alterius, legis *Iun., Routh.*: sed alterius legis. *Oehl.* Valentinus believed in the resurrection of the *σῶμα πνευματικόν*, Epiph. *l.c.* Tertull. *adv. Val.* 27. The omission of 'probat' or some such antithetic verb to 'negat' is an instance of zeugma common enough in condensed writers; cp. Tacit. *Ann.* ii. 20; 1 Tim. iv. 3.

14. Ptolemaeus. Ptolemaeus is described by Irenaeus (i. *praef.*) as ἀπάνθισμα τῆς Οὐαλετίνου σχολῆς, 'flosculum Valentini scholae,' and as still living at the head of his following. Hippolytus (vi. 35) couples him with Heracleon, as leaders of the Italic School of Valentinians, i.e. they attributed to our Lord a *σῶμα ψυχικόν*, and not a *σῶμα*

qui cum Valentino per omnia consentiunt. In illo solo differunt: nam cum Valentinus Aeonas tantum triginta fuisset, isti addiderunt alios complures; quatuor enim primum, deinde alios quatuor adgregaverunt. Et quod dicit
 5 Valentinus Aeonem trigesimum excessisse de pleromate, ut in defectionem, negant isti: non enim ex illa triacontade fuisse hunc, qui fuerit in defectionem propter desiderium videndi propatoris.

Exstitit praeterea Heracleon alter haereticus, qui cum

πνευματικόν. All that is known of him is derived from Irenaeus i. 1. 18, 6. 1, and an independent notice in Tertull. *adv. Val.* 4. Comp. Philast. 39, Epiph. *Haer.* 33. His characteristic tenet was the independent personal subsistence, outside the Deity, of the Aeons of Valentinus. Some notion of his teaching may be gathered from the two fragments of his writing preserved in Iren. i. 1. 18 (in which he deduces teaching on the Ogdoad from the prologue to S. John's Gospel) and in Epiphanius. *l. c.* (a letter of Ptolemaeus to Flora on the origin of the Mosaic Law).

Secundus. Secundus is the first of the Valentinian Gnostics described by Irenaeus (i. 5. 2), who is followed by Tertullian (*adv. Val.* 38), Hippolytus (vi. 38), and Epiphanius (*Haer.* 32): cp. Philast. 40; Augustin. *Haer.* 12. He divided the Valentinian Ogdoad into two Tetrads, a right and a left, calling the masculine Aeons Light, and the feminine Darkness, thus approximating in terminology more closely than Valentinus to Oriental dualism.

3. *isti addiderunt.* This is a misunderstanding on the part of the author. Neither Ptolemaeus nor Secundus, whom he here couples together, made any addition to the number of the Valentinian Aeons: the peculiarity of Secundus' teaching lay in the grouping of them.

6. *negant isti.* This exclusion of the Sophia, whose emotions gave birth to the material world, from the Thirty Aeons, is ascribed to Secundus, but not to Ptolemaeus, by the authorities cited above.

9. **Heracleon.** Heracleon was another pupil of Valentinus; Origen *Comm. in Ioann.* ii. 8. His system was more truly philosophical than the Valentinian, betraying certain Pythagorean elements, and commencing with a Monad in place of Valentinus' Duad. He attempted to use its details in his interpretations, often wildly allegorical, of the Gospels in his *ὑπομνήματα* or 'Commentaries' (Orig. *u. s.* vi. 8). Fragments of these are embedded in Origen's *Commentaries on S. John*; Clement of Alexandria's *Stromata* iv. 9 *Eclog. Proph.* 25; and Photius *Epist.* 134. They have been edited,

Valentino paria sentit, sed novitate quadam pronuntiationis vult videri alia sentire. Introducit enim in primis illud fuisse quod pronuntiat, et deinde ex illa monade duo, ac deinde reliquos Aeonas; deinde introducit totum Valentinum.

5

CAPUT V.

Non defuerunt post hos Marcus quidam et Colarbasus novam haeresim ex Graecorum alphabeto componentes. Negant enim veritatem sine istis posse litteris inveniri; immo totam plenitudinem et perfectionem veritatis in istis litteris esse dispositam. Propter hanc enim caussam 10

with a discussion of the position and date of Heracleon, in the Cambridge *Texts and Studies* i. 4. Comp. Epiph. *Haer.* 36; Tert. *adv. Val.* 4, 8; Augustin. *Haer.* 16; Iren. ii. 3. 2.

3. quod pronuntiat. Some word seems to be wanted, perhaps 'Monadem.' Routh suggested 'Dominum,' citing Philast. 41 'Post Secundum Heracleon surrexit dicens Principium esse unum quem Dominum appellat.' See also Lipsius *Quellenkr. des Epiph.* p. 170.

CHAP. V.—6. Marcus. The Marcosians were a Valentinian sect noted for their pronounced use of magical incantations, and arithmetical mysticism, deduced from the numerical value of the letters of the alphabet, by which they designated the Valentinian Aeons. The puerilities of Marcus' system, and his gross charlatanism with a view to gaining an immoral ascendancy over women, are fully described by Irenaeus i. 7 ff., who is followed by Hippol. vi. 39; Epiph. *Haer.* 34. Marcus seems to have lived in Asia Minor as a contemporary of Irenaeus, but his teaching was rife also in the neighbourhood of Lyon (Iren. *l. c.*).

Colarbasus. It is most probable that this name has arisen from a misunderstanding of an obscure and possibly corrupt passage in Irenaeus i. 8 Οὗτος οὖν ὁ Μαρκὸς μήτραν καὶ ἐκδοχείον τῆς Κολαρβάσου Σιγῆς: and that no heretic so named ever existed. Hippolytus gives no information about him distinct from Marcus (*Philos.* vi. 1; iv. 13); and Philaster treats the teaching of the two heretics as identical (*Haer.* 43); while the statements of Epiphanius (*Haer.* 35) and Theodore (t *Haer. fab.* i. 12) are worthless. The word very possibly represents the Hebrew קוֹל ארבע, *The Voice of Four*, i. e. of the Divine Tetrad which revealed to Marcus the mysteries of Sigé. See Hort. *D. C. B.* i. 594 f.; Harvey, *Irenaeus* i. 127.

Christum dixisse: Ego sum A et Ω. Denique *in* Iesum Christum descendisse, id est, columbam in Iesum venisse, quae Graeco nomine cum *περιστερὰ* pronuntietur, habere secundum numerum DCCCL. Percurrunt isti Ω, Ψ, X, Φ, Υ, T, 5 totum usque ad A, B, et computant ogloadas et decadas; ita afferre illorum omnes vanitates et ineptum sit et otiosum. Quod tamen non tantum iam vanum, sed etiam periculosum sit: alterum deum fingunt praeter Creatorem; Christum in substantia negant carnis fuisse; negant carnis resurrectionem 10 futuram.

CAPUT VI.

ACCEDIT his Cerdon quidam. Hic introducit initia duo, id est duos deos, unum bonum et alterum saevum, bonum superiorem, saevum hunc mundi creatorem. Hic prophetias et legem repudiat. Deo creatori renuntiat, superioris Dei 15 Filium Christum venisse tractat, hunc in substantia carnis negat, in phantasmate solo fuisse pronuntiat; nec omnino passum, sed quasi passum; nec ex virgine natum, sed omnino nec natum; resurrectionem animae tantummodo probat, corporis negat. Solum evangelium Lucae, nec tamen 20 totum recipit: apostoli Pauli neque omnes neque totas

1. Ego sum A et Ω. Rev. i. 7, xxi. 6, xxii. 13.

in Iesum. The addition of *in* seems to be required, as Semler first pointed out.

4. secundum. So the MSS. *Scaliger* proposed *secum* hunc: *Oehl.* prints *secum*; but no alteration is necessary.

CHAP. VI.—II. Cerdon. Cerdon was a native of Syria who went to Rome in the episcopate of Hyginus, A. D. 137-141, and there, after several lapses and reconciliations, separated from the Church. He is known chiefly through his having been the teacher of Marcion; and their fundamental tenets seem to have been identical. Iren. i. 24, iii. 4. 2; Hippol. *Philos.* x. 15; Epiph. *Haer.* 41; Philast. 44.

19. Solum evangelium Lucae. The author here seems to have transferred to Cerdon statements which in the original referred to Marcion; see *de praescr. haer.* 38.

epistulas sumit. Acta Apostolorum et Apocalypsin quasi falsa reicit.

Post hunc discipulus ipsius emersit Marcion quidam nomine, Ponticus genere, episcopi filius, propter stuprum cuiusdam virginis ab ecclesiae communicatione abiectus. 5 Hic ex occasione qua dictum sit: Omnis arbor bona bonos fructus facit, mala autem malos, haeresim Cerdonis approbare conatus est, *ut* eadem diceret quae ille superior haereticus ante dixerat.

Exstitit post hunc Lucanus quidam nomine, Marcionis 10 sectator atque discipulus: et hic per eadem vadens blasphemiae genera, eadem docet quae Marcion et Cerdon docuerant.

Post hos subsequitur Apelles, discipulus Marcionis, qui

3. **Marcion.** Marcion's heresy was free from pagan elements, being purely a perversion of Judaism and Christianity, between which (he maintained) there existed an irreconcilable antagonism. He rejected the Old Testament, and accepted only S. Luke's Gospel and ten of S. Paul's Epistles, all of which he mutilated. He held two *ἀρχαί* or ruling powers, the Supreme God of pure benevolence, and the Creator, or God of the Jews, whose character was 'just' or 'severe.' The Gnosticism which he imbibed from Cerdon naturally led him into a quasi-Manichaeism with regard to matter, and into a Docetic Christology (see note *de praescr. haer.* 33); while his characteristic hatred of Judaism made him an extreme Paulinist and opponent of S. Peter. Justin Martyr wrote against him in a work now lost; Euseb. *H. E.* iv. 11. 18; Iren. iv. 11. 2, v. 26. 3; Phot. *Cod.* 125. Marcion himself wrote a work called 'Antitheses,' or instances of opposition between the Law and the Gospel. His system is fully set out and refuted in Tertullian's five books 'Adversus Marcionem': see also *de praescr. haer.* 7, 30, 33, 34; Iren. i. 25.

4. **stuprum.** This libel is repeated Epiph. *Haer.* 41; but the purity of Marcion's life is unimpeachable; see the notes *de praescr. haer.* 30.

6. **Omnis arbor.** S. Matt. vii. 17.

8. *ut eadem diceret*: eadem diceret *Leül.* (which demands *ut*): eadem dicere *Rhen., Gang., Gel., Pam., Rig.* (which requires *et*).

10. **Lucanus.** See note *de praescr. haer.* 7.

14. **Apelles.** See notes *de praescr. haer.* 6, 30.

posteaquam in carnem suam lapsus est, a Marcione segregatus est. Hic introducit unum Deum infinitis superioribus partibus. Hunc potestates multas angelosque fecisse; propterea et aliam Virtutem, quam dici Dominum dicit, sed
 5 angelum ponit. Hoc vult videri mundum institutum ad imitationem mundi superioris, cui mundo permiscuisse paenitentiam; quia non illum tam perfecte fecisset quam ille superior mundus institutus fuisset. Legem et prophetas repudiat; Christum neque in phantasmate dicit fuisse, sicut
 10 Marcion, neque in substantia veri corporis, ut evangelium docet, sed ideo quod e superioribus partibus descenderet, ipso descensu sideream sibi carnem et aëream contexuisse; hunc in resurrectione singulis quibusque elementis, quae in descensu suo mutuata fuissent, in ascensu reddidisse, et sic
 15 dispersis quibusque corporis sui partibus, in caelo spiritum tantum reddidisse. Hic carnis resurrectionem negat. Solo utitur et apostolo, sed Marcionis, id est non toto. Animarum solarum dicit salutem. Habet praeterea privatas, sed extraordinarias lectiones suas, quas appellat Phaneroseis,
 20 Philumenes cuiusdam puellae, quam quasi prophetissam sequitur. Habet praeterea suos libros, quos inscripsit Syllogismorum, in quibus probare vult quod omnia quae-

9. Christum, &c. Apelles' Docetism resembled Marcion's in denying the birth of Christ's body, but differed in allowing Him a solid body of flesh for temporary use derived from the elements; Tertull. *de carn. Chr.* 6 'solidum Christi corpus sed sine nativitate [praedicavit] . . . De sideribus et de substantiis superioris mundi mutuatus est carnem.' Hippol. *Philos.* vii. 38 τοῦτον δὲ οὐκ ἐκ παρθένου γεγενῆσθαι, οὐδὲ ἄσαρκον εἶναι φανέντα λέγει, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῆς τοῦ πάντος οὐσίας μεταλαμβάνοντα μερῶν, σῶμα πεποιηκέναι, τουτέστι θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ὑγροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ σώματι λαβόντα τὰς κοσμικὰς ἐξουσίας, βεβιωκέναι ὃν ἐβίωσε χρόνον ἐν κόσμῳ.

16. Solo . . . apostolo. S. Paul.

19. Phaneroseis. These 'Manifestations' appear to be the work, referred to by Tertullian *de praescr. haer.* 30, which was inspired by Philumena. 'Lectiones' will then probably mean public readings in his schismatic assemblies.

22. Syllogismorum. These books of 'Reasonings' are mentioned

cumque Moyses de Deo scripserit vera non sint, sed falsa sint.

CAPUT VII.

Hrs haereticis omnibus accedit Tatianus quidam alter haereticus. Hic Iustini Martyris discipulus fuit, post hunc diversa sentire coepit. Totus enim secundum Valentinum 5 sapit, adiciens illud, Adam nec salutem consequi posse, quasi non, si rami salvi fiunt, et radix salva sit.

Accesserunt alii haeretici, qui dicuntur Secundum Phrygas, sed horum non una doctrina est. Sunt enim qui Kata Proclum dicuntur, sunt alii qui Secundum Aeschinem 10 pronuntiantur. Hi habent aliam communem blasphemiam,

by Hippolytus (x. 16) and Eusebius (v. 13), and cited by Ambrose (*de Parad.* v. 28), probably following Origen *Comm. in Gen.* ii. 2.

CHAP. VIII.—3. **Tatianus.** An Assyrian, born cir. A.D. 110. Having become a convert to Christianity, he attached himself to Justin Martyr in Rome, and continued orthodox during Justin's lifetime. Subsequently he developed strange views savouring of Gnosticism and Encratism, the germs of which are discernible even in his orthodox 'Oratio' (see Fuller in *D. C. B.* iv. 803). Irenaeus i. 26 expressly states Tatian's indebtedness to Valentinus as regards his system of Aeons, and to Marcion and Saturninus for his ascetic teaching; the non-salvability of Adam being Tatian's own peculiar invention. Comp. Iren. iii. 37; Hippol. *Philos.* viii. 16; Euseb. *H. E.* iv. 29; Epiph. *Haer.* 46; Rhodon *apud* Euseb. v. 13.

8. **Secundum Phrygas.** A soloecism for the Phrygians (Cata-phrygians) or Montanists, who are here represented as being divided on the Patripassian question into two parties, the followers of Proclus, and the followers of Aeschines. Hippolytus (*Philos.* viii. 19) also mentions this schism. On Montanus and his heresy see Salmon in *D. C. B.* iii. 935 ff., and the references there given.

10. **Proclum.** Proclus is best known as the Montanist opponent of Caius in a public disputation at Rome, the published record of which, by Caius, is mentioned Euseb. *H. E.* ii. 25, iii. 28, 31, vi. 20: comp. Hieron. *de vir. illustr.* 59; Theodor. *Haer. fab.* ii. 3, iii. 2. The Proculus mentioned by Tertullian, *adv. Val.* 5, is no doubt the same person: comp. Pacian, *Epist.* 1 *ad Sympr.* See Lightfoot *Clem. Rom.* ii. 380.

aliam blasphemiam non communem, sed peculiarem et suam :
 et communem quidem illam, qua in apostolis quidem dicant
 Spiritum Sanctum fuisse, Paracletum non fuisse, et qua
 dicant Paracletum plura in Montano dixisse quam Christum
 5 in evangelium protulisse, nec tantum plura, sed etiam meliora
 atque maiora. Privatam autem blasphemiam illi, qui sunt
 Kata Aeschinem hanc habent qua adiciunt etiam hoc, ut
 dicant Christum ipsum esse Filium et Patrem.

CAPUT VIII.

EST praeterea his omnibus etiam Blastus accedens, qui
 10 latenter Iudaismum vult introducere. Pascha enim dicit
 non aliter custodiendum esse, nisi secundum legem
 Moysi XIV. mensis. Quis autem nesciat, quoniam evangelica
 gratia evacuatur, si ad legem Christum redigit?

Accedit his Theodotus haereticus Byzantius : qui postea-
 15 quam Christum, pro nomine adprehensus, negavit, in

3. Paracletum non fuisse. Comp. Iren. iii. 11. 12, where he explains the Montanist rejection of S. John's Gospel as due to its containing the promise of the Paracle'te to the Apostles, and therefore traversing Montanus' exclusive claim to His inspiration.

CHAP. VIII.—9. Blastus. It appears from Pacian. *Epist. 1 ad Sympr.* that Blastus the Greek was a Montanist as well a Quartadeciman. He lived probably in the episcopate of Victor, A. D. 189-198. Irenaeus addressed to him an Epistle 'On Schism,' now lost; Euseb. *H. E.* v. 13. 20.

13. evacuatur. See note ch. 2.

14. Theodotus. A leather-cutter of Byzantium, who denied his faith during a persecution in his native city, fled to Rome, and was excommunicated during the episcopate of Victor for teaching psilanthropic views of the Christ, whom he distinguished from Jesus. Hippolytus *Philos.* vii. 35; *Little Labyr. apud* Euseb. v. 28; Epiphan. *Haer.* 54.

15. Christum. *Leid., Hirsaug., Rhen.: Christi Patern., Gorz., Vat., Gang., Gel., Pam., Rig.*

adprehensus. *Leid., Hirsaug., Patern., Gorz., Rhen., Gang., Gel.: comprehensus Vat., Pam., Rig.*

Christum blasphemare non destitit. Doctrinam enim introduxit, qua Christum hominem tantummodo diceret, Deum autem illum negaret, ex Spiritu quidem Sancto natum ex virgine, sed hominem solitarium atque nudum, nulla alia prae ceteris, nisi sola iustitiae auctoritate.

5

Alter post hunc Theodotus haereticus erupit, qui et ipse introduxit alteram sectam, et ipsum hominem Christum tantummodo dicit ex Spiritu Sancto, et virgine Maria conceptum pariter et natum; sed hunc inferiorem esse quam Melchisedech, eo quod dictum sit de Christo: Tu es sacerdos in aeternum secundum ordinem Melchisedech. Nam illum Melchisedech praecipuae gratiae caelestem esse Virtutem, eo quod agat Christus pro hominibus, deprecator et advocatus ipsorum factus, Melchisedech facere pro caelestibus angelis atque Virtutibus; nam esse illum usque adeo Christo meliorem, ut ἀπάτωρ sit, ἀμήτωρ sit, ἀγενεαλογητός sit, cuius neque initium neque finis comprehensus sit aut comprehendi possit.

Sed post hos omnes etiam Praxeas quidam haeresim introduxit, quam Victorinus corroborare curavit. Hic 20

6. Theodotus. The banker, a follower of the first Theodotus, and leader of the sect in succession to his teacher. He held the same psilanthropic Christology, but added the doctrine of the superiority of Melchizedek to Christ, based on Heb. v. 6. Hippol. *Philos.* vii. 36; *Little Labyr. u.s.*; Epiph. *Haer.* 55; Philast. 52.

10. Tu es sacerdos. Heb. v. 6, vi. 20, vii. 17.

16. ἀπάτωρ, &c. Heb. vii. 1 f.

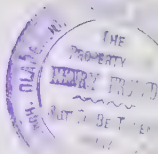
19. Praxeas. Praxeas, an Asiatic by birth, was a Monarchian who spent a short time in Rome during the episcopate of Zephyrinus, whose Montanism he successfully combated, and then passed to Karthage. Our knowledge of him is derived from Tertullian's treatise 'Adversus Praxean' which is a general refutation of patripassian opinions. Praxeas is not mentioned by Hippolytus, nor by any earlier writer than Augustine except Tertullian and the present author.

20. Victorinus. This Victorinus is unknown, and the name is generally supposed to be a combination on the part of a scribe of the names of the popes Victor and Zephyrinus, the one probably having been written over the other. That the bishop of Rome referred

Deum Patrem omnipotentem Iesum Christum esse dicit; hunc crucifixum passumque contendit et mortuum: praeterea seipsum sibi sedere ad dexteram suam, cum profana et sacrilega temeritate proponit.

to by Tertull. *adv. Prax.* 1 was Zephyrinus and not Victor, see Salmon *D. C. B.* iii. 940; Lightfoot *Clem. Rom.* ii. 418.

GENERAL INDEX



I.

- Abdicare 85.
 Abel 154.
 Abraham 43.
 Abraxas 150, 158.
 academia 40.
 Achaia 82.
 Achamoth 158.
 'Acts of Apostles' rejected 61.
 Adam, non-salvability of, 165.
 ad caelum 113.
 adire 92.
 adlectio 95.
 adlegere 95.
 AD MARTYRAS, date of, 101, 103 f., 119; authorities for text of, 106; synopsis of, 105; addressed to Perpetua, 103; non-Montanist, 101 f., 107, 108; illustrated by Perpetua's 'Passion,' 103.
 admittere 47.
 Adoneus 153.
 Adrumetum 135.
 AD SCAPULAM, date of, 123, 125; authorities for text of, 125; synopsis of, 126; style of, 124; non-Montanist, 104, 124.
 adssessores 137.
 adtonita diligentia 95.
 adulter 33.
 adulter sensus 53.
 ADVERSUS OMNES HAERESES, anonymous, 145; authorities for text of, 145; date of, 145; title of, 145; character of, 145.
 advocatores 137.
 aedificare in ruinam 30.
 aemulari 80.
 aemulus 80.
 aeones Valentini 38, 77, 79, 157 f.
 Aeschines 165.
 Aetna 115.
 African Church, 5, 82, 92; creed of, 3 f., 48; early martyrs of, 102, 133.
 African latinisms 46, 69, 89.
 agape 110.
 agere 49.
 agonothetes 113.
 Agrippa Castor 150.
 Albiniani 129.
 Albinus 101, 118, 129, 134, 136, 139.
 altercatio 54.
 an = annon 43.
 Anabaptists 159.
 Anencletus 74.
 angelica substantia 113.
 animatio 39.
 Anonymous accusations 137.
 Anonymous Appendix, *see* ADVERSUS OMNES HAERESES.
 antecessores 61.
 Antichrist 130.
 antichristi 78.
 Antoninus, Arrius 141.
 Antoninus Bassianus, *see* Caracalla.
 Antoninus Pius, 69, 138.
 Apelles 36 f., 39, 79, 163 ff.; system of, 163 ff.; lapse of, 70; 'Phaneroiseis' of, 53, 71, 164; 'Syllogisms' of, 164; denied resurrection, 76, 164; mutilated Scripture, 85, 164; forbade marriage, 77.
 Apollinarianism 159.
 Apollinaris, Claudius 139.
 Apologists, Alexandrian 40; Karthaginian 40.
 'Apology,' the, epitomized 124.
 aporiatio 158.
 apostolicus 58.

- apparitio 95.
 appellatio fraternitas 56.
 archimartyr 133.
 areae 131.
 Arena 117.
 Aristotle 40.
 Arnuphis 139.
 Arrius Antoninus 141.
 Artemis 117.
 articulus 41.
 Asdrubalis uxor 116.
 Asia 82.
 Asper, Julius 136.
 Astaphaeus 153.
 astrologi 133.
 Astronomers 133.
 Athanasius 9.
 Atheism, crime of 129.
 Athenae 40.
 Athletes 113.
 atrocitas arenae 111.
 auctorare 118.
 auctorari 127.
 Augustine 9.
 Aurelius, Marcus, *see* Marcus Aurelius.
 authenticæ litteræ 81.
 authenticus 81.
 avenae 73.

 Baptism, heathen 89, 90.
 Baptismal vow 112.
 Basilides, system of 150.
 bene quod 63.
 blasphematio 53.
 Blastus 166.
 brabium 113.
 Byzacium 135, 136.
 Byzantium 134.

 Caecilius Capella 134.
 caelum 113.
 Cain 78, 154.
 Cainaei 154.
 Cainites 78, 95, 154.
 Caius 165.
 Capella, Caecilius 134.
 capere 97.
 capit opinari 97.
 caprificus 84.
 Caracalla 123 f., 138.
 Carnuntum 139.
 Carpocrates, system of 155.

 Cassiani 129.
 Cassius 129.
 Cataphrygians 165.
 catechumenus 92.
 cathedrae 81.
 Catholic Church, *see* Church Catholic.
 Catholic tradition 5, 67.
 catholica 69.
 catholice 66.
 cavere 85.
 Cebes 88.
 cedere 116.
 censere 56.
 census 56.
 Cerdon 70, 162 f.
 Cerinthus, system of 156.
 cesserit plagis 116.
 cessit 116.
 Cham 155.
 Christianity, a religio illicita, 124.
 Christians, numbers of 131, 141;
 loyalty of, 129, 134; integrity of,
 129, 140; of high rank, 139, 141;
 soldiers, 139; forbidden to pro-
 selytize, 123.
 Church Catholic, unity of, 56; apos-
 tolicity of, 57; a 'virgin,' 96; our
 'mother,' 107.
 Cincius Severus 136.
 circulatores 94.
 Claudius Apollinaris 139.
 Clement of Rome, 74.
 Clementine fictions 74.
 Cleopatra 116.
 Coessentiality of the Son 48.
 Colarbasus 161.
 collatio scripturarum 54, 98.
 commemorare 132.
 Commendatory letters 56.
 committere 63, 109.
 Commodus 117.
 commonefacere 132.
 commonere 132.
 communicatio deliberata 95.
 Communions, heretical, unguarded
 92.
 'Compendium' of Hippolytus 145.
 concertare 127.
 concussio 137.
 concutere 137.
 confessores 107.
 congrédi 40, 108.

congressio 40, 52.
 congressus 40.
 Conscience, freedom of, 124.
 constitutio 52.
 contendere = disputare 92.
 contesserare 83.
 contesseratio hospitalis 56.
 continentes 90.
 continentia 91.
 conventus 132 f.
 conversatio 62, 67, 91.
 Corinth 82.
 corona 113 f.
 correptio 35.
 corruptor stilus 53.
 credo (ironical) 96.
 Creed of African Church 5 f., 48.
 curiositas 41, 91.
 custodiarium 110.

 Daemoniorum pabula 130.
 Demons, heathen gods 128.
 dare pacem 70.
 David 30, 55.
 de 29.
 deceptatio 158.
 de cetero 135.
 deductor 43.
 defendere 44.
 deicere 137.
 deieratae 76.
 denique 28, 127.
 DE PRAESCRIPTIONE HAERETICORUM,
 date of, 11 f.; authorities for text
 of, 12 ff.; analysis of, 16; argu-
 ment of, 4; synopsis of, 17; non-
 Montanist, 11, 59, 60, 93.
 'De Testimonio Animae' 128.
 deus melior 38.
 Devil, instigator of heresies 89.
 dictata suggesta 108.
 Dido 115.
 Digamy forbidden 90.
 Dionysius 70.
 discentes 32.
 disciplina 36, 91, 114, 128.
 disciplina arcani 92.
 disciplina rationis 44, 45.
 Discipline, Catholic 95.
 Disloyalty, crime of, 129.
 dissimulare 136.
 Docetae 77.
 doctor 31.

domicilium 133.
 domina mater ecclesia 107.
 domus diaboli 108.
 Dositheans 145.
 Dositheus 146, 147.
 duci 141.

 Ebion 76, 157.
 Ebionite heresy 76 f., 157; Christo-
 logy 79.
 ebullire 134.
 ecclesia mater 107.
 Eclipse at Utica 133.
 ectroma 39.
 Edict of Severus 123.
 effumigatus 108.
 eiusmodi 35.
 electio 35.
 Eleutherus 69.
 elidere 136.
 Eloeus 153.
 elogium 135.
 Empedocles 115.
 Emperors, Christian loyalty towards
 130.
 Empire, Roman, continuance of
 130.
 energema 71.
 enthymesis 39, 158.
 Ephesus 82.
 Epicurus 38.
 Episcopal Succession, necessity of,
 6 f., 72; heretical lack of, 5, 9, 74.
 epistates 113.
 erogare 28, 117.
 Eternal Generation of the Son 48.
 Eucharist, Christian 92, 130;
 heathen 90; heretical 92.
 eucharistia 153.
 Euhodia 138.
 evacuare 155.
 excantatus 108.
 exitus 28.
 exorbitare 34.
 Exorcism 130.
 expavescere 113.
 explorata adlectio 95.
 exponere 89.
 expositio 89.
 expunctio 46.
 expungere 118.
 exstrukiones 94.
 extranei 85.

- Faenum 73.
 Felicitas 123.
 fidelis 92.
 fistula 159.
 flagellatio 116.
 Fortitude, pagan examples of 102,
 115 ff.
 fossa 45.
 Freedom of conscience 124; worship
 128.
 Fundanus 137.
 furor circi 111.

 Gaiana haeresis 78, 154.
 Gallican martyrs 110, 115.
 gaudete 135.
 Geta Augustus 123 f., 138.
 Geta, Hosidius 88.
 Gnosticism 3, 10.
 'Gnostics,' the first, 155.
 Gnostic tenets 76, 77, 83, 97, 148,
 151, 157.
 Gods, heathen, daemons 128; de-
 rided by their worshippers 129.
 Gordian 136.
 gradus 42.
 Greek words transliterated 31,
 110.
 gubernaculum 42.

 Habere 52, 117.
 hactenus 47.
 Hadrian 137, 155.
 haeresis, electio 35.
 Heathen sacraments 89, 90; gods
 128.
 Hebion, *see* Ebion.
 Hegesippus 8, 74, 85.
 Helen 148.
 Helias 42, 60.
 Heracleon, 159; system of, 160 f.;
 'Commentaries' of, 160.
 Heracleus 39, 115.
 Heresies, churchless, 94; foretold,
 27; necessary evil, 28; recent
 origin of, 5; similar to philo-
 sophies, 39; value of, to Church,
 10, 27.
 Heresy, definition of, 35.
 Heretical appeal to Scriptures dis-
 allowed, 4, 54; immorality, 140;
 laxity 92; misrepresentations 140;
 ordinations 93; perversion or
 mutilation of Scriptures 53, 60,
 85; women 92.
 Heretics, not Christians 41, 94;
 excommunicated 140.
 Herminianus 134.
 Hermogenes 32, 39, 72, 78.
 Hermogenianus 134.
 Hierosolyma 40.
 Hilarian 123, 131.
 Hippolytus 145, 158.
 Homocentones 88.
 Horos 157.
 Horus 158.
 Hosidius Geta 88.
 hostes publici 140.
 huiusmodi 35.
 Hymenaeus 32.
 hypsoma 133.

 Ialdabaoth 153.
 Iao 153, 158.
 idolothyta 78.
 ignes 132.
 illic 90.
 imbonitas 112.
 impingere 34, 71.
 impudicitia theatri 111.
 in conventu Uticensi 132; Asiae 133.
 inducere 52.
 ingenia 87.
 iniquae = impares 155.
 instrumentum 86.
 insuavitas 112.
 intentio 142.
 interim = adhuc 33; = argumenti
 caussâ 55.
 interpellare 48.
 interpellatio 135.
 interpretari 89.
 in totum 88.
 Irenaeus 8, 9, 166; 'on Schism'
 166; creed of, 5; lectures of, 145,
 158.
 Isaac 43.
 Isis 89.
 Israel 43.
 Italia 82.
 Iupiter Pluvius 139.
 Iustinus Martyr 165; 'Syntagma'
 of, 149, 159.

 Jacob 43.
 Jews 44, 123.

- John Baptist 42, 83.
 John, St. 8, 60, 74, 78, 83.
 Judas 60, 154.
 Julian 139.

 Kata Proclum 165.
 Keys, Gift of the, 59.
 Kiss of peace 70.

 Lacedemonae 116.
 Leaena 116.
 lector 93.
 Legio = Numidia 141.
 Legio fulminata 139.
 Legion, Thundering, 139.
 lenocinium 92.
 Letters, commendatory, 56.
 libelli 102, 109.
 Liberian catalogue 74.
 Lights, Northern, 132.
 Linus 74.
 Lucanas 38, 163.
 Lucitas 133.
 Lucretia 115.
 lumina 134.

 Macedonia 82.
 machaera 87.
 magi 94.
 maior, magister, 31.
 'Majesty,' crime of, 129.
 'Manifestations' of Apelles 53, 71.
 manu facta 141.
 Marcion, system of, 3, 37 f., 79, 92,
 162 f.; Stoicus 38, 69; nauclerus
 69; date of, 69; lapse of, 70;
 moral character of, 71, 163;
 denied resurrection, 76; forbade
 marriage, 77; Christology of, 78,
 159, 163; mutilated scriptures,
 60, 71, 87, 163; used Pauline
 writings, 61, 162 f.; 'Antitheses'
 of, 163.
 Marcionitae 68.
 Marcionite laxity 92.
 Marcosians 161.
 Marcus Aurelius 129, 134, 139.
 Marcus, system of, 161.
 margaritum 117.
 martyr = confessor 31, 107.
 Martyrdom, Mithraic, 90; Mon-
 tanist view of, 102.
 martyres designati 107.
 Martyrs, Address to, *see* AD MAR-
 TYRAS; early African 102, 133;
 Gallican 110, 115; Scillitan 102,
 133.
 mater ecclesia 107.
 matrix 58.
 Mauritania 141.
 Mavilus 135.
 Medea 88.
 medii 51.
 Melchizedek 167.
 Menander 148.
 Miggin 133.
 militia 112.
 minus est si 32.
 Miracles, false 97.
 miscere 67, 83, 92.
 Mithraic rites 89, 90; 'martyrdom'
 90.
 Mithras 90.
 Monophysitism 159.
 Montanist interpretations 59, 60;
 view of martyrdom 102.
 Montanists 165.
 Montanus, heresy of, 165 f.
 morositas 91.
 Moses 42, 60.
 Mucius 115.

 Naassenes 152.
 Namphamo 102, 133.
 nauclerus 69.
 negator 47, 76.
 neophyti 93.
 Nero 117.
 Nicolaitae 78.
 Nicolas 78, 151.
 Nicolaus 151.
 Niger 101, 118, 129, 134.
 Nigidius 72.
 Nigriani 129.
 nisi 29, 33.
 nisi quod 29.
 Noetians 145.
 Noetus 146.
 Northern Lights 132.
 noscibiles 130.
 notarius 137.
 Novatian 70.
 novissime 50, 116.
 nullus = nemo 130, 140.
 Numa Pompilius 91.

Numidia 141.

nunc 98.

Obstreperare 53.

obtendere 51.

odiis 108.

Ophiani 152.

Ophiomorphus 153.

Ophitae, system of 152.

Ophites 149, 152.

opinor 30.

Ordinations, catholic, 95; heretical, 93.

Oreus 153.

osculum pacis 70.

Pabula daemoniorum 130.

palaestra 113 f.

papaver = semen 84.

Paracletus 43, 166.

Pascha 166.

Patriarchs 48.

Patripassianism 146, 165.

patrocinari 51.

Paul, S., 7, 102; opposed to S. Peter, 61; martyrdom of, 83.

Paulus 61 ff.

pax 70, 92, 109.

Peace, kiss of, 70.

Pentecost, day of, 60.

Peregrinus 115.

Perpetua 103; 'Acts' of, 103; not a Montanist, 104; 'Passion' of, 103, 108, 110, 113; martyrdom of, 123, 131, 135.

Persecutors, doom of, 124, 131, 133.

Peter, S., the 'rock' 59; gift of keys to, 59 f.; opposed to S. Paul, 61; martyrdom of, 82.

Petrus 42, 59, 61 ff., 74.

'Phaneroseis' of Apelles 53, 71, 164.

Pharisaei 147.

Philetus 32.

Philippi 82.

Philosophers 41 f.

Philumena 36 f., 71, 164.

Phronesis 150.

Phygelus 32.

'Pinax' of Cebes 88.

plane 52.

Pleroma 157.

Plinius Secundus 139.

politia 113.

Polycarp 8, 74.

Pontius Pilate 64.

'Porch,' the 41.

porro 45.

porticus 111.

porticus Solomonis 41.

praescriptio 3 f., 57.

praeses 131.

praetorium 134.

Praxeas 146, 167.

primitiae 42.

principalitas 73.

Prisoners fed by the Church 102, 107; freedom of intercourse 103.

processio modesta 95.

Proclus 165.

Proculus 138 f.

procurator 138.

proinde, perinde 54.

prophetia 55.

Providentia = *φρόνησις* 150.

provocare 51.

Psalms, Valentinian 53.

pseudoapostoli 33.

pseudoprophetae 33.

Ptolemaeus 87, 159 f.

Pudens 137.

Qua 52.

Quadi 139.

quaestor 138.

quale est 68.

quanti = quot 136.

Ratio verborum 44.

Readers, order of 93.

reddere testimonium 140.

refrigerare 140.

refrigerium 140.

regula = fides Christiana 31.

regula fidei 5, 48, 84.

Regulus 116.

religio illicita 124.

Religious liberty 124.

repraesentare 82.

respondere 112.

Resurrection of the flesh 39; Gnostic denial of, 76, 83; 'spiritual,' 77; Mithraic 90.

retractatus 39.

retro = antea 132.

- 'Revelations' of Apelles 53.
 Rhodon 37.
 'Rock,' S. Peter, the 59.
 Roma 82.
 Roman Church 82 f.; early episcopate of 74.
 Roman Empire, continuance of, 130.
 Romani 74.
 Roman toleration of foreign cults 128.
 Rule of Faith 4, 48.
 Sabaoth 153.
 Sacramentum 57, 112.
 sacrificium 130.
 Sacrilege, crime of 129.
 sacrilegi 129, 140.
 sacro 117.
 Sadduceæi 76, 157.
 Samaë 133.
 sanctum = Eucharist 92.
 Sapientia = *Σοφία* 148 ff.
 Saturninus, Gnostic system of 149.
 Saturninus, Vigellius 133, 137.
 Saul 30.
 scamma 114.
 Scapula, Address to, *see* AD SCAPULAM.
 Scapula Tertullus 124 f., 127, 137, 141.
 Scillitan martyrs 102, 133.
 Scipio 116.
 scriptis 71.
 Scripture, loose citation of, 31 f., 42 f.; mutilation or perversion of, 53, 60, 71 f., 85, 87, 163; appeal to, forbidden, 9, 54; Catholic interpretation of, 9, 44.
 scrupulositas 41, 66.
 Secular service 93.
 Secundum Aeschinem 165.
 Secundum Phrygas 165.
 Secundus 159 f.
 Serpentarians 152.
 Serpent-worship 152.
 sestertii 70.
 Sethiani 152.
 Sethoitaë 154.
 Severus 101, 118, 134, 136, 138, 139; edict of 123.
 Severus, Cincius 136.
 si forte 109.
 Sigé 157.
 signare 83.
 Silentium 157.
 silva 85.
 Simonianæ 79.
 Simon Magus 46, 79, 147 f.
 Simon the Cyrenæan 150 f.
 Simon the Samaritan 147 f.
 Smyrnaei 74.
 Solomon 30, 41.
 Son of God, Coessentiality of, 48; Eternal Generation of, 48.
 Sophia, fall of 79.
 Sophia-Prunikos 149, 152.
 sortire 28.
 Soul, natural knowledge of God, 128.
 Spirit, work of the Holy, 60.
 stadia opaca 111.
 statio 46.
 stemma 70.
 stigma 70.
 stillicidium 43.
 stilus 53, 86.
 Stoics 38.
 subjectio 95.
 subministrare 29.
 subornari 38.
 subostendi 64.
 substantia angelica 113.
 suggerere 35, 108, 137.
 suggillare 42, 77.
 suggillatio 42, 77.
 superducere 62, 66.
 superficies 33.
 suspirare 110.
 sustinere 110.
 susum 59.
 'Syllogisms' of Apelles 164.
 'Syntagma' of Hippolytus 145; of Justin Martyr 149.
 Systatics 56.
 'Tabula' 88.
 tanta = tot 46.
 Tatianus 165.
 taurea 118.
 tenere = posse 54.
 Tertullian, author of 'Passion of Perpetua,' 103; irony of, 10, 80, 94, 96, 116; loose quotations of Scripture, 31 f., 42 f.; Montanism of 59 f., 93, 102; non-technical theological language, 48; style of, 9 f., 104; transliterates Greek

inflexions 31, 110; his use of
 paradox 28.
 testimonium reddere 140.
 Testimony of the soul to God 128.
 testudo 112.
 Theodotus 167.
 Theodotus Byzantius 166.
 Theophanies 48.
 Thundering Legion 139.
 Thysdrus 136.
 Timotheus 63 f.
 Timothy 7.
 tingere 92.
 Toleration in religion 128.
 tonitrua 132.
 Torpacion 138.
 tractatus 50.
 Tradition, unity of Catholic, 5, 67.
 traducere 76, 130.
 traductio 76.
 tradux 56.
 Trajan 137.
 Transfiguration, the, 111.
 trinitas hominis 38.
 Trophimus 70.
 tunica molesta 118.

Unity of Catholic Church 56; of
 Catholic tradition 5, 67.
 usitatissimi 30.
 Utica 132.

vacare 111, 113.

Valentinian denial of Resurrection
 76; perversion of Scripture 72,
 87.

Valentiniana trinitas 38.

Valentiniani 68, 77.

Valentinians, Italic School of, 159.

Valentinus, apostasy of, 70; Chris-
 tology of, 159; date of, 69; false
 Gospel of 53; Platonius 33, 69;
 Psalms of, 53; system of, 3, 39,
 77, 157 ff.; use of Pauline writings
 61.

Vergilius 88.

Vespronius Candidus 136.

Vesuvius 132.

Via 111.

Victor 166, 167.

Victorinus 167.

Victorinus of Petavium 146.

viderint 41, 47.

vidua 30.

Vigellius Saturninus 133.

Virgilian cento 88.

virgines 90.

virginitas 91.

Virgins, order of 31.

virgo 31, 36.

virtutes 49. •

Widows, order of, 30.

worship, spontaneity in, 128; toler-
 ation in, 128.

xystarches 113.

xystici 113.

Zeno 39, 41.

Zephyrinus 146, 167 f.

II.

Ἀβραάμ 150.

Αἵρεσις 35.

ἀναστροφή 91.

ἀπορία 158.

ἀστρολόγοι 133.

βραβεῖον 113.

διαμαστίγωσις 116.

διοίκησις 132.

ἔκτρωμα 39.

ἐνδέχεται 97.

ἐνθύμησις 39.

εὐχαριστία 153.

Θυσδρός 136.

Ἰάω 158.

καθηγητής 43.

κεραυνοφόρον 139.

μὴ θεομαχεῖν 135.
μυστήριον 57.

ναύτης 69.
Νοῦς 150.

πίναξ 88.
Περιστερά 162.
πολιτεία 91, 113.

Σιθιανοί 154.

σκάμμα 114.
Σοφία 148 ff.
στέφανος 113.
Σύνταγμα 145.

ταπείνωμα 133.

Ἑπομνήματα 160.
ὑψωμα 133.

φρόνησις 150.

INDEX OF TEXTS

GENESIS.		JEREMIAH.		xv. 24	43
iii. 1	152	xvi. 17	31	xvi. 16	42
		xxxii. 19	31	xvi. 18	59
NUMBERS.		4 ESDRAS.		xvii. 1	60, 111
xxi. 4	152	viii. 20	31	xviii. 15	52
DEUTERONOMY.		WISDOM.		xviii. 16	60
xix. 15	60	i. 1	11	xxii. 23	65
xxxiii. 2	156	S. MATTHEW.		xxiv. 4	27
1 SAMUEL.		v. 14	110	xxiv. 10	27
xiii. 14	30	v. 15	65	xxiv. 11	27
1 KINGS.		v. 37	66	xxiv. 24	27, 97
xi. 1	30	v. 44	128	xxvi. 41	114
xvi. 7	32	v. 45	129	xxviii. 19	43, 55
PSALMS.		v. 48	128		
lxviii. 17	156	vi. 21	112	S. MARK.	
cix. 8	55	vii. 6	65, 92	i. 35	111
cxl. 10	95	vii. 7	42 f.	iv. 34	59
PROVERBS.		vii. 15	27	vi. 31	111
ix. 10	95	vii. 16	61	vi. 46	111
ISAIAH.		vii. 17	163	ix. 1	60
xl. 15	43	x. 5	43	ix. 2	111
		x. 22	32	xiv. 21	70
		x. 24	157		
		x. 27	65	S. LUKE.	
		xi. 2	42	i. 3	65
		xi. 27	57	vi. 28	128
		xiii. 11	59	vi. 40	157
		xiii. 37	63	ix. 28	60, 111
		xv. 13	33	xi. 5	47
		xv. 14	50	xi. 9	42 f.
				xi. 10	47
				xii. 18	42
				xv. 1	47
				xvi. 29	31, 42

xviii. 2	47
xviii. 42	50
xix. 12	65
xx. 36	113
xxiv. 27	60

S. JOHN.

iii. 14	152
v. 31	62
v. 39	42
vi. 67	32
xiii. 16	157
xiii. 25	60
xiv. 6	111
xiv. 26	67
xvi. 13	43, 60
xvi. 24	32, 43
xix. 26	60

ACTS.

i. 20	55
ii. 1	60
ii. 28	59
v. 39	135
vii. 53	156
viii. 9	79
viii. 20	148
xvi. 3	63
xx. 24	27
xxiii. 8	75

ROMANS.

i. 8	67
xii. 17	140
xiii. 1	130
xv. 14	67
xvi. 19	67

1 CORINTHIANS.

i. 10	66
i. 27	37
iii. 1	67
iii. 11	59
iii. 19	37
vi. 2	110
viii. 2	67
ix. 20	63
ix. 24	113

ix. 25	114
xi. 19	27, 70, 87, 89
xi. 23	58
xv. 1	58
xv. 9	61
xv. 12	75
xvi. 19	67

2 CORINTHIANS.

ii. 15	110
v. 10	96
xi. 2	96
xi. 14	37
xii. 2	63
xiii. 1	60

GALATIANS.

i. 6	66
i. 8	36, 69
i. 9	58
i. 18	62
ii. 9	62
ii. 11	61
iii. 1	66
iii. 19	156
iv. 9	77
v. 1	110
v. 2	76
v. 7	66
v. 20	35
vi. 6	92

EPHESIANS.

i. 15	67
ii. 20	59
iv. 30	108
v. 3	110
v. 8	110
vi. 11 ff. . . .	108
vi. 12	87

PHILIPPIANS.

i. 3	58
iii. 14	113
iii. 30	113
iv. 9	67

COLOSSIANS.

i. 4	67
ii. 8	32, 40

1 THESSALONIANS.

i. 3	67
v. 5	10
v. 21	34

2 THESSALONIANS.

i. 3	67
ii. 6	130
ii. 15	58

1 TIMOTHY.

i. 4	40
i. 18	64, 85
ii. 11	95
iii. 2	90
iii. 6	93
iii. 11	30
iv. 1	27, 37
iv. 3	77
v. 9	30
v. 21	85
vi. 4	52
vi. 12	113
vi. 13	64, 85
vi. 20	64

2 TIMOTHY.

i. 14	64, 85
i. 15	32
ii. 2	7, 64, 85
ii. 3	112
ii. 4	113
ii. 17	32, 40
ii. 18	77
ii. 19	32
ii. 23	40
iv. 1	85
iv. 3	37
iv. 8	113, 118

TITUS.

i. 5	85
i. 6	90
iii. 1	130
iii. 9	40
iii. 10	35, 52

HEBREWS.		ii. 13	130	ii. 20	113
ii. 2	156	ii. 22	30	iv. 3	78
v. 6	167	2 PETER.		REVELATION.	
vi. 20	167	ii. 1		i. 7	
vii. 1 ff.	167	ii. 19		ii. 6	
vii. 17	167	I S. JOHN.		ii. 14	
xi. 13	113	ii. 1		xxi. 6	
I PETER.		ii. 19		xxii. 13	
ii. 11	113	ii. 19		ii. 19	

THE END.

Clarendon Press, Oxford.



I. LITERATURE AND PHILOLOGY.

SECTION I.

DICTIONARIES, GRAMMARS, &c.

ANGLO-SAXON. An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, based on the MS. Collections of the late JOSEPH BOSWORTH, D.D., Professor of Anglo-Saxon, Oxford. Edited and enlarged by Prof. T. N. TOLLER, M.A. Parts I-III. A-SAR. 4to, 15s. each. Part IV. Sect. I. SÁR-SWÍÐRIAN. 8s. 6d.

ARABIC. A Practical Arabic Grammar. Compiled by A. O. GREEN, Brigade Major, Royal Engineers.

Part I. *Third Edition. Enlarged.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Part II. *Third Edition. Enlarged and Revised.* 10s. 6d.

BENGALI. Grammar of the Bengali Language; Literary and Colloquial. By JOHN BEAMES. Crown 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d.

CELTIC. Ancient Cornish Drama. Edited and translated by E. NORRIS, with a Sketch of Cornish Grammar, an Ancient Cornish Vocabulary, &c. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

The Sketch of Cornish Grammar separately, stitched, 2s. 6d.

CHINESE. A Handbook of the Chinese Language. By JAMES SUMMERS. 8vo, half-bound, 1l. 8s.

ENGLISH. A New English Dictionary, on Historical Principles: founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological Society. Vol. I. A and B, and Vol. II. C. Imperial 4to, half-morocco, *each* 2l. 12s. 6d.

Part VIII. Section I. CROUCHMAS—CZECH. End of Vol. II, 4s.

Edited by JAMES A. H. MURRAY, LL.D.

Vol. III. D and E.

D. Edited by Dr. MURRAY. [*In the Press.*]


E—EVERY. Edited by H. BRADLEY, M.A. 12s. 6d. [*Published.*]

Oxford: Clarendon Press. London: HENRY FROWDE, Amen Corner, E.C.

ENGLISH (*continued*).

- ENGLISH.** An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. *Second Edition.* 4to, 2l. 4s.
- A Concise Etymological Dictionary of the English Language. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. *Fourth Edition.* Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.
- A Concise Dictionary of Middle English, from A.D. 1150 to 1580. By A. L. MAYHEW, M.A., and W. W. SKEAT, Litt. D. Crown 8vo, half-roan, 7s. 6d.
- A Middle English Dictionary. By FRANCIS HENRY STRATMANN. *A New Edition*, Re-arranged, Revised, and Enlarged by HENRY BRADLEY, M.A. Small 4to, 1l. 11s. 6d.
- A Primer of Spoken English. By HENRY SWEET, M.A., Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- A New English Grammar, Logical and Historical. By HENRY SWEET, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. Introduction, Phonology, and Accidence. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- A Short Historical English Grammar. By HENRY SWEET, M.A., Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- A Primer of Historical English Grammar. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
- A Primer of Phonetics. By HENRY SWEET, M.A., Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Elementarbuch des Gesprochenen Englisch. Grammatik, Texte und Glossar. By HENRY SWEET, M.A., Ph.D. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 2s. 6d.
- FINNISH.** A Finnish Grammar. By C. N. E. ELIOT, M.A. Crown 8vo, roan, 10s. 6d.
- GOTHIC.** A Primer of the Gothic Language ; with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By JOSEPH WRIGHT, Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 4s. 6d.
- GREEK.** A Greek-English Lexicon, by H. G. LIDDELL, D.D., and ROBERT SCOTT, D.D. *Seventh Edition, Revised and Augmented throughout.* 4to, 1l. 16s.
- An Intermediate Greek-English Lexicon, founded upon the Seventh Edition of the above. Small 4to, 12s. 6d.
- A Greek-English Lexicon, abridged from Liddell and Scott's 4to edition, chiefly for the use of Schools. *Twenty-fifth Edition.* Square 12mo, 7s. 6d.

GREEK. A Concordance to the Septuagint and the other Greek Versions of the Old Testament (including the Apocryphal Books). By the late EDWIN HATCH, M.A., and HENRY REDPATH, M.A. Parts I and II. Α-ΕΠΙΛΟΓΗ. Imperial 4to, each 21s. Part III. *In the Press.*

 To be completed in Six Parts, at 1l. 1s. per Part; or to Subscribers at 4l. 4s. for the whole work.

— A copious Greek-English Vocabulary, compiled from the best authorities. 24mo, 3s.

— **Etymologicon Magnum.** Ad Codd. mss. recensuit et notis variorum instruxit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. 1848. fol. 1l. 12s.

— **Suidae Lexicon.** Ad Codd. mss. recensuit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. Tomi III. 1834. fol. 2l. 2s.

HEBREW. A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament, with an Appendix containing the Biblical Aramaic, based on the Thesaurus and Lexicon of GESENIUS, by FRANCIS BROWN, D.D., S. R. DRIVER, D.D., and C. A. BRIGGS, D.D. Parts I and II. Small 4to, 2s. 6d. each.

— The Book of Hebrew Roots, by ABU 'L-WALÎD MARWÂN IBN JANÂH, otherwise called RABBÎ YÔNÂH. Now first edited, with an Appendix, by AD. NEUBAUER. 4to, 2l. 7s. 6d.

— A Treatise on the use of the Tenses in Hebrew. By S. R. DRIVER, D.D. *Third Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

ICELANDIC. An Icelandic-English Dictionary, based on the MS. collections of the late RICHARD CLEASBY. Enlarged and completed by G. VIGFÚSSON, M.A. 4to, 3l. 7s.

— A List of English Words the Etymology of which is illustrated by comparison with Icelandic. Prepared in the form of an Appendix to the above. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Stitched, 2s.

— An Icelandic Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By HENRY SWEET, M.A., Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— An Icelandic Prose Reader, with Notes, Grammar, and Glossary, by Dr. GUDBRAND VIGFÚSSON and F. YORK POWELL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

LATIN. A Latin Dictionary, founded on Andrews' edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary, revised, enlarged, and in great part rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D. 4to, 1l. 5s.

— A School Latin Dictionary. By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D. Small 4to, 18s.

— An Elementary Latin Dictionary. By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D. Square 8vo, 7s. 6d.

LATIN. Scheller's Dictionary of the Latin Language, revised and translated into English by J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. 1835. fol. 1*l.* 1*s.*

— Contributions to Latin Lexicography. By HENRY NETTLESHIP, M.A. 8vo, 2*1s.*

MELANESIAN. The Melanesian Languages. By ROBERT H. CODRINGTON, D.D., of the Melanesian Mission. 8vo, 1*8s.*

RUSSIAN. A Grammar of the Russian Language. By W. R. MORFILL, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6*s.*

SANSKRIT. A Practical Grammar of the Sanskrit Language, arranged with reference to the Classical Languages of Europe, for the use of English Students, by Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. *Fourth Edition.* 8vo, 1*5s.*

— A Sanskrit-English Dictionary, Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to Greek, Latin, German, Anglo-Saxon, English, and other cognate Indo-European Languages. By Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. 4to, 4*l.* 14*s.* 6*d.*

— Nalopákhyānam. Story of Nala, an Episode of the Mahá-Bhárata: the Sanskrit text, with a copious Vocabulary, and an improved version of Dean MILMAN'S Translation, by Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. *Second Edition, Revised and Improved.* 8vo, 1*5s.*

— Sakuntalā. A Sanskrit Drama, in Seven Acts. Edited by Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 2*1s.*

SYRIAC. Thesaurus Syriacus: collegerunt Quatremère, Bernstein, Lersbach, Arnaldi, Agrell, Field, Roediger: edidit R. PAYNE SMITH, S.T.P. Vol. I, containing Fasc. I-V, sm. fol. 5*l.* 5*s.*

Fasc. VI, 1*l.* 1*s.*; VII, 1*l.* 1*1s.* 6*d.*; VIII, 1*l.* 1*6s.*; IX, 1*l.* 5*s.*

TAMIL. First Lessons in Tamil. By G. U. POPE, D.D. *Fifth Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7*s.* 6*d.*

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARIES.

Cotton's Typographical Gazetteer. 1831. 8vo, 12*s.* 6*d.*

— Typographical Gazetteer. Second Series. 1866. 8vo, 12*s.* 6*d.*

Dowling (J. G.). Notitia Scriptorum SS. Patrum aliorumque vet. Eccles. Mon. quae in Collectionibus Anecdotorum post annum Christi MDCC. in lucem editis continentur. 8vo, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Ebert's Bibliographical Dictionary, translated from the German. 4 vols. 1837. 8vo, 1*l.* 10*s.*

SECTION II.

ANGLO-SAXON AND ENGLISH.



HELPS TO THE STUDY OF THE LANGUAGE AND
LITERATURE.



A NEW ENGLISH DICTIONARY on Historical Principles, founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological Society. Vol. I. A and B, and Vol. II. C. Imperial 4to, half-morocco, each 2l. 12s. 6d.

Part VIII. Section I. CROUCHMAS—CZECH. End of Vol. II, 4s.

Edited by JAMES A. H. MURRAY, LL.D.

Vol. III. D and E.

D. Edited by Dr. MURRAY. [*In the Press.*]

E—EVERY. Edited by H. BRADLEY, M.A. 12s. 6d. [*Published.*]

Bosworth and Toller. An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, based on the MS. collections of the late JOSEPH BOSWORTH, D.D. Edited and enlarged by Prof. T. N. TOLLER, M.A. Parts I—III. A—SAR. 4to, stiff covers, 15s. each. Part IV. Sect. I. SÁR—SWÍÐRIAN. 8s. 6d.

Earle. A Book for the Beginner in Anglo-Saxon. By JOHN EARLE, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— The Philology of the English Tongue. *Fifth Edition, Newly Revised.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Mayhew. Synopsis of Old English Phonology. By A. L. MAYHEW, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, bevelled boards, 8s. 6d.

Mayhew and Skeat. A Concise Dictionary of Middle English, from A.D. 1150 to 1580. By A. L. MAYHEW, M.A., and W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Crown 8vo, half-roan, 7s. 6d.

Skeat. An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language, arranged on an Historical Basis. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. *Second Edition.* 4to, 2l. 4s.

A Supplement to the First Edition of the above. 4to, 2s. 6d.

— A Concise Etymological Dictionary of the English Language. *Fourth Edition.* Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.

— Principles of English Etymology. First Series. *The Native Element.* *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— Principles of English Etymology. Second Series. *The Foreign Element.* Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— A Primer of English Etymology. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

— Twelve Facsimiles of Old English Manuscripts, with Transcriptions and an Introduction. 4to, paper covers, 7s. 6d.

Stratmann. A Middle English Dictionary, containing Words used by English Writers from the Twelfth to the Fifteenth Century. By FRANCIS HENRY STRATMANN. *A New Edition*, Re-arranged, Revised, and Enlarged by HENRY BRADLEY, M.A. Small 4to, half-morocco, 1l. 1s. 6d.

Sweet. A New English Grammar, Logical and Historical. Part I. Introduction, Phonology, and Accidence. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— A Short Historical English Grammar. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

— A Primer of Historical English Grammar. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— History of English Sounds from the Earliest Period. With full Word-Lists. 8vo, 14s.

— An Anglo-Saxon Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. *Seventh Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— An Anglo-Saxon Reader. In Prose and Verse. With Grammatical Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. *Sixth Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— A Second Anglo-Saxon Reader. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

— Old English Reading Primers :

I. Selected Homilies of Ælfric. Stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

II. Extracts from Alfred's Orosius. *Second Edition*, 2s.

Sweet (*continued*). First Middle English Primer, with Grammar and Glossary. *Second Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— Second Middle English Primer. Extracts from Chaucer, with Grammar and Glossary. *Second Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Elementarbuch des Gesprochenen Englisch. Grammatik, Texte und Glossar. *Third Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 2s. 6d.

— A Primer of Spoken English. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— An Icelandic Primer, with Grammar, Notes and Glossary. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— A Primer of Phonetics. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— A Manual of Current Shorthand, Orthographic and Phonetic. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Tancock. An Elementary English Grammar and Exercise Book. By O. W. TANCOCK, M.A. *Third Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

— An English Grammar and Reading Book, for Lower Forms in Classical Schools. *Fourth Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Saxon Chronicles. Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel; with Supplementary Extracts from the others. A Revised Text. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, Appendices, and Glossary. By C. PLUMMER, M.A., and J. EARLE, M.A. Vol. I. Text, Appendices, and Glossary. 10s. 6d.

— — (787–1001 A.D.) Crown 8vo, stiff covers, 3s.

Specimens of Early English. A New and Revised Edition. With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index.

Part I. From Old English Homilies to King Horn (A.D. 1150 to A.D. 1300). By R. MORRIS, LL.D. *Second Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 9s.

Part II. From Robert of Gloucester to Gower (A.D. 1298 to A.D. 1393). By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and W. W. SKEAT, Litt. D. *Second Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Specimens of English Literature, from the 'Ploughman's Crede' to the 'Shepheardes Calender' (A.D. 1394 to A.D. 1579). With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt. D. *Fifth Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Typical Selections from the best English Writers, with Introductory Notices. In 2 vols. *Second Edition*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d. each.

Vol. I. Latimer to Berkeley.

Vol. II. Pope to Macaulay.

A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS.

The Deeds of Beowulf. An English Epic of the Eighth Century done into Modern Prose. With an Introduction and Notes, by JOHN EARLE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

The Gospel of St. Luke in Anglo-Saxon. Edited from the MSS. With Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. By JAMES W. BRIGHT, Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

The Ormulum, with the Notes and Glossary of Dr. R. M. WHITE. Edited by R. HOLT, M.A. 2 vols. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

CHAUCER.

I. The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales. (School Edition.) Edited by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s.

II. The Prologue, the Knightes Tale, The Nonne Preestes Tale; from the Canterbury Tales. Edited by R. MORRIS, LL.D. A New Edition, with Collations and Additional Notes by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

III. The Prioresses Tale; Sir Thopas; The Monkes Tale; The Clerkes Tale; The Squieres Tale, &c. Edited by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. *Fifth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

IV. The Tale of the Man of Lawe; The Pardoner's Tale; The Second Nonnes Tale; The Chanouns Yemannes Tale. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. *New Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

V. Minor Poems. Edited by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

VI. The Legend of Good Women. Edited by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Langland, W. The Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, in three Parallel Texts; together with Richard the Redeless. By WILLIAM LANGLAND (about 1362-1399 A.D.). Edited from numerous Manuscripts, with Preface, Notes, and a Glossary, by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 11s. 6d.

— The Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, by WILLIAM LANGLAND. Edited, with Notes, by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. *Sixth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Gamelyn, The Tale of. Edited, with Notes, Glossary, &c., by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

WYCLIFFE.

I. The Books of Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon: according to the Wycliffite Version made by NICHOLAS DE HEREFORD, about A.D. 1381, and Revised by JOHN PURVEY, about A.D. 1388. With Introduction and Glossary by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

II. The New Testament in English, according to the Version by JOHN WYCLIFFE, about A.D. 1380, and Revised by JOHN PURVEY, about A.D. 1388. With Introduction and Glossary by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.

Minot (Laurence). Poems. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by JOSEPH HALL, M.A., Head Master of the Hulme Grammar School, Manchester. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Spenser's Faery Queene. Books I and II. Designed chiefly for the use of Schools. With Introduction and Notes by G. W. KITCHIN, D.D., and Glossary by A. L. MAYHEW, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d. each.

Hooker. Ecclesiastical Polity, Book I. Edited by R. W. CHURCH, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. [See also p. 53.]

OLD ENGLISH DRAMA.

I. York Plays. The Plays performed by the Crafts or Mysteries of York, on the day of Corpus Christi, in the 14th, 15th, and 16th centuries; now first printed from the unique manuscript in the library of Lord Ashburnham. Edited, with Introduction and Glossary, by LUCY TOULMIN SMITH. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

II. English Miracle Plays, Moralities, and Interludes. Specimens of the Pre-Elizabethan Drama. Edited, with an Introduction, Notes, and Glossary, by ALFRED W. POLLARD, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

III. The Pilgrimage to Parnassus, with the Two Parts of the Return from Parnassus. Three Comedies performed in St. John's College, Cambridge, A.D. MDXCVII-MDCI. Edited from MSS. by W. D. MACRAY, M.A., F.S.A. Medium 8vo, bevelled boards, gilt top, 8s. 6d.

IV. Marlowe's Edward II. With Introduction, Notes, &c. By O. W. TANCOCK, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 2s.; cloth, 3s.

V. Marlowe and Greene. Marlowe's Tragical History of Dr. Faustus, and Greene's Honourable History of Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay. Edited by A. W. WARD, Litt.D. *New and enlarged Edition.* Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.

SHAKESPEARE. Select Plays. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers.

Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., and W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L.

The Merchant of Venice. 1s. Macbeth. 1s. 6d.

Richard the Second. 1s. 6d. Hamlet. 2s.

Edited by W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L.

The Tempest. 1s. 6d. Midsummer Night's Dream. 1s. 6d.

As You Like It. 1s. 6d. Coriolanus. 2s. 6d.

Julius Caesar. 2s. Henry the Fifth. 2s.

Richard the Third. 2s. 6d. Twelfth Night. 1s. 6d.

King Lear. 1s. 6d. King John. 1s. 6d.

Henry the Eighth. 2s.

Shakespeare as a Dramatic Artist; a popular Illustration of the Principles of Scientific Criticism. By R. G. MOULTON, M.A. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Bacon.

I. Advancement of Learning. Edited by W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

II. The Essays. Edited, with Introduction and Illustrative Notes, by S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A. 8vo, half-bound, 12s. 6d.

MILTON.

I. Areopagitica. With Introduction and Notes. By JOHN W. HALES, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

II. Poems. Edited by R. C. BROWNE, M.A. In two Volumes. *New Edition, Revised.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

Sold separately, Vol. I, 4s.; Vol. II, 3s.

In paper covers:

Lycidas, 3d. L'Allegro, 3d. Comus, 6d.

Edited with Notes, by O. ELTON, B.A.

Lycidas, 6d. L'Allegro, 4d. Il Penseroso, 4d. Comus, 1s.

III. Paradise Lost. Book I. Edited by H. C. BEECHING, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.; in Parchment, 3s. 6d.

IV. Paradise Lost. Book II. Edited by E. K. CHAMBERS, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Books I and II combined, 2s. 6d.

V. Samson Agonistes. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by J. CHURTON COLLINS, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s.

Milton's Prosody. By ROBERT BRIDGES. Small 4to, 8s. 6d. *net.*

Bunyan.

I. *The Pilgrim's Progress, Grace Abounding, Relation of the Imprisonment of Mr. JOHN BUNYAN.* Edited, with Biographical Introduction and Notes, by E. VENABLES, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.; in Parchment, 4s. 6d.

II. *The Holy War, and The Heavenly Footman.* Edited by MABEL PEACOCK. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Fuller. *Wise Words and Quaint Counsels of Thomas Fuller.* Selected by AUGUSTUS JESSOPP, D.D. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Clarendon.

I. *History of the Rebellion. Book VI.* Edited by T. ARNOLD, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

II. *Characters and Episodes of the Great Rebellion.* Selections from Clarendon. Edited by G. BOYLE, M.A., Dean of Salisbury. Crown 8vo, gilt top, 7s. 6d. [See also p. 55.]

Dryden. *Select Poems.* (Stanzas on the Death of Oliver Cromwell; *Astraea Redux*; *Annus Mirabilis*; *Absalom and Achitophel*; *Religio Laici*; *The Hind and the Panther.*) Edited by W. D. CHRISTIE, M.A. *Fifth Edition.* Revised by C. H. FIRTH, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— *An Essay of Dramatic Poesy.* Edited, with Notes, by THOMAS ARNOLD, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Locke. *Conduct of the Understanding.* Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. FOWLER, D.D. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Addison. *Selections from Papers in the Spectator.* With Notes. By T. ARNOLD, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.; in Parchment, 6s.

Steele. *Selections from the Tatler, Spectator, and Guardian.* Edited by AUSTIN DOBSON. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.; in Parchment, 7s. 6d.

Swift. *Selections from his Works.* Edited, with Life, Introductions, and Notes, by HENRY CRAIK. Two Vols. Crown 8vo, cloth extra, 15s.

Each volume may be had separately, price 7s. 6d.

Pope. *Select Works.* With Introduction and Notes. By MARK PATTISON, B.D.

I. *Essay on Man.* *Sixth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

II. *Satires and Epistles.* *Fourth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Parnell. *The Hermit.* Paper covers, 2d.

Thomson. *The Seasons, and The Castle of Indolence.* Edited by J. LOGIE ROBERTSON, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

— *The Castle of Indolence.* By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Gray. *Selected Poems.* Edited by EDMUND GOSSE, M.A.
Extra fcap. 8vo. In Parchment, 3s.

— *The same*, together with *Supplementary Notes for Schools*, by FOSTER WATSON, M.A. Stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

— *Elegy, and Ode on Eton College.* Paper covers, 2d.

Chesterfield. *Lord Chesterfield's Worldly Wisdom. Selections from his Letters and Characters.* Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Goldsmith.

I. *Selected Poems.* Edited with *Introduction and Notes*, by AUSTIN DOBSON. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.; in Parchment, 4s. 6d.

II. *The Traveller.* Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. Stiff covers, 1s.

III. *The Deserted Village.* Paper covers, 2d.

JOHNSON.

I. *Rasselas.* Edited, with *Introduction and Notes*, by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. Extra fcap. 8vo, bevelled boards, 3s. 6d.; in Parchment, 4s. 6d.

II. *Rasselas; Lives of Dryden and Pope.* Edited by ALFRED MILNES, M.A. (London). Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.; or *Lives of DRYDEN and POPE only*, stiff covers, 2s. 6d.

III. *Life of Milton.* Edited by C. H. FIRTH, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

IV. *Wit and Wisdom of Samuel Johnson.* Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

V. *Vanity of Human Wishes.* With *Notes*, by E. J. PAYNE, M.A. Paper covers, 4d.

VI. *Letters of Samuel Johnson, LL.D.* Collected and Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. 2 vols. Medium 8vo, half-roan, 28s.

BOSWELL.

Boswell's Life of Johnson. With the *Journal of a Tour to the Hebrides.* Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L., Pembroke College. 6 vols. Medium 8vo, half-bound, 3l. 3s.

Cowper. Edited, with *Life, Introductions, and Notes*, by H. T. GRIFFITH, B.A.

I. *The Didactic Poems of 1782*, with *Selections from the Minor Pieces*, A.D. 1779–1783. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

II. *The Task*, with *Tirocinium*, and *Selections from the Minor Poems*, A.D. 1784–1799. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

- Burke.** Select Works. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. J. PAYNE, M.A.
- I. Thoughts on the Present Discontents; the two Speeches on America. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- II. Reflections on the French Revolution. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.
- III. Four Letters on the Proposals for Peace with the Regicide Directory of France. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.
- Burns.** Selected Poems. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Glossary, by J. LOGIE ROBERTSON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Keats.** Hyperion, Book I. With Notes by W. T. ARNOLD, B.A. Paper covers, 4d.
- Byron.** Childe Harold. With Introduction and Notes, by H. F. TOZER, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.; in Parchment, 5s.
- Scott.** Lady of the Lake. Edited, with Preface and Notes, by W. MINTO, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Lay of the Last Minstrel. By the same Editor. With Map. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.; in parchment, 3s. 6d.
- Lay of the Last Minstrel. Introduction and Canto I, with Preface and Notes, by the same Editor. 6d.
- Lord of the Isles. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by THOMAS BAYNE. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Marmion. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by T. BAYNE. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Shelley.** Adonais. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by W. M. ROSSETTI. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Campbell.** Gertrude of Wyoming. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by H. MACAULAY FITZGIBBON, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s.
- Wordsworth.** The White Doe of Rylstone, &c. Edited by WILLIAM KNIGHT, LL.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Shairp.** Aspects of Poetry; being Lectures delivered at Oxford, by J. C. SHAIRP, LL.D. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Palgrave.** The Treasury of Sacred Song. With Notes Explanatory and Biographical. By F. T. PALGRAVE, M.A. *Thirteenth Thousand.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

SECTION III.

EUROPEAN LANGUAGES, MEDIAEVAL AND
MODERN.

(1) FRENCH AND ITALIAN.

Brachet's Etymological Dictionary of the French Language.

Translated by G. W. KITCHIN, D.D. *Third Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

— **Historical Grammar of the French Language.** Trans-

lated by G. W. KITCHIN, D.D. *Seventh Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Saintsbury. Primer of French Literature. By GEORGE

SAINTSBURY, M.A. *Third Edition, Revised.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— **Short History of French Literature.** *Fourth Edition.*

Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— **Specimens of French Literature, from Villon to Hugo.**

Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 9s.

Song of Dermot and the Earl. An Old French Poem.

Edited, with Translation, Notes, &c., by G. H. ORPEN. Extra fcap. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Toynbee. Specimens of Old French (ix-xv centuries).

With Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. By PAGET TOYNBEE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 16s.

Beaumarchais' Le Barbier de Séville. Edited, with Intro-

duction and Notes, by AUSTIN DOBSON. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Corneille's Horace. Edited, with Introduction and Notes,

by GEORGE SAINTSBURY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Molière's Les Précieuses Ridicules. Edited, with Introduction

and Notes, by ANDREW LANG, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Musset's On ne badine pas avec l'Amour, and Fantasio. Edited,

with Prolegomena, Notes, &c., by W. H. POLLOCK. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Racine's Esther. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by
GEORGE SAINTSBURY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Voltaire's Mérope. Edited, with Introduction and Notes,
by GEORGE SAINTSBURY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

*** *The above six Plays may be had in ornamental case, and bound
in Imitation Parchment, price 12s. 6d.*

Molière. Le Misanthrope. Edited by H. W. G. MARKHEIM,
M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

MASSON'S FRENCH CLASSICS.

Edited by Gustave Masson, B.A.

Corneille's Cinna. With Notes, Glossary, &c. Extra fcap.
8vo, 2s.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

Louis XIV and his Contemporaries; as described in Extracts
from the best Memoirs of the Seventeenth Century. With English Notes,
Genealogical Tables, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Maistre, Xavier de, &c. Voyage autour de ma Chambre,
by XAVIER DE MAISTRE; *Ourika*, by MADAME DE DURAS; *Le Vieux
Tailleur*, by MM. ERCKMANN-CHATRIAN; *La Veillée de Vincennes*, by
ALFRED DE VIGNY; *Les Jumeaux de l'Hôtel Corneille*, by EDMOND
ABOUT; *Mésaventures d'un Écolier*, by RODOLPHE TÖPFFER. *Third
Edition, Revised.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— *Voyage autour de ma Chambre.* Limp, 1s. 6d.

Molière's Les Fourberies de Scapin, and Racine's Athalie.
With Voltaire's Life of Molière. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— *Les Fourberies de Scapin.* With Voltaire's Life of
Molière. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

— *Les Femmes Savantes.* With Notes, Glossary, &c.
Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

Racine's Andromaque, and Corneille's Le Menteur. With
LOUIS RACINE'S Life of his Father. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

**Regnard's Le Joueur, and Brueys and Palaprat's Le Gron-
deur.** Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Sévigné, Madamede, and her chief Contemporaries. Selections
from their Correspondence. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

- Blouët.** *L'Éloquence de la Chaire et de la Tribune Françaises.*
 Edited by PAUL BLOUËT, B.A. Vol. I. Sacred Oratory. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Gautier, Théophile.** *Scenes of Travel.* Selected and Edited
 by GEORGE SAINTSBURY, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
- Perrault's Popular Tales.** Edited from the Original Editions,
 with Introduction, &c., by A. LANG, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.
- Quinet's Lettres à sa Mère.** Selected and Edited by GEORGE
 SAINTSBURY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
- Sainte-Beuve.** *Selections from the Causeries du Lundi.*
 Edited by GEORGE SAINTSBURY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

-
- A Primer of Italian Literature.** By F. J. SNELL, M.A.
 Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Dante.** *Selections from the Inferno.* With Introduction
 and Notes. By H. B. COTTERILL, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- Tasso.** *La Gerusalemme Liberata.* Cantos i, ii. With In-
 troduction and Notes. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

(2) GERMAN AND GOTHIC.

- Max Müller.** *The German Classics, from the Fourth to the*
Nineteenth Century. With Biographical Notices, Translations into
 Modern German, and Notes. By F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A. A New
 Edition, Revised, Enlarged, and Adapted to WILHELM SCHERER'S
 'History of German Literature,' by F. LICHTENSTEIN. 2 vols. Crown
 8vo, 21s.
- Scherer.** *A History of German Literature* by WILHELM
 SCHERER. Translated from the Third German Edition by Mrs. F.
 C. CONYBEARE. Edited by F. MAX MÜLLER. 2 vols. 8vo, 21s.
 Or, separately, 10s. 6d. each volume.
- *A History of German Literature, from the Accession of*
Frederick the Great to the Death of Goethe. By the same. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Skeat.** *The Gospel of St. Mark in Gothic.* By W. W.
 SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 4s.
- Wright.** *An Old High German Primer.* With Grammar,
 Notes, and Glossary. By JOSEPH WRIGHT, Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- *A Middle High German Primer.* With Grammar,
 Notes, and Glossary. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- *A Primer of the Gothic Language.* With Grammar,
 Notes, and Glossary. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

LANGE'S GERMAN COURSE.

By HERMANN LANGE, Lecturer on French and German at the Manchester Technical School, and Lecturer on German at the Manchester Athenaeum.

- I. **Germans at Home**; a Practical Introduction to German Conversation, with an Appendix containing the Essentials of German Grammar. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- II. **German Manual**; a German Grammar, Reading Book, and a Handbook of German Conversation. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- III. **Grammar of the German Language.** 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- IV. **German Composition**; A Theoretical and Practical Guide to the Art of Translating English Prose into German. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 4s. 6d.

* * A Key to the above, price 5s. net.

German Spelling; A Synopsis of the Changes which it has undergone through the Government Regulations of 1880. 6d.

BUCHHEIM'S GERMAN CLASSICS.

Edited, with Biographical, Historical, and Critical Introductions, Arguments (to the Dramas), and Complete Commentaries, by C. A. BUCHHEIM, Phil. Doc., Professor in King's College, London.

Becker (the Historian). Friedrich der Grosse. Edited, with Notes, an Historical Introduction, and a Map. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Goethe:

- (a) Egmont. A Tragedy. *Fourth Edition.* 3s.
- (b) Iphigenie auf Tauris. A Drama. *Third Edition.* 3s.

Heine:

- (a) Prosa: being Selections from his Prose Writings. *Second Edition.* 4s. 6d.
- (b) Harzreise. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Lessing:

- (a) Nathan der Weise. A Dramatic Poem. *Second Edition.* 4s. 6d.
- (b) Minna von Barnhelm. A Comedy. *Fifth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Schiller:

- (a) Wilhelm Tell. A Drama. Large Edition. With Map. *Seventh Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- (b) Wilhelm Tell. School Edition. With Map. *Fourth Edition.* 2s.
- (c) Historische Skizzen. With Map. *Fifth Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- (d) Jungfrau von Orleans. 4s. 6d.
- (e) Maria Stuart. [*Immediately.*]

Modern German Reader. A Graduated Collection of Extracts from Modern German Authors:—

Part I. Prose Extracts. With English Notes, a Grammatical Appendix, and a complete Vocabulary. *Seventh Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Part II. Extracts in Prose and Poetry. With English Notes and an Index. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

German Poetry for Beginners. Edited with English Notes and a complete Vocabulary, by EMMA S. BUCHHEIM. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Elementary German Prose Composition. With Notes, Vocabulary, &c. By the same Editor. Cloth, 2s.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

Chamisso. Peter Schlemihl's Wundersame Geschichte. Edited with Notes and a complete Vocabulary, by EMMA S. BUCHHEIM. *Fourth Thousand.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Lessing. The Laokoon; with English Notes by A. HAMANN, Phil. Doc., M.A. Revised, with an Introduction, by L. E. UPCOTT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Niebuhr: Griechische Heroen-Geschichten (Tales of Greek Heroes). With English Notes and Vocabulary, by EMMA S. BUCHHEIM. *Second Revised Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.; stiff covers, 1s. 6d. *Edition A. Text in German Type. Edition B. Text in Roman Type.*

Riehl's Seines Vaters Sohn and Gespensterkampf. Edited with Notes by H. T. GERRANS. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Schiller's Wilhelm Tell. Translated into English Verse by E. MASSIE, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

(3) SCANDINAVIAN.

Cleasby and Vigfússon. An Icelandic-English Dictionary, based on the MS. collections of the late RICHARD CLEASBY. Enlarged and completed by G. VIGFÚSSON, M.A. With an Introduction, and Life of Richard Cleasby, by G. WEBBE DASENT, D.C.L. 4to, 3l. 7s.

Sargent. Grammar of the Dano-Norwegian Language. By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Sweet. Icelandic Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. By HENRY SWEET, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Vigfússon. Sturlunga Saga, including the Islendinga Saga of Lawman STURLA THORÐSSON and other works. Edited by GUÐBRAND VIGFÚSSON, M.A. In 2 vols. 8vo, 2l. 2s.

Vigfússon and Powell. Icelandic Prose Reader, with Notes, Grammar, and Glossary. By G. VIGFÚSSON, M.A., and F. YORK POWELL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— **Corpus Poeticum Boreale.** The Poetry of the Old Northern Tongue, from the Earliest Times to the Thirteenth Century. Edited, classified, and translated, with Introduction, Excursus, and Notes, by GUÐBRAND VIGFÚSSON, M.A., and F. YORK POWELL, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 2l. 2s.

SECTION IV.

CLASSICAL LANGUAGES.

(1) LATIN.

STANDARD WORKS AND EDITIONS.

King and Cookson. The Principles of Sound and Inflexion, as illustrated in the Greek and Latin Languages. By J. E. KING, M.A., and CHRISTOPHER COOKSON, M.A. 8vo, 18s.

Lewis and Short. A Latin Dictionary, founded on Andrews' edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary, revised, enlarged, and in great part rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D. 4to, 1l. 5s.

Merry. Selected Fragments of Roman Poetry. Edited with Introduction and Notes by W. W. MERRY, D.D. Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.

Nettleship. Contributions to Latin Lexicography. By HENRY NETTLESHIP, M.A. 8vo, 21s.

—— Lectures and Essays on Subjects connected with Latin Scholarship and Literature. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

—— The Roman Satura. 8vo, sewed, 1s.

—— Ancient Lives of Vergil. 8vo, sewed, 2s.

Papillon. Manual of Comparative Philology. By T. L. PAPILLON, M.A. *Third Edition.* Crown 8vo, 6s.

Pinder. Selections from the less known Latin Poets. By NORTH PINDER, M.A. 8vo, 15s.

Rushforth. Latin Historical Inscriptions, illustrating the History of the Early Empire. By G. McN. RUSHFORTH, M.A. 8vo, 10s. net.

Sellar. Roman Poets of the Republic. By W. Y. SELLAR, M.A. *Third Edition.* Crown 8vo, 10s.

—— Roman Poets of the Augustan Age. VIRGIL. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 9s.

—— ——— HORACE and the ELEGIAC POETS. With a Memoir of the Author by ANDREW LANG, M.A., and a Portrait. 8vo, cloth, 14s.

Wordsworth. Fragments and Specimens of Early Latin. With Introductions and Notes. By J. WORDSWORTH, D.D. 8vo, 18s.

- Avianus.** The Fables. Edited, with Prolegomena, Critical Apparatus, Commentary, &c., by R. ELLIS, M.A., LL.D. 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- Catulli Veronensis Liber.** Iterum recognovit, apparatus criticum prolegomena appendices addidit, ROBINSON ELLIS, A.M. 8vo, 16s.
- Catullus,** a Commentary on. By ROBINSON ELLIS, M.A. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 18s.
- Cicero.** De Oratore Libri Tres. With Introduction and Notes. By A. S. WILKINS, Litt.D. 8vo, 18s.
Also separately:—
 Book I, *Second Edition.* 7s. 6d. Book II, *Second Edition.* 5s. Book III, 6s.
- Philippic Orations. With Notes. By J. R. KING, M.A. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Select Letters. With English Introductions, Notes, and Appendices. By ALBERT WATSON, M.A. *Fourth Edition.* 8vo, 18s.
- Horace.** With a Commentary. Vol. I. The Odes, Carmen Seculare, and Epodes. By E. C. WICKHAM, M.A. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 12s.
- Vol. II. The Satires, Epistles, and De Arte Poetica. By the same Editor. 8vo, 12s.
- Livy,** Book I. With Introduction, Historical Examination, and Notes. By J. R. SEELEY, M.A. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 6s.
- Manilius.** Noctes Manilianae; sive Dissertationes in Astronomica Manilii. Accedunt Coniecturae in Germanici Aratea. Scripsit R. ELLIS. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Ovid.** P. Ovidii Nasonis Ibis. Ex Novis Codicibus edidit, Scholia Vetera Commentarium cum Prolegomenis Appendice Indice addidit, R. ELLIS, A.M. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- P. Ovidi Nasonis Tristium Libri V. Recensuit S. G. OWEN, A.M. 8vo, 16s.
- Persius.** The Satires. With a Translation and Commentary. By JOHN CONINGTON, M.A. Edited by HENRY NETTLESHIP, M.A. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- Plautus.** Rudens. Edited, with Critical and Explanatory Notes, by E. A. SONNENSCHN, M.A. 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- Bentley's Plautine Emendations. From his copy of Gronovius. By E. A. SONNENSCHN, M.A. (Anecdota Oxon.) 2s. 6d.
- Quintilian.** Institutionis Oratoriae Liber X. Edited by W. PETERSON, M.A. 8vo, 12s. 6d.
- Scriptores Latini rei Metricae.** Ed. T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. 8vo, 5s.

- Tacitus.** The Annals. Books I–VI. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by H. FURNEAUX, M.A. 8vo, 18s.
- Books XI–XVI. By the same Editor. 8vo, 20s.
- *Dialogus De Oratoribus.* A Revised Text, with Introductory Essays and Critical and Explanatory Notes. By W. PETERSON, M.A., LL.D. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

LATIN EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

GRAMMARS, EXERCISE BOOKS, &c.

ALLEN.

Rudimenta Latina. Comprising Accidence, and Exercises of a very Elementary Character, for the use of Beginners. By JOHN BARROW ALLEN, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

An Elementary Latin Grammar. By the same Author. *Ninety-Seventh Thousand.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

A First Latin Exercise Book. By the same Author. *Seventh Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

A Second Latin Exercise Book. By the same Author. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

* * A Key to First and Second Latin Exercise Books, in one volume, price 5s. *net.* Supplied to *Teachers only*, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

An Introduction to Latin Syntax. By W. S. GIBSON, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

First Latin Reader. By T. J. NUNNS, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

A Latin Prose Primer. By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Passages for Translation into Latin. Selected by J. Y. SARGENT, M.A. *Seventh Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

* * A Key to the above, price 5s. *net.* Supplied to *Teachers only*, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

Latin Prose Composition. By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., LL.D. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo.

Vol. I. *Syntax, Exercises with Notes, &c.* 4s. 6d.

Vol. II. *Passages of Graduated Difficulty for Translation into Latin, together with an Introduction on Continuous Prose.* 4s. 6d.

* * A Key to Vol. I of the above, price 5s. *net.* Supplied to *Teachers only*, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

Hints and Helps for Latin Elegiacs. By H. LEE-WARNER, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

* * A Key to the above, price 4s. 6d. *net.* Supplied to Teachers only, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

Reddenda Minora; or, Easy Passages, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. For the use of Lower Forms. Composed and selected by C. S. JERRAM, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Anglice Reddenda; or, Extracts, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. *Fourth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— *Second Series.* By the same Editor. 3s.

Models and Exercises in Unseen Translation. By H. F. FOX, M.A., and T. M. BROMLEY, M.A. *Revised Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

* * A Key to Passages quoted in the above, price 6d. Supplied to Teachers only, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

An Elementary Latin Dictionary. By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D. Square 8vo, 7s. 6d.

A School Latin Dictionary. By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D. Small 4to, 18s.

An Introduction to the Comparative Grammar of Greek and Latin. By J. E. KING, M.A., and C. COOKSON, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

LATIN CLASSICS FOR SCHOOLS.

Caesar. The Commentaries (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A.

The Gallic War. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo.

— Books I and II, 2s.; III–V, 2s. 6d.; VI–VIII, 3s. 6d.

— Books I–III, *stiff cover*, 2s.

The Civil War. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Catulli Veronensis Carmina Selecta, secundum recognitionem ROBINSON ELLIS, A.M. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

CICERO. Selection of Interesting and Descriptive Passages. With Notes. By HENRY WALFORD, M.A. In three Parts. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Each Part separately, limp, 1s. 6d.

Part I. Anecdotes from Grecian and Roman History.

Part II. Omens and Dreams: Beauties of Nature.

Part III. Rome's Rule of her Provinces.

-
- Cicero.** *De Amicitia.* With Introduction and Notes. By ST. GEORGE STOCK, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- *De Senectute.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by L. HUXLEY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
- *pro Cluentio.* With Introduction and Notes. By W. RAMSAY, M.A. Edited by G. G. RAMSAY, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- *pro Marcello, pro Ligario, pro Rege Deiotaro.* With Introduction and Notes. By W. Y. FAUSSET, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- *pro Milone.* With Notes, &c. By A. B. POYNTON, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- *pro Roscio.* With Notes. By ST. GEORGE STOCK, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- *Select Orations (for Schools). In Verrem Actio Prima. De Imperio Gn. Pompeii. Pro Archia. Philippica IX.* With Introduction and Notes by J. R. KING, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- *In Q. Caecilium Divinatio, and In C. Verrem Actio Prima.* With Introduction and Notes, by J. R. KING, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.
- *Speeches against Catilina.* With Introduction and Notes, by E. A. UPCOTT, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- *Selected Letters (for Schools).* With Notes. By the late C. E. PRICHARD, M.A., and E. R. BERNARD, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- *Select Letters. Text.* By ALBERT WATSON, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s.
- Cornelius Nepos.** With Notes. By OSCAR BROWNING, M.A. *Third Edition.* Revised by W. R. INGE, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- Horace.** With a Commentary. (In a size suitable for the use of Schools.) Vol. I. The Odes, Carmen Seculare, and Epodes. By E. C. WICKHAM, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.
- *Odes, Book I.* By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
- *Selected Odes.* With Notes for the use of a Fifth Form. By E. C. WICKHAM, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
-

- Juvenal.** Thirteen Satires. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by C. H. PEARSON, M.A., and HERBERT A. STRONG, M.A., LL.D. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 9s.
- Livy.** Books V–VII. With Introduction and Notes. By A. R. CLUER, B.A. *Second Edition.* Revised by P. E. MATHESON, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.
- Book V. By the same Editors. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Book VII. By the same Editors. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
- Books XXI–XXIII. With Introduction and Notes. By M. T. TATHAM, M.A. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.
- Book XXI. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Book XXII. With Introduction, Notes, and Maps. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Selections (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By H. LEE-WARNER, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. In Parts, limp, each 1s. 6d.
- Part I. The Caudine Disaster.
- Part II. Hannibal's Campaign in Italy.
- Part III. The Macedonian War.
- Ovid.** Selections for the use of Schools. With Introductions and Notes, and an Appendix on the Roman Calendar. By W. RAMSAY, M.A. Edited by G. G. RAMSAY, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.
- Tristia. Book I. The Text revised, with an Introduction and Notes. By S. G. OWEN, B.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Tristia. Book III. With Introduction and Notes. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.
- Plautus.** Captivi. Edited by WALLACE M. LINDSAY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Trinummus. With Notes and Introductions. (Intended for the Higher Forms of Public Schools.) By C. E. FREEMAN, M.A., and A. SLOMAN, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- Pliny.** Selected Letters (for Schools). With Notes. By C. E. PRICHARD, M.A., and E. R. BERNARD, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- Quintilian.** Institutionis Oratoriae. Liber X. By W. PETERSON, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Sallust.** With Introduction and Notes. By W. W. CAPES, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

-
- Tacitus.** The Annals. Books I-IV. Edited, with Introduction and Notes (for the use of Schools and Junior Students), by H. FURNEAUX, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.
- The Annals. Book I. With Introduction and Notes, by the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 2s.
- Terence.** Andria. With Notes and Introductions. By C. E. FREEMAN, M.A., and A. SLOMAN, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- Adelphi. With Notes and Introductions. (Intended for the Higher Forms of Public Schools.) By A. SLOMAN, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- Phormio. With Notes and Introductions. By A. SLOMAN, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- Tibullus and Propertius.** Selections. Edited by G. G. RAMSAY, M.A. (In one or two parts.) Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.
- Virgil.** With an Introduction and Notes. By T. L. PAPILLON, M.A., and A. E. HAIGH, M.A. 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 12s.
- Aeneid. By the same Editors. *In Four Parts.* Crown 8vo, 3s. each.
- Bucolics and Georgics. By the same Editors. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Bucolics. Edited by C. S. JERRAM, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Georgics, Books I, II. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Georgics, Books III, IV. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Aeneid I. With Introduction and Notes. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.
- Aeneid IX. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. E. HAIGH, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d. In two Parts, 2s.

(2) GREEK.

STANDARD WORKS AND EDITIONS.

- Allen.** Notes on Abbreviations in Greek Manuscripts. By T. W. ALLEN, M.A., Queen's College, Oxford. Royal 8vo, 5s.
- Chandler.** A Practical Introduction to Greek Accentuation, by H. W. CHANDLER, M.A. *Second Edition.* 10s. 6d.

-
- Haigh.** *The Attic Theatre. A Description of the Stage and Theatre of the Athenians, and of the Dramatic Performances at Athens.* By A. E. HAIGH, M.A. 8vo, 12s. 6d.
- Head.** *Historia Numorum: A Manual of Greek Numismatics.* By BARCLAY V. HEAD, D.C.L. Royal 8vo, half-bound, 2l. 2s.
- Hicks.** *A Manual of Greek Historical Inscriptions.* By E. L. HICKS, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- King and Cookson.** *The Principles of Sound and Inflexion, as illustrated in the Greek and Latin Languages.* By J. E. KING, M.A., and CHRISTOPHER COOKSON, M.A. 8vo, 18s.
- Liddell and Scott.** *A Greek-English Lexicon,* by H. G. LIDDELL, D.D., and ROBERT SCOTT, D.D. *Seventh Edition, Revised and Augmented throughout.* 4to, 1l. 16s.
- Papillon.** *Manual of Comparative Philology.* By T. L. PAPILLON, M.A. *Third Edition.* Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Paton and Hicks.** *The Inscriptions of Cos.* By W. R. PATON and E. L. HICKS. Royal 8vo, linen, with Map, 28s.
- Veitch.** *Greek Verbs, Irregular and Defective.* By W. VEITCH, LL.D. *Fourth Edition.* Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Vocabulary,** a copious Greek-English, compiled from the best authorities. 24mo, 3s.
-
- Aeschinem et Isocratem,** *Scholia Graeca in.* Edidit G. DINDORFIUS. 1852. 8vo, 4s.
- Aeschines.** See under *Oratores Attici*, and *Demosthenes*.
- Aeschyli quae supersunt in Codice Laurentiano quoad effici potuit et ad cognitionem necesse est visum typis descripta** edidit R. MERKEL. Small folio, 1l. 1s.
- Aeschylus:** *Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione* GUIL. DINDORFII. *Second Edition.* 1851. 8vo, 5s. 6d.
- *Annotationes* GUIL. DINDORFII. *Partes II.* 1841. 8vo, 10s.
- Anecdota Graeca Oxoniensia.** Edidit J. A. CRAMER, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 1835. 8vo, 1l. 2s.
- *Graeca e Codd. MSS. Bibliothecae Regiae Parisiensis.* Edidit J. A. CRAMER, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 1839. 8vo, 1l. 2s.
- Apsinis et Longini Rhetorica.** E Codicibus MSS. recensuit JOH. BAKIUS. 1849. 8vo, 3s.
-

- Aristophanes.** A Complete Concordance to the Comedies and Fragments. By HENRY DUNBAR, M.D. 4to, 1*l.* 1*s.*
- J. Caravellae Index in Aristophanem. 8vo, 3*s.*
- Comoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione GUIL. DINDORFII. Tomi II. 1835. 8vo, 11*s.*
- Annotationes GUIL. DINDORFII. Partes II. 8vo, 11*s.*
- Scholia Graeca ex Codicibus aucta et emendata a GUIL. DINDORFIO. Partes III. 1838. 8vo, 1*l.*

ARISTOTLE.

- Ex recensione IMMANUELIS BEKKERI. Accedunt Indices Sylburgiani. Tomi XI. 1837. 8vo, 2*l.* 10*s.*
- The volumes (except vols. I and IX) may be had separately, price 5*s.* 6*d.* each.
- **Ethica Nicomachea**, recognovit brevique Adnotatione critica instruxit I. BYWATER. 8vo, 6*s.*
- **The same**, on 4to paper, for Marginal Notes, 10*s.* 6*d.*
- Contributions to the Textual Criticism of Aristotle's **Nicomachean Ethics**. By INGRAM BYWATER. Stiff cover, 2*s.* 6*d.*
- Notes on the Nicomachean Ethics of Aristotle. By J. A. STEWART, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 32*s.*
- **The Politics**, with Introductions, Notes, &c., by W. L. NEWMAN, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford. Vols. I and II. Medium 8vo, 28*s.*
- **The Politics**, translated into English, with Introduction, Marginal Analysis, Notes, and Indices, by B. JOWETT, M.A. Medium 8vo. 2 vols. 21*s.*
- **Aristotelian Studies**. I. On the Structure of the Seventh Book of the Nicomachean Ethics. By J. C. WILSON, M.A. 8vo, stiff covers, 5*s.*
- The English Manuscripts of the **Nicomachean Ethics**, described in relation to Bekker's Manuscripts and other Sources. By J. A. STEWART, M.A. (Anecdota Oxon.) Small 4to, 3*s.* 6*d.*
- On the History of the process by which the **Aristotelian Writings** arrived at their present form. By R. SHUTE, M.A. 8vo, 7*s.* 6*d.*
- **Physics**. Book VII. Collation of various MSS.; with Introduction by R. SHUTE, M.A. (Anecdota Oxon.) Small 4to, 2*s.*

Choerobosci Dictata in Theodosii Canones, necnon Epimerismi in Psalmos. E Codicibus MSS. edidit THOMAS GAISFORD, S.T.P. Tomi III. 8vo, 15s.

Demosthenes. Ex recensione GUIL. DINDORFII. Tomi IX. 8vo, 2l. 6s.

Separately:—

Textus, 1l. 1s.

Annotationes, 15s.

Scholia, 10s.

Demosthenes and Aeschines. The Orations of Demosthenes and Aeschines on the Crown. With Introductory Essays and Notes. By G. A. SIMCOX, M.A., and W. H. SIMCOX, M.A. 8vo, 12s.

Euripides. Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione GUIL. DINDORFII. Tomi II. 1833. 8vo, 10s.

— Annotationes GUIL. DINDORFII. Partes II. 8vo, 10s.

— Scholia Graeca, ex Codicibus aucta et emendata a GUIL. DINDORFIO. Tomi IV. 8vo, 1l. 16s.

— Alcestitis, ex recensione G. DINDORFII. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Harpocratonis Lexicon. Ex recensione G. DINDORFII. Tomi II. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Hephaestionis Enchiridion, Terentianus Maurus, Proclus, &c. Edidit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. Tomi II. 10s.

Heracliti Ephesii Reliquiae. Recensuit I. BYWATER, M.A. Appendicis loco additae sunt Diogenis Laertii Vita Heracliti, Particulae Hippocratei De Diaeta Lib. I, Epistolae Heracliteae. 8vo, 6s.

Herodotus. Books V and VI. Terpsichore and Erato. Edited, with Notes and Appendices, by EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., LL.D. 8vo, with two Maps, 10s. 6d.

HOMER.

— A Complete Concordance to the Odyssey and Hymns of Homer; to which is added a Concordance to the Parallel Passages in the Iliad, Odyssey, and Hymns. By HENRY DUNBAR, M.D. 4to, 1l. 1s.

— Seberi Index in Homerum. 1780. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

— A Grammar of the Homeric Dialect. By D. B. MONRO, M.A. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 14s.

— *Ilias*, cum brevi Annotatione C. G. HEYNII. Accedunt Scholia minora. Tomi II. 8vo, 15s.

HOMER (*continued*).

- **Ilias**, ex rec. GUIL. DINDORFII. 8vo, 5s. 6d.
- **Scholia Graeca in Iliadem**. Edited by W. DINDORF, after a new collation of the Venetian MSS. by D. B. MONRO, M.A., Provost of Oriel College. 4 vols. 8vo, 2l. 10s.
- **Scholia Graeca in Iliadem Townleyana**. Recensuit ERNESTUS MAASS. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 16s.
- **Odyssea**, ex rec. G. DINDORFII. 8vo, 5s. 6d.
- **Scholia Graeca in Odysseam**. Edidit GUIL. DINDORFIUS. Tomi II. 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- **Odyssey**. Books I–XII. Edited with English Notes, Appendices, &c. By W. W. MERRY, D.D., and the late JAMES RIDDELL, M.A. *Second Edition*. 8vo, 16s.
- **Hymni Homerici**. Codicibus denuo collatis recensuit ALFREDUS GOODWIN. Small folio. With four Plates. 21s. net.

Oratores Attici, ex recensione BEKKERI:

- I. Antiphon, Andocides, et Lysias. 8vo, 7s.
- II. Isocrates. 8vo, 7s.
- III. Isaeus, Aeschines, Lycurgus, Dinarchus, &c. 8vo, 7s.

Paroemiographi Graeci, quorum pars nunc primum ex Codd. MSS. vulgatur. Edidit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

PLATO.

- **Apology**, with a revised Text and English Notes, and a Digest of Platonic Idioms, by JAMES RIDDELL, M.A. 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- **Philebus**, with a revised Text and English Notes, by EDWARD POSTE, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- **Sophistes and Politicus**, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. CAMPBELL, M.A. 8vo, 18s.
- **Theaetetus**, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. CAMPBELL, M.A. *Second Edition*. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- **The Dialogues**, translated into English, with Analyses and Introductions, by B. JOWETT, M.A. *Third Edition*. 5 vols. medium 8vo, 4l. 4s. In half-morocco, 5l.
- **The Republic**, translated into English, with Analysis and Introduction, by B. JOWETT, M.A. *Third Edition*. Medium 8vo, 12s. 6d.; half-roan, 14s.
- **Index to Plato**. Compiled for Prof. Jowett's Translation of the Dialogues. By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A. 8vo, paper covers, 2s. 6d.

Plotinus. Edidit F. CREUZER. Tomi III. 4to, 1*l.* 8*s.*

Plutarchi Moralia, id est, Opera, exceptis Vitis, reliqua.
Edidit DANIEL WYTTENBACH. Accedit Index Graecitatis. Tomi VIII.
Partes XV. 1795-1830. 8vo, cloth, 3*l.* 10*s.*

Polybius. Selections. Edited by J. L. STRACHAN-DAVIDSON,
M.A. With Maps. Medium 8vo, buckram, 2*1s.*

SOPHOCLES.

— The Plays and Fragments. With English Notes and
Introductions, by LEWIS CAMPBELL, M.A. 2 vols.

Vol. I. Oedipus Tyrannus. Oedipus Coloneus. Antigone. 8vo, 16*s.*

Vol. II. Ajax. Electra. Trachiniae. Philoctetes. Fragments. 8vo, 16*s.*

— Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione et cum com-
mentariis GUIL. DINDORFII. *Third Edition.* 2 vols. Fcap. 8vo, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Each Play separately, limp, 2*s.* 6*d.*

— Tragoediae et Fragmenta cum Annotationibus GUIL.
DINDORFII. Tomi II. 8vo, 10*s.*

The Text, Vol. I, 5*s.* 6*d.* The Notes, Vol. II, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Stobaei Florilegium. Ad MSS. fidem emendavit et sup-
plevit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 8vo, 1*l.*

— Eclogarum Physicarum et Ethicarum libri duo. Ac-
cedit Hieroclis Commentarius in aurea carmina Pythagoreorum. Ad
MSS. Codd. recensuit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. Tomi II. 8vo, 11*s.*

STRABO, Selections from. With an Introduction on Strabo's
Life and Works. By H. F. TOZER, M.A., F.R.G.S. With Maps and
Plans. 8vo, cloth, 12*s.*

Thucydides. Translated into English, with Introduction,
Marginal Analysis, Notes, and Indices. By B. JOWETT, M.A., Regius
Professor of Greek. 2 vols. Medium 8vo, 1*l.* 12*s.*

XENOPHON. Ex rec. et cum annotatt. L. DINDORFII.

I. Historia Graeca. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 10*s.* 6*d.*

II. Expeditio Cyri. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 10*s.* 6*d.*

III. Institutio Cyri. 8vo, 10*s.* 6*d.*

IV. Memorabilia Socratis. 8vo, 7*s.* 6*d.*

V. Opuscula Politica Equestria et Venatica cum Arriani
Libello de Venatione. 8vo, 10*s.* 6*d.*

GREEK EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

GRAMMARS, EXERCISE BOOKS, &c.

Chandler. The Elements of Greek Accentuation: abridged from his larger work by H. W. CHANDLER, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

King and Cookson. An Introduction to the Comparative Grammar of Greek and Latin. By J. E. KING, M.A., and C. COOKSON, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

Liddell and Scott. An Intermediate Greek-English Lexicon, founded upon the Seventh Edition of LIDDELL and SCOTT'S Greek Lexicon. Small 4to, 12s. 6d.

Liddell and Scott. A Greek-English Lexicon, abridged from LIDDELL and SCOTT'S 4to edition. Square 12mo, 7s. 6d.

Miller. A Greek Testament Primer. An Easy Grammar and Reading Book for the use of Students beginning Greek. By the Rev. E. MILLER, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Moulton. The Ancient Classical Drama. A Study in Literary Evolution. Intended for Readers in English and in the Original. By R. G. MOULTON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Wordsworth. A Greek Primer, for the use of beginners in that Language. By the Right Rev. CHARLES WORDSWORTH, D.C.L. *Seventy-seventh Thousand.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

— *Græcae Grammaticæ Rudimenta in usum Scholarum.* Auctore CAROLO WORDSWORTH, D.C.L. *Nineteenth Edition.* 12mo, 4s.

A Primer of Greek Prose Composition. By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

* * A Key to the above, price 5s. *net.* Supplied to Teachers only, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

Passages for Translation into Greek Prose. By J. YOUNG SARGENT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Exemplaria Græca. Being Greek Renderings of Selected 'Passages for Translation into Greek Prose.' By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Models and Materials for Greek Iambic Verse. By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Graece Reddenda. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Reddenda Minora; or, Easy Passages, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Anglice Reddenda; or, Extracts, Latin and Greek, for Unseen Translation. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Anglice Reddenda. *Second Series.* By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Models and Exercises in Unseen Translation. By H. F. FOX, M.A., and T. M. BROMLEY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

* * A Key to Passages quoted in the above, price 6d. Supplied to Teachers only, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

Golden Treasury of Ancient Greek Poetry. By R. S. WRIGHT, M.A. *Second Edition.* Revised by EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., LL.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Golden Treasury of Greek Prose, being a Collection of the finest passages in the principal Greek Prose Writers, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. WRIGHT, M.A., and J. E. L. SHADWELL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

GREEK READERS.

Easy Greek Reader. By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A. In one or two Parts. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

First Greek Reader. By W. G. RUSHBROOKE, M.L. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Second Greek Reader. By A. M. BELL, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

Specimens of Greek Dialects; being a Fourth Greek Reader. With Introductions, &c. By W. W. MERRY, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Selections from Homer and the Greek Dramatists; being a Fifth Greek Reader. With Explanatory Notes and Introductions to the Study of Greek Epic and Dramatic Poetry. By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

GREEK CLASSICS FOR SCHOOLS.

Aeschylus. In Single Plays. Extra fcap. 8vo.

- I. Agamemnon. With Introduction and Notes, by ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A. *Fourth Edition.* 3s.
- II. Choephoroi. By the same Editor. 3s.
- III. Eumenides. By the same Editor. *New Edition.* 3s.
- IV. Prometheus Bound. With Introduction and Notes, by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s.

Aristophanes. In Single Plays. Edited, with English Notes, Introductions, &c., by W. W. MERRY, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo.

- I. The Acharnians. *Third Edition,* 3s.
- II. The Clouds. *Third Edition,* 3s.
- III. The Frogs. *Third Edition,* 3s.
- IV. The Knights. *Second Edition,* 3s.
- V. The Birds. 3s. 6d.
- VI. The Wasps. 3s. 6d.

Cebes. Tabula. With Introduction and Notes. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Demosthenes. Orations against Philip. With Introduction and Notes, by EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., and P. E. MATHESON, M.A.

- Vol. I. Philippic I. Olynthiacs I-III. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.
- Vol. II. De Pace, Philippic II, De Chersoneso, Philippic III. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Euripides. In Single Plays. Edited with Introduction and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo.

- I. Alcestis. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.
- II. Cyclops. By W. E. LONG, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- III. Hecuba. By C. H. RUSSELL, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- IV. Helena. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. 3s.
- V. Heracleidae. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. 3s.
- VI. Iphigenia in Tauris. By the same Editor. 3s.
- VII. Medea. By C. B. HEBERDEN, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s.
- VIII. Bacchae. By A. H. CRUICKSHANK, M.A. 3s. 6d.

Herodotus. Book IX. Edited, with Notes, by EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

— Selections. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by W. W. MERRY, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Homer.

I. **For Beginners.** Iliad, Book III. By M. T. TATHAM, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

II. Iliad, Books I–XII. With an Introduction and a brief Homeric Grammar, and Notes. By D. B. MONRO, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.

III. Iliad, Books XIII–XXIV. With Notes. By the same Editor. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.

IV. Iliad, Book I. By the same Editor. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

V. Iliad, Book XXI. With Introduction and Notes. By HERBERT HAILSTONE, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

VI. Odyssey, Books I–XII. By W. W. MERRY, D.D. *Fiftieth Thousand.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

Books I and II, separately, each 1s. 6d.

Books VI and VII. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

VII. Odyssey, Books VII–XII. By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

VIII. Odyssey, Books XIII–XXIV. By the same Editor. *Thirteenth Thousand.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

Lucian. *Vera Historia.* By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Lysias. *Epitaphios.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by F. J. SNELL, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

Plato. With Introduction and Notes. By ST. GEORGE STOCK, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo.

The Apology. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d. Crito, 2s.

Meno. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

— Selections. With Introductions and Notes. By JOHN PURVES, M.A., and Preface by B. JOWETT, M.A. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

Plutarch. *Lives of the Gracchi.* Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Indices, by G. E. UNDERHILL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Sophocles. Edited, with Introductions and English Notes, by LEWIS CAMPBELL, M.A., and EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A. *New Edition.* 2 vols. Extra fcap. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Sold separately: Vol. I, Text, 4s. 6d.; Vol. II, Explanatory Notes, 6s.

Or in single Plays:—

Oedipus Coloneus, Antigone, 1s. 9d. each; Oedipus Tyrannus, Ajax, Electra, Trachiniae, Philoctetes, 2s. each.

— Oedipus Rex: Dindorf's Text, with Notes by the present Bishop of St. David's. Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.

Theocritus (for Schools). With English Notes. By H. KYNASTON, D.D. (late SNOW). *Fifth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

XENOPHON. Easy Selections (for Junior Classes). With a Vocabulary, Notes, and Map. By J. S. PHILLPOTTS, B.C.L., and C. S. JERRAM, M.A. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— Selections (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By J. S. PHILLPOTTS, B.C.L. *Fourth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— Anabasis, Book I. Edited for the use of Junior Classes and Private Students. With Introduction, Notes, &c. By J. MARSHALL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Anabasis, Book II. With Notes and Map. By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— Anabasis, Book III. With Introduction, Analysis, Notes, &c. By J. MARSHALL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Anabasis, Book IV. By J. MARSHALL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— Vocabulary to the Anabasis. By J. MARSHALL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.

— Cyropaedia, Book I. With Introduction and Notes. By C. BIGG, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.

— Cyropaedia, Books IV and V. With Introduction and Notes. By C. BIGG, D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

— Hellenica, Books I, II. With Introduction and Notes. By G. E. UNDERHILL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.

— Memorabilia. Edited with Introduction and Notes, &c., by J. MARSHALL, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.

SECTION V.

ORIENTAL LANGUAGES*.

THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.

TRANSLATED BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS, AND EDITED BY
F. MAX MÜLLER.

First Series, Vols. I—XXIV. Demy 8vo, cloth.

Vol. I. The Upanishads. Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER.
Part I. 10s. 6d.

Vol. II. The Sacred Laws of the Âryas, as taught in the
Schools of Âpastamba, Gautama, Vâsishtha, and Baudhâyana. Trans-
lated by Prof. GEORG BÜHLER. Part I. 10s. 6d.

Vol. III. The Sacred Books of China. The Texts of Con-
fucianism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. Part I. 12s. 6d.

Vol. IV. The Zend-Avesta. Part I. The Vendidad. Trans-
lated by JAMES DARMESTETER. 10s. 6d.

Vol. V. The Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. WEST.
Part I. 12s. 6d.

Vols. VI and IX. The Qur'ân. Translated by E. H.
PALMER. 21s.

Vol. VII. The Institutes of Vishnu. Translated by JULIUS
JOLLY. 10s. 6d.

Vol. VIII. The Bhagavadgîtâ, with The Sanatsugâtîya, and
The Anugîtâ. Translated by KÂSHINÂTH TRIMBAK TELANG. 10s. 6d.

Vol. X. The Dhammapada, translated from Pâli by F. MAX
MÜLLER; and The Sutta-Nipâta, translated from Pâli by V. FAUSBÖLL;
being Canonical Books of the Buddhists. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XI. Buddhist Suttas. Translated from Pâli by T. W.
RHYS DAVIDS. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XII. The Satapatha-Brâhmana, according to the Text
of the Mâdhyandina School. Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. Part I.
Books I and II. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XIII. Vinaya Texts. Translated from the Pâli by
T. W. RHYS DAVIDS and HERMANN OLDENBERG. Part I. 10s. 6d.

* See also ANECDOTA OXON., Series II, III, pp. 41-42, below.

The Sacred Books of the East (*continued*).

- Vol. XIV. The Sacred Laws of the Âryas, as taught in the Schools of Âpastamba, Gautama, Vâsishtha and Baudhâyana. Translated by GEORG BÜHLER. Part II. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XV. The Upanishads. Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. Part II. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XVI. The Sacred Books of China. The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. Part II. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XVII. Vinaya Texts. Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS and HERMANN OLDENBERG. Part II. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XVIII. Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. WEST. Part II. 12s. 6d.
- Vol. XIX. The Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king. A Life of Buddha by Asvaghosha Bodhisattva, translated from Sanskrit into Chinese by Dharmaraksha, A.D. 420, and from Chinese into English by SAMUEL BEAL. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XX. Vinaya Texts. Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS and HERMANN OLDENBERG. Part III. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XXI. The Saddharma-puṇḍarîka; or, the Lotus of the True Law. Translated by H. KERN. 12s. 6d.
- Vol. XXII. Gaina-Sûtras. Translated from Prâkrit by HERMANN JACOBI. Part I. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XXIII. The Zend-Avesta. Part II. Translated by JAMES DARMESTETER. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. XXIV. Pahlavi Texts. Translated by E. W. WEST. Part III. 10s. 6d.

Second Series.

- Vol. XXV. Manu. Translated by GEORG BÜHLER. 21s.
- Vol. XXVI. The Satapatha-Brâhmana. Translated by JULIUS EGDELING. Part II. 12s. 6d.
- Vols. XXVII and XXVIII. The Sacred Books of China. The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. Parts III and IV. 25s.
- Vols. XXIX and XXX. The Grihya-Sûtras, Rules of Vedic Domestic Ceremonies. Translated by HERMANN OLDENBERG.
Part I (Vol. XXIX). 12s. 6d.
Part II (Vol. XXX). 12s. 6d.

The Sacred Books of the East (*continued*).

Vol. XXXI. The Zend-Avesta. Part III. Translated by
L. H. MILLS. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XXXII. Vedic Hymns. Translated by F. MAX
MÜLLER. Part I. 18s. 6d.

Vol. XXXIII. Nârada, and some Minor Law-books.
Translated by JULIUS JOLLY. 10s. 6d.

Vol. XXXIV. The Vedânta-Sûtras, with Sankara's Com-
mentary. Translated by G. THIBAUT. 12s. 6d.

Vol. XXXV. The Questions of King Milinda. Part I.
Translated from the Pâli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS. 10s. 6d.

Vols. XXXIX and XL. The Sacred Books of China. The
Texts of Tâoism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. 21s.

Vol. XXXVII. The Contents of the Nasks, as stated in the
Eighth and Ninth Books of the Dinkard. Part I. Translated by
E. W. WEST. 15s.

Vol. XLI. Satapatha-Brâhmana. Part III. Translated by
JULIUS EGGELING. 12s. 6d.

In the Press :—

Vol. XXXVI. The Questions of King Milinda. Part II.
Translated by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS.

Vol. XXXVIII. The Vedânta-Sûtras. Part II.

Vol. XLII. The Buddha-karita. Translated by E. B. COWELL.
The Sukhâvatî-vyûha. Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER.

ARABIC. A Practical Arabic Grammar. Compiled by A. O.
GREEN, Brigade Major, Royal Engineers.

Part I. *Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Part II. *Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged.* 10s. 6d.

BENGALI. Grammar of the Bengali Language; Literary
and Colloquial. By JOHN BEAMES. Crown 8vo, cloth, 4s. 6d.

CHINESE. The Chinese Classics: with a Translation,
Critical and Exegetical Notes, Prolegomena, and Copious Indexes. By
JAMES LEGGE, D.D., LL.D. In Eight Volumes. Royal 8vo.

Vol. I. Confucian Analects, &c. *New Edition.* 1l. 10s.

Vol. II. The Works of Mencius. 1l. 10s.

Vol. III. The Shoo-King; or, The Book of Historical
Documents. In two Parts. 1l. 10s. each.

Vol. IV. The She-King; or, The Book of Poetry. In
two Parts. 1l. 10s. each.

Vol. V. The Ch'un Ts'ew, with the Tso Chuen. In two
Parts. 1l. 10s. each.

- CHINESE.** The Nestorian Monument of Hsî-an Fû in Shen-hsi, China, relating to the Diffusion of Christianity in China in the Seventh and Eighth Centuries. By JAMES LEGGE, D.D. 2s. 6d.
- Record of Buddhistic Kingdoms; being an Account by the Chinese Monk FÂ-HIEN of his travels in India and Ceylon (A.D. 399-414). Translated and annotated, with a Korean recension of the Chinese Text, by JAMES LEGGE, D.D. Crown 4to, boards, 10s. 6d.
- Catalogue of the Chinese Translation of the Buddhist Tripitaka, the Sacred Canon of the Buddhists in China and Japan. Compiled by BUNYIU NANJIO. 4to, 1l. 12s. 6d.
- Handbook of the Chinese Language. Parts I and II. Grammar and Chrestomathy. By JAMES SUMMERS. 8vo, 1l. 8s.
- CHALDEE.** Book of Tobit. A Chaldee Text, from a unique MS. in the Bodleian Library. Edited by AD. NEUBAUER, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- COPTIC.** Libri Prophetarum Majorum, cum Lamentationibus Jeremiae, in Dialecto Linguae Aegyptiacae Memphitica seu Coptica. Edidit cum Versione Latina H. TATTAM, S.T.P. Tomi II. 8vo, 17s.
- Libri duodecim Prophetarum Minorum in Ling. Aegypt. vulgo Coptica. Edidit H. TATTAM, A.M. 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- Novum Testamentum Coptice, cura D. WILKINS. 12s. 6d.
- HEBREW.** Psalms in Hebrew (without points). Cr. 8vo, 2s.
- Driver.** Notes on the Hebrew Text of the Books of Samuel. By S. R. DRIVER, D.D. 8vo, 14s.
- Treatise on the use of the Tenses in Hebrew. By S. R. DRIVER, D.D. *Third Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Commentary on the Book of Proverbs. Attributed to Abraham Ibn Ezra. Edited from a Manuscript in the Bodleian Library by S. R. DRIVER, D.D. Crown 8vo, paper covers, 3s. 6d.
- A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament, with an Appendix containing the Biblical Aramaic, based on the Thesaurus and Lexicon of GESNIUS, by FRANCIS BROWN, D.D., S. R. DRIVER, D.D., and C. A. BRIGGS, D.D. Parts I and II. Small 4to, each, 2s. 6d.
- Neubauer.** Book of Hebrew Roots, by Abu 'l-Walîd Marwân ibn Janâh, otherwise called Rabbi Yônâh. Now first edited, with an Appendix, by AD. NEUBAUER. 4to, 2l. 7s. 6d.
- Spurrell.** Notes on the Hebrew Text of the Book of Genesis. By G. J. SPURRELL, M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Wickes.** Hebrew Accentuation of Psalms, Proverbs, and Job. By WILLIAM WICKES, D.D. 8vo, 5s.
- Hebrew Prose Accentuation. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

SANSKRIT.—Sanskrit-English Dictionary, Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to Greek, Latin, German, Anglo-Saxon, English, and other cognate Indo-European Languages. By Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. 4to, 4l. 14s. 6d.

— Practical Grammar of the Sanskrit Language, arranged with reference to the Classical Languages of Europe, by Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. *Fourth Edition.* 8vo, 15s.

— Nalopákhyaṇam. Story of Nala, an Episode of the Mahábhārata: Sanskrit Text, with a copious Vocabulary, and an improved version of Dean Milman's Translation, by Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. *Second Edition, Revised and Improved.* 8vo, 15s.

— Sakuntalā. A Sanskrit Drama, in seven Acts. Edited by Sir M. MONIER-WILLIAMS, D.C.L. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 1l. 1s.

SYRIAC.—**Thesaurus Syriacus:** collegerunt Quatremère, Bernstein, Lorschach, Arnoldi, Agrell, Field, Roediger: edidit R. PAYNE SMITH, S.T.P. Vol. I, containing Fasc. I–V. Sm. fol. 5l. 5s.
Fasc. VI, 1l. 1s.; VII, 1l. 11s. 6d.; VIII, 1l. 16s.; IX, 1l. 5s.

— **The Book of Kalilah and Dimnah.** Translated from Arabic into Syriac. Edited by W. WRIGHT, LL.D. 8vo. 1l. 1s.

— **Cyrelli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini Commentarii in Lucae Evangelium quae supersunt Syriace.** E MSS. apud Mus. Britan. edidit R. PAYNE SMITH, A.M. 4to, 1l. 2s.

— — Translated by R. PAYNE SMITH, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 14s.

— **Ephraemi Syri, Rabulae Episcopi Edesseni, Balaei, &c., Opera Selecta.** E Codd. Syriacis MSS. in Museo Britannico et Bibliotheca Bodleiana asservatis primus edidit J. J. OVERBECK. 8vo, 1l. 1s.

— **John, Bishop of Ephesus.** The Third Part of his Ecclesiastical History. [In Syriac.] Now first edited by WILLIAM CURETON, M.A. 4to, 1l. 12s.

— — Translated by R. PAYNE SMITH, M.A. 8vo, 10s.

TAMIL. First Lessons in Tamil. By G. U. POPE, D.D. *Fifth Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

— The Nāladīyār, or Four Hundred Quatrains in Tamil. Edited by G. U. POPE, D.D. 8vo, 18s. *Large Paper, 2l. half Roxburgh.*

ZEND. The Ancient MS. of the Yasna, with its Pahlavi Translation (A.D. 1323), generally quoted as J2, and now in the possession of the Bodleian Library. Reproduced in Facsimile, and Edited with an Introductory Note by L. H. MILLS, D.D. Half-bound, Imperial 4to, 10l. 10s. net.

SECTION VI.

ANECDOTA OXONIENSIA.

(Crown 4to, stiff covers.)

I. CLASSICAL SERIES.

- I. The English Manuscripts of the Nicomachean Ethics.
By J. A. STEWART, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- II. Nonius Marcellus, de Compendiosa Doctrina, Harleian
MS. 2719. Collated by J. H. ONIONS, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- III. Aristotle's Physics. Book VII. With Introduction by
R. SHUTE, M.A. 2s.
- IV. Bentley's Plautine Emendations. From his copy of
Gronovius. By E. A. SONNENSCHN, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- V. Harleian MS. 2610; Ovid's Metamorphoses I, II, III.
1-622; XXIV Latin Epigrams from Bodleian or other MSS.; Latin
Glosses on Apollinaris Sidonius from MS. Digby 172. Collated and
Edited by ROBINSON ELLIS, M.A., LL.D. 4s.
- VI. A Collation with the Ancient Armenian Versions of the
Greek Text of Aristotle's Categories, De Interpretatione, De Mundo,
De Virtutibus et Vitiis, and of Porphyry's Introduction. By F. C.
CONYBEARE, M.A. 14s.
- VII. Collations from the Harleian MS. of Cicero 2682. By
ALBERT C. CLARK, M.A. 7s. 6d.

II. SEMITIC SERIES.

- I. Commentary on Ezra and Nehemiah. By Rabbi
Saadiah. Edited by H. J. MATHEWS, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- II. The Book of the Bee. Edited by ERNEST A. WALLIS
BUDGE, M.A. 21s.
- III. A Commentary on the Book of Daniel. By Japhet Ibn
Ali. Edited and Translated by D. S. MARGOLIOUTH, M.A. 21s.
- IV. Mediaeval Jewish Chronicles and Chronological Notes.
Edited by AD. NEUBAUER, M.A. 14s.
- V. The Palestinian Version of the Holy Scriptures. Five
more Fragments recently acquired by the Bodleian Library. Edited
by G. H. GWILLIAM, B.D. 6s.

ANECDOTA OXONIENSIA (*continued*).**III. ARYAN SERIES.**

- I. Buddhist Texts from Japan. 1. *Vagrakkhedikâ*. Edited by F. MAX MÜLLER. 3s. 6d.
- II. Buddhist Texts from Japan. 2. *Sukhâvatî Vyûha*. Edited by F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., and BUNYIU NANJIO. 7s. 6d.
- III. Buddhist Texts from Japan. 3. The Ancient Palm-leaves containing the *Pragñâ-Pâramitâ-Hridaya-Sûtra* and the *Ushnisha-Vigaya-Dhâranî*, edited by F. MAX MÜLLER, M.A., and BUNYIU NANJIO, M.A. With an Appendix by G. BÜHLER. 10s.
- IV. *Kâtyâyana's Sarvânukramanî* of the *Rigveda*. With Extracts from *Shadgurusishya's* Commentary entitled *Vedârthadipikâ*. Edited by A. A. MACDONELL, M.A., Ph.D. 16s.
- V. *The Dharma Samgraha*. Edited by KENJIU KASAWARA, F. MAX MÜLLER, and H. WENZEL. 7s. 6d.
- VII. *The Buddha-Karita of Asvaghosha*. Edited, from three MSS., by E. B. COWELL, M.A. 12s. 6d.

IV. MEDIAEVAL AND MODERN SERIES.

- I. *Sinonoma Bartholomei*. Edited by J. L. G. MOWAT, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- II. *Alphita*. Edited by J. L. G. MOWAT, M.A. 12s. 6d.
- III. *The Saltair Na Rann*. Edited from a MS. in the Bodleian Library, by WHITLEY STOKES, D.C.L. 7s. 6d.
- IV. *The Cath Finntrága, or Battle of Ventry*. Edited by KUNO MEYER, Ph.D., M.A. 6s.
- V. *Lives of Saints, from the Book of Lismore*. Edited, with Translation, by WHITLEY STOKES, D.C.L. 1l. 11s. 6d.

II. THEOLOGY.

A. THE HOLY SCRIPTURES, APOCRYPHA, &c.

COPTIC. Libri Prophetarum Majorum, cum Lamentationibus Jeremiae, in Dialecto Linguae Aegyptiacae Memphitica seu Coptica. Edidit cum Versione Latina H. TATTAM, S.T.P. Tomi II. 8vo, 17s.

— Libri duodecim Prophetarum Minorum in Ling. Aegypt. vulgo Coptica. Edidit H. TATTAM, A.M. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— Novum Testamentum Coptice, cura D. WILKINS. 1716. 4to, 12s. 6d.

ENGLISH. The Holy Bible in the Earliest English Versions, made from the Latin Vulgate by JOHN WYCLIFFE and his followers: edited by FORSHALL and MADDEN. 4 vols. Royal 4to, 3l. 3s.

Also reprinted from the above, with Introduction and Glossary
by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D.

I. The Books of Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

II. The New Testament. Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.

— The Holy Bible: an exact reprint, page for page, of the Authorised Version published in the year 1611. Demy 4to, half-bound. 1l. 1s.

— The Holy Bible, Revised Version*.

Cheap editions for School Use.

Revised Bible. Pearl 16mo, cloth boards, 1s. 6d.

Revised New Testament. Nonpareil 32mo, 6d.; Brevier 16mo, 1s.
Long Primer 8vo, 1s. 6d.

— The Oxford Bible for Teachers, containing the Holy Scriptures, together with a new, enlarged, and illustrated edition of the OXFORD HELPS TO THE STUDY OF THE BIBLE, comprising Introductions to the several Books, the History and Antiquities of the Jews, the results of Modern Discoveries, and the Natural History of Palestine, with copious Tables, Concordance and Indices, and a series of Maps. Prices in various sizes and bindings from 7s. 6d. to 2l. 2s.

* *The Revised Version is the joint property of the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge.*

ENGLISH (*continued*).

- **Helps to the Study of the Bible**, taken from the OXFORD BIBLE FOR TEACHERS. *New, Enlarged, and Illustrated Edition.* Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- **The Psalter**, or Psalms of David, and certain Canticles, with a Translation and Exposition in English, by RICHARD ROLLE of Ham-pole. Edited by H. R. BRAMLEY, M.A., Fellow of S. M. Magdalen College, Oxford. With an Introduction and Glossary. Demy 8vo, 1l. 1s.
- **Studia Biblica et Ecclesiastica.** Essays in Biblical and Patristic Criticism, and kindred subjects. By Members of the University of Oxford. 8vo.
Vol. I, 10s. 6d. Vol. II, 12s. 6d. Vol. III, 16s.
- **Lectures on the Book of Job.** Delivered in Westminster Abbey by the Very Rev. G. G. BRADLEY, D.D. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- **Lectures on Ecclesiastes.** By the same Author. Cr. 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- **The Book of Wisdom :** the Greek Text, the Latin Vulgate, and the Authorised English Version ; with an Introduction, Critical Apparatus, and a Commentary. By W. J. DEANE, M.A. 4to, 12s. 6d.
- **The Five Books of Maccabees**, in English, with Notes and Illustrations by HENRY COTTON, D.C.L. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- **The Book of Enoch.** Translated from Dillmann's Ethiopic Text (emended and revised), and Edited by R. H. CHARLES, M.A. 8vo, 16s.
- **List of Editions of the Bible in English.** By HENRY COTTON, D.C.L. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- **Rhemes and Doway.** An attempt to show what has been done by Roman Catholics for the diffusion of the Holy Scriptures in English. By HENRY COTTON, D.C.L. 8vo, 9s.
- GOTHIC.** **Evangeliorum Versio Gothica**, cum Interpr. et Annot. E. BENZELII. Edidit E. LYE, A.M. 4to, 12s. 6d.
- **The Gospel of St. Mark in Gothic**, according to the translation made by WULFILA in the Fourth Century. Edited by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s.
- GREEK.** **Old Testament.** *Vetus Testamentum ex Versione Septuaginta Interpretum secundum exemplar Vaticanum Romae editum. Accedit potior varietas Codicis Alexandrini.* Tomi III. 18mo, 18s.
- *Vetus Testamentum Graece cum Variis Lectionibus.* Editionem a R. HOLMES, S.T.P. inchoatam continuavit J. PARSONS, S.T.B. Tomi V. folio, 7l.

GREEK (*continued*).

- **A Concordance to the Septuagint** and the other Greek Versions of the Old Testament (including the Apocryphal Books). By the late EDWIN HATCH, M.A., and H. A. REDPATH, M.A. Parts I-III. Α-ΩΒΗΑ. Imperial 4to, *each*, 21s. Part IV. *In the Press*.
- **Origenis Hexaplorum quae supersunt; sive, Veterum Interpretum Graecorum in totum Vetus Testamentum Fragmenta.** Edidit FREDERICUS FIELD, A.M. 2 vols. 1875. 4to, 5*l.* 5*s.*
- **Essays in Biblical Greek.** By EDWIN HATCH, M.A., D.D. 8vo, 10*s.* 6*d.*
- **An Essay on the Place of Ecclesiasticus in Semitic Literature.** By D. S. MARGOLIOUTH, M.A., Laudian Professor of Arabic in the University of Oxford. Small 4to, 2*s.* 6*d.*
- **New Testament.** Novum Testamentum Graece. Antiquissimorum Codicum Textus in ordine parallelo dispositi. Edidit E. H. HANSELL, S.T.B. Tomi III. 8vo, 24*s.*
- **Novum Testamentum Graece.** Accedunt parallela S. Scripturae loca, &c. Edidit CAROLUS LLOYD, S.T.P.R. 18mo, 3*s.* *On writing paper, with wide margin, 7*s.* 6*d.**
- **Critical Appendices to the above, by W. SANDAY, M.A.** Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 3*s.* 6*d.*
- **Novum Testamentum Graece.** Accedunt parallela S. Scripturae loca, &c. Ed. C. LLOYD, with SANDAY'S Appendices. Cloth, 6*s.*; paste grain, 7*s.* 6*d.*; morocco, 10*s.* 6*d.*
- **Novum Testamentum Graece juxta Exemplar Millianum.** 18mo, 2*s.* 6*d.* *On writing paper, with wide margin, 7*s.* 6*d.**
- **Evangelia Sacra Graece.** Fcap. 8vo, limp, 1*s.* 6*d.*
- **The Greek Testament, with the Readings adopted by the Revisers of the Authorised Version:—**
 - (1) Pica type, with Marginal References. Demy 8vo, 10*s.* 6*d.*
 - (2) Long Primer type. Fcap. 8vo, 4*s.* 6*d.*
 - (3) *The same, on writing paper, with wide margin, 1*5*s.***
- **The New Testament in Greek and English.** Edited by E. CARDWELL, D.D. 2 vols. 1837. Crown 8vo, 6*s.*
- **The Parallel New Testament, Greek and English;** being the Authorised Version, 1611; the Revised Version, 1881; and the Greek Text followed in the Revised Version. 8vo, 12*s.* 6*d.*
- **Diatessaron; sive Historia Jesu Christi ex ipsis Evangelistarum verbis apte dispositis confecta.** Ed. J. WHITE. 3*s.* 6*d.*

GREEK (*continued*).

- Outlines of Textual Criticism applied to the New Testament. By C. E. HAMMOND, M.A. *Fifth Edition*. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- A Greek Testament Primer. An Easy Grammar and Reading Book for the use of Students beginning Greek. By E. MILLER, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Canon Muratorianus. Edited, with Notes and Facsimile, by S. P. TREGELLES, LL.D. 4to, 10s. 6d.

HEBREW, &c. A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament, with an Appendix containing the Biblical Aramaic, based on the Thesaurus and Lexicon of GESENIUS, by FRANCIS BROWN, D.D., S. R. DRIVER, D.D., and C. A. BRIGGS, D.D. Parts I and II. Small 4to, each 2s. 6d.

- Notes on the Hebrew Text of the Book of Genesis. By G. J. SPURRELL, M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Notes on the Hebrew Text of the Books of Samuel. By S. R. DRIVER, D.D. 8vo, 14s.
- The Psalms in Hebrew without points. Stiff covers, 2s.
- A Commentary on the Book of Proverbs. Attributed to ABRAHAM IBN EZRA. Edited from a MS. in the Bodleian Library by S. R. DRIVER, D.D. Crown 8vo, paper covers, 3s. 6d.
- The Book of Tobit. A Chaldee Text, from a unique MS. in the Bodleian Library; with other Rabbinical Texts, English Translations, and the Itala. Edited by AD. NEUBAUER, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Hebrew Accentuation of Psalms, Proverbs, and Job. By WILLIAM WICKES, D.D. 8vo, 5s.
- Hebrew Prose Accentuation. By the same. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Horae Hebraicae et Talmudicae, a J. LIGHTFOOT. A new Edition, by R. GANDELL, M.A. 4 vols. 8vo, 17. 1s.

LATIN. Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Latina, cum Paraphrasi Anglo-Saxonica. Edidit B. THORPE, F.A.S. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

- Nouum Testamentum Domini Nostri Iesu Christi Latine, secundum Editionem Sancti Hieronymi. Ad Codicum Manuscriptorum fidem recensuit IOHANNES WORDSWORTH, S.T.P., Episcopus Sarisburiensis; in operis societatem adsumto HENRICO IULIANO WHITE, A.M. 4to.

Fasc. I. Euangelium secundum Mattheum. 12s. 6d.

Fasc. II. Euangelium secundum Marcum. 7s. 6d.

Fasc. III. Euangelium secundum Lucam. 12s. 6d.

LATIN (*continued*).

- Old-Latin Biblical Texts: No. I. The Gospel according to St. Matthew, from the St. Germain MS. (g₁). Edited by JOHN WORDSWORTH, D.D. Small 4to, stiff covers, 6s.
- Old-Latin Biblical Texts: No. II. Portions of the Gospels according to St. Mark and St. Matthew, from the Bobbio MS. (k), &c. Edited by JOHN WORDSWORTH, D.D., W. SANDAY, M.A., D.D., and H. J. WHITE, M.A. Small 4to, stiff covers, 21s.
- Old-Latin Biblical Texts: No. III. The Four Gospels, from the Munich MS. (q), now numbered Lat. 6224 in the Royal Library at Munich. With a Fragment from St. John in the Hof-Bibliothek at Vienna (Cod. Lat. 502). Edited, with the aid of Tischendorf's transcript (under the direction of the Bishop of Salisbury), by H. J. WHITE, M.A. Small 4to, stiff covers, 12s. 6d.

OLD-FRENCH. Libri Psalmorum Versio antiqua Gallica e Cod. ms. in Bibl. Bodleiana adservato, una cum Versione Metrica aliisque Monumentis pervetustis. Nunc primum descripsit et edidit FRANCISCUS MICHEL, Phil. Doc. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

B. FATHERS OF THE CHURCH, &c.

- St. Athanasius:** Orations against the Arians. With an Account of his Life by WILLIAM BRIGHT, D.D. Crown 8vo, 9s.
- Historical Writings, according to the Benedictine Text. With an Introduction by W. BRIGHT, D.D. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- St. Augustine:** Select Anti-Pelagian Treatises, and the Acts of the Second Council of Orange. With an Introduction by WILLIAM BRIGHT, D.D. Crown 8vo, 9s.
- St. Basil:** The Book of St. Basil on the Holy Spirit. A Revised Text, with Notes and Introduction by C. F. H. JOHNSTON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Barnabas,** The Editio Princeps of the Epistle of, by Archbishop Ussher, as printed at Oxford, A.D. 1642, and preserved in an imperfect form in the Bodleian Library. With a Dissertation by J. H. BACKHOUSE, M.A. Small 4to, 3s. 6d.
- Canons of the First Four General Councils of Nicaea, Constantinople, Ephesus, and Chalcedon.** With Notes, by W. BRIGHT, D.D. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Catenae Graecorum Patrum in Novum Testamentum.** Edidit J. A. CRAMER, S.T.P. Tomi VIII. 8vo, 2l. 4s.

Clementis Alexandrini Opera, ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii.
Tomi IV. 8vo, 3*l*.

Cyrilli Archiepiscopi Alexandrini in XII Prophetas. Edidit
P. E. PUSEY, A.M. Tomi II. 8vo, 2*l*. 2*s*.

— in **D. Joannis Evangelium**. Accedunt **Fragmenta Variarum**
Tractatus ad Tiberium Diaconum Duo. Edidit post Aubertum
P. E. PUSEY, A.M. Tomi III. 8vo, 2*l*. 5*s*.

— **Commentarii in Lucae Evangelium quae supersunt**
Syriace. E MSS. apud Mus. Britan. edidit R. PAYNE SMITH, A.M. 4to,
1*l*. 2*s*.

— — Translated by R. PAYNE SMITH, M.A. 2 vols, 14*s*.

Ephraemi Syri, Rabulae Episcopi Edesseni, Balaei, aliorumque
Opera Selecta. E Codd. Syriacis MSS. in Museo Britannico et Bibliotheca
Bodleiana asservatis primus edidit J. J. OVERBECK. 8vo, 1*l*. 1*s*.

Eusebii Pamphili Evangelicae Praeparationis Libri XV. Ad
Codd. MSS. recensuit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. Tomi IV. 8vo, 1*l*. 10*s*.

— **Evangelicae Demonstrationis Libri X**. Recensuit T.
GAISFORD, S.T.P. Tomi II. 8vo, 15*s*.

— **contra Hieroclem et Marcellum Libri**. Recensuit T.
GAISFORD, S.T.P. 8vo, 7*s*.

Eusebius' Ecclesiastical History, according to the text of
BURTON, with an Introduction by W. BRIGHT, D.D. *Second Edition*.
Crown 8vo, 8*s*. 6*d*.

— — **Annotationes Variorum**. Tomi II. 8vo, 17*s*.

Evagrii Historia Ecclesiastica, ex recensione H. VALESII.
1844. 8vo, 4*s*.

Irenaeus: The Third Book of St. Irenaeus, Bishop of Lyons,
against Heresies. With short Notes and a Glossary by H. DEANE, B.D.
Crown 8vo, 5*s*. 6*d*.

Origenis Philosophumena; sive omnium Haeresium Refutatio.
E Codice Parisino nunc primum edidit EMMANUEL MILLER. 8vo, 10*s*.

Patrum Apostolicorum, S. Clementis Romani, S. Ignatii,
S. Polycarpi, quae supersunt. Edidit GUIL. JACOBSON, S.T.P.R. Tomi
II. *Fourth Edition*. 8vo, 1*l*. 1*s*.

Reliquiae Sacrae secundi tertii saeculi. Recensuit M. J.
ROUTH, S.T.P. Tomi V. *Second Edition*. 8vo, 1*l*. 5*s*.

Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum Opuscula. Recensuit M. J.
ROUTH, S.T.P. Tomi II. *Third Edition*. 8vo, 10*s*.

Socratis Scholastici Historia Ecclesiastica. Gr. et Lat. Edidit R. HUSSEY, S.T.B. Tomi III. 1853. 8vo, 15s.

Socrates' Ecclesiastical History, according to the Text of HUSSEY, with an Introduction by WILLIAM BRIGHT, D.D. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Sozomeni Historia Ecclesiastica. Edidit R. HUSSEY, S.T.B. Tomi III. 8vo, 15s.

Tertulliani Apologeticus adversus Gentes pro Christianis. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by T. HERBERT BINDLEY, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.

De Praescriptione Haereticorum ad Martyras: ad Scapulam. With Introductions and Notes. By the same Editor. Crown, 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Theodoreti Ecclesiasticae Historiae Libri V. Recensuit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

—— **Graecarum Affectionum Curatio.** Ad Codices MSS. recensuit T. GAISFORD, S.T.P. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

C. ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY, &c.

Baedae Historia Ecclesiastica. Edited, with English Notes, by G. H. MOBERLY, M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Bigg. **The Christian Platonists of Alexandria;** being the Bampton Lectures for 1886. By CHARLES BIGG, D.D. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Bingham's Antiquities of the Christian Church, and other Works. 10 vols. 8vo, 3l. 3s.

Bright. **Chapters of Early English Church History.** By W. BRIGHT, D.D. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 12s.

Burnet's History of the Reformation of the Church of England. *A new Edition.* Carefully revised, and the Records collated with the originals, by N. POCOCK, M.A. 7 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

Cardwell's Documentary Annals of the Reformed Church of England; being a Collection of Injunctions, Declarations, Orders, Articles of Inquiry, &c., from 1546 to 1716. 2 vols. 8vo, 18s.

Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents relating to Great Britain and Ireland. Edited, after SPELMAN and WILKINS, by A. W. HADDAN, B.D., and W. STUBBS, D.D. Vols. I and III. Medium 8vo, each 1l. 1s.

Vol. II, Part I. Medium 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Vol. II, Part II. Church of Ireland; Memorials of St. Patrick. Stiff covers, 3s. 6d.

- Formularies of Faith** set forth by the King's authority during the Reign of Henry VIII. 8vo, 7s.
- Fuller's Church History of Britain.** Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A. 6 vols. 8vo, 1l. 19s.
- Gibson's Synodus Anglicana.** Edited by E. CARDWELL, D.D. 8vo, 6s.
- Hamilton's** (Archbishop John) **Catechism, 1552.** Edited, with Introduction and Glossary, by THOMAS GRAVES LAW, Librarian of the Signet Library, Edinburgh. With a Preface by the Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE. Demy 8vo, 12s. 6d.
- Inett's Origines Anglicanae** (in continuation of Stillingfleet). Edited by J. GRIFFITHS, M.A. 3 vols. 8vo, 15s.
- John, Bishop of Ephesus.** The Third Part of his Ecclesiastical History. [In Syriac.] Now first edited by WILLIAM CURETON, M.A. 4to, 1l. 12s.
- The same, translated by R. PAYNE SMITH, M.A. 8vo, 10s.
- Le Neve's Fasti Ecclesiae Anglicanae.** Corrected and continued from 1715 to 1853 by T. DUFFUS HARDY. 3 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s.
- Noelli (A.) Catechismus sive prima institutio disciplinae Pietatis Christianae Latine explicata.** Editio nova cura GUIL. JACOBSON, A.M. 8vo, 5s. 6d.
- Prideaux's Connection of Sacred and Profane History.** 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.
- Primers** put forth in the Reign of Henry VIII. 8vo, 5s.
- Records of the Reformation.** The Divorce, 1527–1533. Mostly now for the first time printed from MSS. in the British Museum and other Libraries. Collected and arranged by N. POCOCK, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 16s.
- Reformatio Legum Ecclesiasticarum.** The Reformation of Ecclesiastical Laws, as attempted in the reigns of Henry VIII, Edward VI, and Elizabeth. Edited by E. CARDWELL, D.D. 8vo, 6s. 6d.
- Shirley.** Some Account of the Church in the Apostolic Age. By W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D. *Second Edition.* Fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Shuckford's Sacred and Profane History** connected (in continuation of Prideaux). 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.
- Stillingfleet's Origines Britannicae,** with LLOYD's Historical Account of Church Government. Edited by T. P. PANTIN, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 10s.

Stubbs. *Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum.* An attempt to exhibit the course of Episcopal Succession in England. By W. STUBBS, D.D. Small 4to, 8s. 6d.

Strype's Memorials of Cranmer. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

Life of Aylmer. 8vo, 5s. 6d.

Life of Whitgift. 3 vols. 8vo, 16s. 6d.

General Index. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

Sylloge Confessionum sub tempus Reformandae Ecclesiae editarum. Subjiciuntur Catechismus Heidelbergensis et Canones Synodi Dordrechtanae. 8vo, 8s.

D. LITURGIOLOGY.

Cardwell's Two Books of Common Prayer, set forth by authority in the Reign of King Edward VI, compared with each other. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 7s.

— *History of Conferences on the Book of Common Prayer from 1551 to 1690.* *Third Edition.* 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Hammond. *Liturgies, Eastern and Western.* Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Liturgical Glossary, by C. E. HAMMOND, M.A. *New Edition in the Press.*

Helps to the Study of the Book of Common Prayer. Being a Companion to Church Worship. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Leofric Missal, The; together with some Account of the Red Book of Derby, the Missal of Robert of Jumièges, &c. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by F. E. WARREN, B.D., F.S.A. 4to, half-morocco, 1l. 15s.

Maskell. *Ancient Liturgy of the Church of England*, according to the uses of Sarum, York, Hereford, and Bangor, and the Roman Liturgy arranged in parallel columns, with preface and notes. By W. MASKELL, M.A. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 15s.

— *Monumenta Ritualia Ecclesiae Anglicanae.* The occasional Offices of the Church of England according to the old use of Salisbury, the Prymer in English, and other prayers and forms, with dissertations and notes. *Second Edition.* 3 vols. 8vo, 2l. 10s.

Warren. *The Liturgy and Ritual of the Celtic Church.* By F. E. WARREN, B.D. 8vo, 14s.

E. ENGLISH THEOLOGY.

Bradley. Lectures on the Book of Job. By GEORGE GRANVILLE BRADLEY, D.D., Dean of Westminster. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

— Lectures on Ecclesiastes. By G. G. BRADLEY, D.D. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Bull's Works, with NELSON's Life. Edited by E. BURTON, D.D. 8 vols. 8vo, 2l. 9s.

Burnet's Exposition of the xxxix Articles. 8vo, 7s.

Burton's (Edward) Testimonies of the Ante-Nicene Fathers to the Divinity of Christ. 1829. 8vo, 7s.

— Testimonies of the Ante-Nicene Fathers to the Doctrine of the Trinity and of the Divinity of the Holy Ghost. 1831. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Butler's Works. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

— Sermons. 5s. 6d. Analogy of Religion. 5s. 6d.

Chillingworth's Works. 3 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s. 6d.

Clergyman's Instructor. *Sixth Edition.* 8vo, 6s. 6d.

Cranmer's Works. Collected and arranged by H. JENKINS, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College. 4 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

Enchiridion Theologicum Anti-Romanum.

Vol. I. JEREMY TAYLOR's Dissuasive from Popery, and Treatise on the Real Presence. 8vo, 8s.

Vol. II. BARROW on the Supremacy of the Pope, with his Discourse on the Unity of the Church. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Vol. III. Tracts selected from WAKE, PATRICK, STILLINGFLEET, CLAGETT, and others. 8vo, 11s.

Greswell's Harmonia Evangelica. *Fifth Edition.* 8vo, 9s. 6d.

Hall's Works. Edited by P. WYNTER, D.D. 10 vols. 8vo, 3l. 3s.

Heurtley. Harmonia Symbolica: Creeds of the Western Church. By C. HEURTLEY, D.D. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

Homilies appointed to be read in Churches. Edited by J. GRIFFITHS, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

HOOKE'S WORKS, with his Life by WALTON, arranged by JOHN KEBLE, M.A. *Seventh Edition*. Revised by R. W. CHURCH, M.A., Dean of St. Paul's, and F. PAGET, D.D. 3 vols. medium 8vo, 1*l.* 16*s.*

—— the Text as arranged by J. KEBLE, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 11*s.*

Hooper's Works. 2 vols. 8vo, 8*s.*

Jackson's (Dr. Thomas) **Works.** 12 vols. 8vo, 3*l.* 6*s.*

Jewel's Works. Edited by R. W. JELF, D.D. 8 vols. 8vo, 1*l.* 10*s.*

Martineau. A Study of Religion : its Sources and Contents. By JAMES MARTINEAU, D.D. *Second Edition*. 2 vols. crown 8vo, 15*s.*

Patrick's Theological Works. 9 vols. 8vo, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Pearson's Exposition of the Creed. Revised and corrected by E. BURTON, D.D. *Sixth Edition*. 8vo, 10*s.* 6*d.*

—— Minor Theological Works. Edited with a Memoir, by EDWARD CHURTON, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 10*s.*

Sanderson's Works. Edited by W. JACOBSON, D.D. 6 vols. 8vo, 1*l.* 10*s.*

Stillingfleet's Origines Sacrae. 2 vols. 8vo, 9*s.*

—— Rational Account of the Grounds of Protestant Religion. 2 vols. 8vo, 10*s.*

Wall's History of Infant Baptism. Edited by HENRY COTTON, D.C.L. 2 vols. 8vo, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Waterland's Works, with Life, by Bp. VAN MILDERT. *A new Edition*, with copious Indexes. 6 vols. 8vo, 2*l.* 11*s.*

—— Review of the Doctrine of the Eucharist, with a Preface by the late Bishop of London. Crown 8vo, 6*s.* 6*d.*

Wheatly's Illustration of the Book of Common Prayer. 8vo, 5*s.*

Wyclif. A Catalogue of the Original Works of John Wyclif. By W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D. 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*

—— Select English Works. By T. ARNOLD, M.A. 3 vols. 8vo, 1*l.* 1*s.*

—— Trialogus. With the Supplement now first edited. By GOTTHARD LECHLER. 8vo, 7*s.*

III. HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, POLITICAL ECONOMY, &c.

Arbuthnot. *The Life and Works of John Arbuthnot.* By GEORGE A. AITKEN. 8vo, cloth extra, with Portrait, 16s.

Baker's Chronicle. *Chronicon Galfridi le Baker de Swynebroke.* Edited with Notes by EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, LL.D., D.C.L., F.S.A. Small 4to, stiff covers, 18s.; cloth, gilt top, 21s.

Bentham. *A Fragment on Government.* By JEREMY BENTHAM. Edited by F. C. MONTAGUE, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Bluntschli. *The Theory of the State.* By J. K. BLUNTSCHLI. Translated from the Sixth German Edition. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, half-bound, 8s. 6d.

Boswell's Life of Samuel Johnson, LL.D.; including Boswell's Journal of a Tour to the Hebrides, and Johnson's Diary of a Journey into North Wales. Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. In six vols., 8vo. With Portraits and Facsimiles. Half-bound, 3l. 3s.

Burnet's History of James II. 8vo, 9s. 6d.

— *Life of Sir M. Hale, and Fell's Life of Dr. Hammond.* Small 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Calendar of the Clarendon State Papers, preserved in the Bodleian Library. In three volumes. 1869-76.

Vol. I. From 1523 to January 1649. 8vo, 18s.

Vol. II. From 1649 to 1654. 8vo, 16s.

Vol. III. From 1655 to 1657. 8vo, 14s.

Calendar of Charters and Rolls preserved in the Bodleian Library. 8vo, 1l. 11s. 6d.

Carte's Life of James Duke of Ormond. A new Edition, carefully compared with the original MSS. 6 vols. 8vo, 1l. 5s.

Casaubon (Isaac), Life of, by MARK PATTISON, B.D. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 16s.

Casauboni Ephemerides, cum prae fatione et notis J. RUSSELL, S.T.P. Tomi II. 8vo, 15s.

Chesterfield. Letters of Philip Dormer Fourth Earl of Chesterfield, to his Godson and Successor. Edited from the Originals, with a Memoir of Lord Chesterfield, by the late EARL OF CARNARVON. *Second Edition.* With Appendix of Additional Correspondence. Royal 8vo, cloth extra, 21s.

CLARENDON'S History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. Re-edited from a fresh collation of the original MS. in the Bodleian Library, with marginal dates and occasional notes, by W. DUNN MACRAY, M.A., F.S.A. 6 vols. Crown 8vo, 2l. 5s.

— History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. To which are subjoined the Notes of BISHOP WARBURTON. 1849. 7 vols. Medium 8vo, 2l. 10s.

— History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. Also his Life, written by himself, in which is included a Continuation of his History of the Grand Rebellion. Royal 8vo, 1l. 2s.

Clarendon's Life, including a Continuation of his History. 2 vols. 1857. Medium 8vo, 1l. 2s.

Clinton's Fasti Hellenici. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Greece, from the LVth to the CXXIIIrd Olympiad. *Third Edition.* 4to, 1l. 14s. 6d.

— Fasti Hellenici. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Greece, from the CXXIVth Olympiad to the Death of Augustus. *Second Edition.* 4to, 1l. 12s.

— Epitome of the Fasti Hellenici. 8vo, 6s. 6d.

— Fasti Romani. The Civil and Literary Chronology of Rome and Constantinople, from the Death of Augustus to the Death of Heraclius. 2 vols. 4to, 2l. 2s.

— Epitome of the Fasti Romani. 8vo, 7s.

Codrington. The Melanesians. Studies in their Anthropology and Folk-Lore. By R. H. CODRINGTON, D.D. 8vo, 16s.

Cramer's Geographical and Historical Description of Asia Minor. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

— Description of Ancient Greece. 3 vols. 8vo, 16s. 6d.

Earle. Handbook to the Land-Charters, and other Saxon Documents. By JOHN EARLE, M.A., Professor of Anglo-Saxon in the University of Oxford. Crown 8vo, 16s.

Elizabethan Seamen, Voyages of, to America. Edited by E. J. PAYNE, M.A. *First Series.* HAWKINS. FROBISHER. DRAKE. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 5s.

- Finlay.** A History of Greece from its Conquest by the Romans to the present time, B.C. 146 to A.D. 1864. By GEORGE FINLAY, LL.D. A new Edition, revised throughout, and in part re-written, with considerable additions, by the Author, and edited by H. F. TOZER, M.A. 7 vols. 8vo, 3*l.* 10*s.*
- Fortescue.** The Governance of England: otherwise called The Difference between an Absolute and a Limited Monarchy. By Sir JOHN FORTESCUE, Kt. A Revised Text. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by CHARLES PLUMMER, M.A. 8vo, half-bound, 12*s.* 6*d.*
- Freeman.** The History of Sicily from the Earliest Times. Vols. I and II. 8vo, 2*l.* 2*s.*
Vol. III. The Athenian and Carthaginian Invasions. 1*l.* 4*s.*
- History of the Norman Conquest of England; its Causes and Results. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. In Six Volumes, 8vo, 5*l.* 9*s.* 6*d.*
- The Reign of William Rufus and the Accession of Henry the First. 2 vols. 8vo, 1*l.* 16*s.*
- A Short History of the Norman Conquest of England. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2*s.* 6*d.*
- French Revolutionary Speeches.** See STEPHENS, H. Morse.
- Gardiner.** The Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution. 1628–1660. Selected and Edited by SAMUEL RAWSON GARDINER, M.A. Crown 8vo, 9*s.*
- Gascoigne's Theological Dictionary** ('Liber Veritatum'): Selected Passages, illustrating the Condition of Church and State, 1403–1458. With an Introduction by JAMES E. THOROLD ROGERS, M.A. Small 4to, 10*s.* 6*d.*
- George.** Genealogical Tables illustrative of Modern History. By H. B. GEORGE, M.A. *Third Edition.* Small 4to, 12*s.*
- Greswell's Fasti Temporis Catholici.** 4 vols. 8vo, 2*l.* 10*s.*
- Tables to Fasti, 4to, and Introduction to Tables, 8vo, 15*s.*
- Origines Kalendariæ Italicæ. 4 vols. 8vo, 2*l.* 2*s.*
- Origines Kalendariæ Hellenicæ. 6 vols. 8vo, 4*l.* 4*s.*

- Greswell (W. Parr).** History of the Dominion of Canada. By W. PARR GRESWELL, M.A., under the Auspices of the Royal Colonial Institute. With Eleven Maps. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Geography of the Dominion of Canada and Newfoundland. By the same Author. With Ten Maps. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Geography of Africa South of the Zambesi. With Maps. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Gross.** The Gild Merchant: a Contribution to British Municipal History. By C. GROSS, Ph.D. 2 vols. 8vo, half-bound, 24s.
- Hastings.** Hastings and The Rohilla War. By Sir JOHN STRACHEY, G.C.S.I. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.
- Hodgkin.** Italy and her Invaders. With Plates and Maps. By THOMAS HODGKIN, D.C.L. (A.D. 376-553).
Vols. I-II. The Visigothic Invasions. The Hunnish Invasion. The Vandal Invasion, and the Herulian Mutiny. *Second Edition*, 2l. 2s.
Vols. III-IV. The Ostrogothic Invasion. The Imperial Restoration. 36s.
- The Dynasty of Theodosius; or, Seventy Years' Struggle with the Barbarians. By the same Author. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Hume.** Letters of David Hume to William Strahan. Edited with Notes, Index, &c., by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. 8vo, 12s. 6d.
- Hunter (Sir W. W.).** A Brief History of the Indian Peoples. By Sir W. W. HUNTER, K.C.S.I. *Eightieth Thousand*. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Jackson.** Dalmatia, the Quarnero, and Istria; with Cettigne in Montenegro and the Island of Grado. By T. G. JACKSON, M.A. 3 vols. With many Plates and Illustrations. 8vo, half-bound, 2l. 2s.
- Johnson.** Letters of Samuel Johnson, LL.D. Collected and Edited by G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. In two volumes. Medium 8vo, half-roan (uniform with Boswell's Life of Johnson,) 28s.
- Kitchin.** A History of France. With numerous Maps, Plans, and Tables. By G. W. KITCHIN, D.D. In three Volumes. Crown 8vo, each 10s. 6d.
Vol. I, to 1453. *Third Edition*.
Vol. II, 1453-1624. *Second Edition*.
Vol. III, 1624-1793. *Second Edition*.
- Knight's** Life of Dean Colet. 1823. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Lloyd's** Prices of Corn in Oxford, 1583-1830. 8vo, 1s.
- Lewes, The Song of.** Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by C. L. KINGSFORD, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

Lewis (Sir G. Cornewall). *An Essay on the Government of Dependencies.* Edited by C. P. LUCAS, B.A. 8vo, half-roan, 14s.

Lucas. *Introduction to a Historical Geography of the British Colonies.* By C. P. LUCAS, B.A. With Eight Maps. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

— *Historical Geography of the British Colonies.* By the same Author :

Vol. I. *The Mediterranean and Eastern Colonies (exclusive of India).* With Eleven Maps. 5s.

Vol. II. *The West Indian Colonies.* With Twelve Maps. 7s. 6d.

Luttrell's (Narcissus) Diary. *A Brief Historical Relation of State Affairs, 1678-1714.* 6 vols. 8vo, 1l. 4s.

Machiavelli (Niccolò). *Il Principe.* Edited by L. ARTHUR BURD. With an Introduction by LORD ACTON. 8vo, 14s.

Macray (W. D.). *Annals of the Bodleian Library, Oxford, with a Notice of the Earlier Library of the University.* By W. DUNN MACRAY, M.A., F.S.A. *Second Edition, enlarged and continued from 1868 to 1880.* Medium 8vo, half-bound, 25s.

Magna Carta, a careful Reprint. Edited by W. STUBBS, D.D., Lord Bishop of Oxford. 4to, stitched, 1s.

Metcalf. *Passio et Miracula Beati Olavi.* Edited from a Twelfth-Century MS. by F. METCALFE, M.A. Small 4to, 6s.

OXFORD, University of.

Oxford University Calendar for 1894. Crown 8vo, 6s.

The Historical Register of the University of Oxford. Being a Supplement to the Oxford University Calendar, with an Alphabetical Record of University Honours and Distinctions, completed to the end of Trinity Term, 1888. Crown 8vo, 5s.

Student's Handbook to the University and Colleges of Oxford. *Twelfth Edition.* Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

The Examination Statutes ; together with the Regulations of the Boards of Studies and Boards of Faculties for the Academic Year 1893-94. Revised to June 21, 1893. 8vo, paper covers, 1s.

Statuta Universitatis Oxoniensis. 1893. 8vo, 5s.

Statutes made for the University of Oxford, and the Colleges therein, by the University of Oxford Commissioners. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Also separately—University Statutes, 2s.; College Statutes, 1s. each.

Supplementary Statutes made by the University of Oxford, and by certain of the Colleges therein, in pursuance of the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge Act, 1877; approved by the Queen in Council. 8vo, paper covers, 2s. 6d.

OXFORD, University of (*continued*).

Statutes of the University of Oxford, codified in the year 1636 under the Authority of ARCHBISHOP LAUD, Chancellor of the University. Edited by the late JOHN GRIFFITHS, D.D. With an Introduction on the History of the Laudian Code by C. L. SHADWELL, M.A., B.C.L. 4to, 1l. 1s.

Enactments in Parliament, specially concerning the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge. Collected and arranged by J. GRIFFITHS, D.D. 1869. 8vo, 12s.

Catalogue of Oxford Graduates, 1659 to 1850. 7s. 6d.

Index to Wills proved in the Court of the Chancellor of the University of Oxford, &c. Compiled by J. GRIFFITHS, D.D. 3s. 6d.

Manuscript Materials relating to the History of Oxford; contained in the Printed Catalogues of the Bodleian and College Libraries. By F. MADAN, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Pattison. Essays by the late MARK PATTISON, sometime Rector of Lincoln College. Collected and arranged by HENRY NETTLESHIP, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 24s.

—— **Life of Isaac Casaubon** (1559–1614). By the same Author. *Second Edition*. 8vo, 16s.

Payne. History of the New World called America. By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. Vol. I, 8vo, 18s. Vol. II. *In the Press*.

—— **Voyages of the Elizabethan Seamen to America**. Edited by E. J. PAYNE, M.A. *First Series*. HAWKINS. FROBISHER. DRAKE. *Second Edition*. Crown 8vo, 5s.

Raleigh. Sir Walter Raleigh. A Biography. By W. STEBBING, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Ramsay (Sir James H.). **Lancaster and York**. A Century of English History (A.D. 1399–1485). 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 16s.

Ranke. A History of England, principally in the Seventeenth Century. By L. VON RANKE. Translated under the superintendence of G. W. KITCHIN, D.D., and C. W. BOASE, M.A. 6 vols. 8vo, 3l. 3s.

Rawlinson. A Manual of Ancient History. By GEORGE RAWLINSON, M.A. *Second Edition*. Demy 8vo, 14s.

Rhys. Studies in the Arthurian Legend. By JOHN RHYS, M.A., Professor of Celtic in the University of Oxford. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Ricardo. Letters of David Ricardo to T. R. Malthus (1810–1823). Edited by JAMES BONAR, M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Rogers. History of Agriculture and Prices in England, A.D. 1259-1793. By JAMES E. THOROLD ROGERS, M.A.

Vols. I and II (1259-1400). 8vo, 2l. 2s.

Vols. III and IV (1401-1582). 8vo, 2l. 10s.

Vols. V and VI (1583-1702). 8vo, 2l. 10s.

Vols. VII and VIII. *In the Press.*

— First Nine Years of the Bank of England. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— Protests of the Lords, including those which have been expunged, from 1624 to 1874; with Historical Introductions. In three volumes. 8vo, 2l. 2s.

Selden. The Table Talk of JOHN SELDEN. Edited, with an Introduction and Notes, by SAMUEL HARVEY REYNOLDS, M.A. 8vo, half-roan, 8s. 6d.

Smith's Wealth of Nations. A new Edition, with Notes, by J. E. THOROLD ROGERS, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 21s.

Sprigg's England's Recovery; being the History of the Army under Sir Thomas Fairfax. 8vo, 6s.

RULERS OF INDIA: The History of the Indian Empire in a carefully planned succession of Political Biographies. Edited by Sir WILLIAM WILSON HUNTER, K.C.S.I. In crown 8vo. Half-crown volumes.

Now Ready:

The Marquess of Dalhousie. By Sir W. W. HUNTER.

Akbar. By COLONEL MALLESON, C.S.I.

Dupleix. By COLONEL MALLESON, C.S.I.

Warren Hastings. By CAPTAIN L. J. TROTTER.

The Marquess of Cornwallis. By W. S. SETON-KARR.

The Earl of Mayo. By Sir W. W. HUNTER, K.C.S.I.

Viscount Hardinge. By his son, VISCOUNT HARDINGE.

Clyde and Strathnairn. By Major-General Sir OWEN TUDOR BURNE, K.C.S.I.

Earl Canning. By Sir H. S. CUNNINGHAM, K.C.I.E.

Mádhava Ráo Sindhia. By H. G. KEENE, M.A., C.I.E.

Mountstuart Elphinstone. By J. S. COTTON, M.A.

Lord William Bentinck. By DEMETRIUS C. BOULGER.

Ranjit Singh. By Sir LEPEL GRIFFIN, K.C.S.I.

Lord Lawrence. By Sir C. AITCHISON, K.C.S.I., LL.D.

Albuquerque. By H. MORSE STEPHENS.

Marquess of Hastings. By Major ROSS-OF-BLADENSBURG, C.B.

RULERS OF INDIA (*continued*).

Aurangzib. By STANLEY LANE-POOLE, B.A.

The Earl of Auckland. By Captain L. J. TROTTER.

Lord Clive. By COLONEL MALLESON, C.S.I.

The Marquess Wellesley, K.G. By W. H. HUTTON, M.A.

Haidar Ali and Tipu Sultan. By L. B. BOWRING, C.S.I.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOLUMES.

James Thomason. By Sir RICHARD TEMPLE, Bart. 3s. 6d.

A Brief History of the Indian Peoples. By Sir W. W. HUNTER, K.C.S.I. *Eightieth Thousand.* Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Stephens. The Principal Speeches of the Statesmen and Orators of the French Revolution, 1789-1795. With Introductions, Notes, &c. By H. MORSE STEPHENS. 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 21s.

Stubbs. Select Charters and other Illustrations of English Constitutional History, from the Earliest Times to the Reign of Edward I. Arranged and edited by W. STUBBS, D.D., Lord Bishop of Oxford. *Seventh Edition.* Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

— The Constitutional History of England, in its Origin and Development. *Library Edition.* 3 vols. Demy 8vo, 2l. 8s.

Also in 3 vols. crown 8vo, price 12s. each.

— Seventeen Lectures on the Study of Mediaeval and Modern History. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Tozer. The Islands of the Aegean. By H. FANSHAWE TOZER, M.A., F.R.G.S. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Vinogradoff. Villainage in England. Essays in English Mediaeval History. By PAUL VINOGRADOFF, Professor in the University of Moscow. 8vo, half-bound, 16s.

Wellesley. A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers of the MARQUESS WELLESLEY, K.G., during his Government of India. Edited by S. J. OWEN, M.A. 8vo, 1l. 4s.

Wellington. A Selection from the Despatches, Treaties, and other Papers relating to India of Field-Marshal the DUKE OF WELLINGTON, K.G. Edited by S. J. OWEN, M.A. 8vo, 1l. 4s.

Whitelock's Memorials of English Affairs from 1625 to 1660. 4 vols. 8vo, 1l. 10s.

Cannan. Elementary Political Economy. By EDWIN CANNAN, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s.

Raleigh. Elementary Politics. By THOMAS RALEIGH, M.A. *Sixth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, stiff covers, 1s.

IV. LAW.

Anson. Principles of the English Law of Contract, and of Agency in its Relation to Contract. By SIR W. R. ANSON, D.C.L. *Seventh Edition.* 8vo, 10s. 6d.

—— Law and Custom of the Constitution. In two Parts.

Part I. Parliament. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Part II. The Crown. 8vo, 14s.

Baden-Powell. Land-Systems of British India; being a Manual of the Land-Tenures, and of the Systems of Land-Revenue Administration prevalent in the several Provinces. By B. H. BADEN-POWELL, C.I.E., F.R.S.E., M.R.A.S. 3 vols. 8vo, with Maps, 3l. 3s.

—— Land-Revenue and Tenure in British India. By the same Author. With Map. Crown 8vo, 5s.

Bentham. An Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation. By JEREMY BENTHAM. Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.

Digby. An Introduction to the History of the Law of Real Property. By KENELM E. DIGBY, M.A. *Fourth Edition.* 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Grueber. Lex Aquilia. The Roman Law of Damage to Property: being a Commentary on the Title of the Digest 'Ad Legem Aquilian' (ix. 2). With an Introduction to the Study of the Corpus Iuris Civilis. By ERWIN GRUEBER, Dr. Jur., M.A. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Hall. International Law. By W. E. HALL, M.A. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 22s. 6d.

Holland. Elements of Jurisprudence. By T. E. HOLLAND, D.C.L. *Sixth Edition.* 8vo, 10s. 6d.

—— The European Concert in the Eastern Question, a Collection of Treaties and other Public Acts. Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by T. E. HOLLAND, D.C.L. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

—— Gentilis, Alberici, I.C.D., I.C.P.R., de Iure Belli Libri Tres. Edited by T. E. HOLLAND, I.C.D. Small 4to, half-morocco, 21s.

—— The Institutes of Justinian, edited as a recension of the Institutes of GAIUS, by T. E. HOLLAND, D.C.L. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

Holland and Shadwell. Select Titles from the Digest of Justinian. By T. E. HOLLAND, D.C.L., and C. L. SHADWELL, B.C.L. 8vo, 14s.

Also sold in Parts, in paper covers, as follows:—

Part I. Introductory Titles. 2s. 6d.

Part II. Family Law. 1s.

Part III. Property Law. 2s. 6d.

Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 1). 3s. 6d.

Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 2). 4s. 6d.

Markby. Elements of Law considered with reference to Principles of General Jurisprudence. By Sir WILLIAM MARKBY, D.C.L. *Fourth Edition.* 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Moyle. Imperatoris Iustiniani Institutionum Libri Quattuor; with Introductions, Commentary, Excursus, and Translation. By J. B. MOYLE, D.C.L. *Second Edition.* 2 vols. 8vo, 22s.

— Contract of Sale in the Civil Law. By J. B. MOYLE, D.C.L. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Pollock and Wright. An Essay on Possession in the Common Law. By Sir F. POLLOCK, M.A., and Sir R. S. WRIGHT, B.C.L. 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Poste. Gaii Institutionum Juris Civilis Commentarii Quattuor; or, Elements of Roman Law by Gaius. With a Translation and Commentary by EDWARD POSTE, M.A. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 18s.

Raleigh. An Outline of the Law of Property. By THOMAS RALEIGH, M.A. 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d.

Sohm. Institutes of Roman Law. By RUDOLPH SOHM, Professor in the University of Leipzig. Translated (from the Fourth Edition of the German) by J. C. LEDLIE, B.C.L., M.A. With an Introductory Essay by ERWIN GRUEBER, Dr. Jur., M.A. 8vo, 18s.

Stokes. Anglo-Indian Codes. By WHITLEY STOKES, LL.D. Vol. I. Substantive Law. 8vo, 30s. Vol. II. Adjective Law. 8vo, 35s.

— First Supplement to the above, 1887, 1888. 2s. 6d.

— Second Supplement, to May 31, 1891. 4s. 6d.

— First and Second Supplements in one volume, price 6s. 6d.

Twiss. The Law of Nations considered as Independent Political Communities. By SIR TRAVERS TWISS, D.C.L.

Part I. On the rights and Duties of Nations in time of Peace. New Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo, 15s.

V. PHILOSOPHY, LOGIC, &c.

Bacon. *Novum Organum.* Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. FOWLER, D.D. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 15s.

— *Novum Organum.* Edited, with English Notes, by G. W. KITCHIN, D.D. 8vo, 9s. 6d.

— *The Essays.* Edited, with Introduction and Illustrative Notes, by S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A. Demy 8vo, half-bound, 12s. 6d.

Berkeley. *The works of GEORGE BERKELEY, D.D.,* formerly Bishop of Cloyne; including many of his writings hitherto unpublished. With Prefaces, Annotations, and an Account of his Life and Philosophy, by ALEXANDER CAMPBELL FRASER, LL.D. 4 vols. 8vo, 2l. 18s.

The Life, Letters, &c., separately, 16s.

Berkeley. *Selections.* With Introduction and Notes. For the use of Students in the Universities. By ALEXANDER CAMPBELL FRASER, LL.D. *Fourth Edition.* Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Bosanquet. *Logic; or, The Morphology of Knowledge.* By B. BOSANQUET, M.A. 8vo, 21s.

Butler's Works, with Index to the Analogy. 2 vols. 8vo, 11s.

Fowler. *The Elements of Deductive Logic,* designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. By T. FOWLER, D.D. *Ninth Edition,* with a Collection of Examples. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Fowler. *The Elements of Inductive Logic,* designed mainly for the use of Students in the Universities. *Fifth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.

— *The Principles of Morals (Introductory Chapters).* By T. FOWLER, D.D., and J. M. WILSON, B.D. 8vo, boards, 3s. 6d.

— *The Principles of Morals. Part II.* By T. FOWLER, D.D. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Green. *Prolegomena to Ethics.* By T. H. GREEN, M.A. Edited by A. C. BRADLEY, M.A. *Third Edition.* 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Hegel. *The Logic of Hegel;* translated from the *Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences.* By WILLIAM WALLACE, M.A., LL.D. *Second Edition, Revised and Augmented.* Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

The Volume containing the Prolegomena is under Revision, and will be issued shortly.

Hume's *Treatise of Human Nature.* Reprinted from the Original Edition in Three Volumes, and Edited by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. Crown 8vo, 9s.

- Locke's** *Conduct of the Understanding.* Edited by T. FOWLER, D.D. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Lotze's** *Logic, in Three Books; of Thought, of Investigation, and of Knowledge.* English Translation; Edited by B. BOSANQUET, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 12s.
- *Metaphysic, in Three Books; Ontology, Cosmology, and Psychology.* English Translation; Edited by B. BOSANQUET, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 12s.
- Martineau.** *Types of Ethical Theory.* By JAMES MARTINEAU, D.D. *Third Edition.* 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 15s.
- *A Study of Religion: its Sources and Contents.* *Second Edition.* 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 15s.

VI. PHYSICAL SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS, &c.

- Acland.** *Synopsis of the Pathological Series in the Oxford Museum.* By Sir H. W. ACLAND, M.D., F.R.S. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Aldis.** *A Text-Book of Algebra: with Answers to the Examples.* By W. S. ALDIS, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Aplin.** *The Birds of Oxfordshire.* By O. V. APLIN. 8vo. with a Map and one coloured Plate, 10s. 6d.
- Archimedis** *quae supersunt omnia cum Eutocii commentariis ex recensione J. TORELLI, cum nova versione latina.* 1792. Fol. 1l. 5s.
- Baynes.** *Lessons on Thermodynamics.* By R. E. BAYNES, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

BIOLOGICAL SERIES. (Translations of Foreign Memoirs.)

- I. *Memoirs on the Physiology of Nerve, of Muscle, and of the Electrical Organ.* Edited by J. BURDON-SANDERSON, M.D., F.R.S.S.L. & E. Medium 8vo, 1l. 1s.
- II. *The Anatomy of the Frog.* By Dr. ALEXANDER ECKER, Professor in the University of Freiburg. Translated, with numerous Annotations and Additions, by GEORGE HASLAM, M.D. Medium 8vo, 21s.
- IV. *Essays upon Heredity and kindred Biological Problems.* By Dr. AUGUST WEISMANN. Authorised Translation. Edited by EDWARD B. POULTON, M.A., F.R.S., SELMAR SCHÖNLAND, PH.D., and ARTHUR E. SHIPLEY, M.A., F.L.S. Crown 8vo.
Vol. I. *Second Edition,* 7s. 6d.
Vol. II. Edited by E. B. POULTON and A. E. SHIPLEY. 5s.

BOTANICAL SERIES.

History of Botany (1530-1860). By JULIUS VON SACHS. Authorised Translation, by H. E. F. GARNSEY, M.A. Revised by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Crown 8vo, 10s.

Comparative Anatomy of the Vegetative Organs of the Phanerogams and Ferns. By Dr. A. DE BARY. Translated and Annotated by F. O. BOWER, M.A., F.L.S., and D. H. SCOTT, M.A., Ph.D., F.L.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 1l. 2s. 6d.

Outlines of Classification and Special Morphology of Plants. By Dr. K. GOEBEL. Translated by H. E. F. GARNSEY, M.A., and Revised by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 1l. 1s.

Lectures on the Physiology of Plants. By JULIUS VON SACHS. Translated by H. MARSHALL WARD, M.A., F.L.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 1l. 11s. 6d.

Comparative Morphology and Biology of Fungi, Mycetozoa and Bacteria. By Dr. A. DE BARY. Translated by H. E. F. GARNSEY, M.A., Revised by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 1l. 2s. 6d.

Lectures on Bacteria. By Dr. A. DE BARY. *Second Improved Edition.* Translated by H. E. F. GARNSEY, M.A. Revised by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Introduction to Fossil Botany. By Count H. ZU SOLMS-LAUBACH. Translated by H. E. F. GARNSEY, M.A. Revised by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 18s.

Index Kewensis ; an enumeration of the Genera and Species of Flowering Plants from the time of Linnaeus to the year 1885 inclusive. Edited by Sir J. D. HOOKER and B. D. JACKSON. Part I. 4to. Price to Subscribers, 2l. 2s. net.

*** The Work will be completed in Four Parts, to be issued to Subscribers at Eight Guineas net.*

Annals of Botany. Edited by ISAAC BAYLEY BALFOUR, M.A., M.D., F.R.S., SYDNEY H. VINES, D.Sc., F.R.S., D. H. SCOTT, M.A., Ph.D., F.L.S., and W. G. FARLOW, M.D.; assisted by other Botanists. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, gilt top.

Vol. I. Parts I-IV. 1l. 16s.

Vol. II. Parts V-VIII. 2l. 2s.

Vol. III. Parts IX-XII. 2l. 12s. 6d.

Vol. IV. Parts XIII-XVI. 2l. 5s.

Vol. V. Parts XVII-XX. 2l. 10s.

Vol. VI. Part XXI-XXIV. 2l. 4s.

Vol. VII. Part XXV. 12s.

Part XXVI. 12s.

Reprints from the 'Annals of Botany.'

- A** Summary of the New Ferns which have been Discovered or Described since 1874. A Supplement to the *Synopsis Filicum*, bringing that work up to 1890. By J. G. BAKER, F.R.S. Royal 8vo, with one Plate, price 5s. net.
- A** Revised List of the British Marine Algae. With an Appendix, by E. M. HOLMES, F.L.S., and E. A. L. BATTERS, B.A., LL.B., F.L.S. Royal 8vo, paper covers, price 2s. 6d. net.

Bradley's Miscellaneous Works and Correspondence. With an Account of Harriot's Astronomical Papers. 4to, 17s.

Chambers. A Handbook of Descriptive Astronomy. By G. F. CHAMBERS, F.R.A.S. *Fourth Edition.*

Vol. I. The Sun, Planets, and Comets. 8vo, 21s.

Vol. II. Instruments and Practical Astronomy. 8vo, 21s.

Vol. III. The Starry Heavens. 8vo, 14s.

Clarke. Geodesy. By Col. A. R. CLARKE, C.B., R.E. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Cremona. Elements of Projective Geometry. By LUIGI CREMONA. Translated by C. LEUESDORF, M.A. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 12s. 6d.

— Graphical Statics. Two Treatises on the Graphical Calculus and Reciprocal Figures in Graphical Statics. By the same Author. Translated by T. HUDSON BEARE. Demy 8vo, 8s. 6d.

Daubeny's Introduction to the Atomic Theory. 16mo, 6s.

Dixey. Epidemic Influenza, a Study in Comparative Statistics. By F. A. DIXEY, M.A., D.M. Medium 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Donkin. Acoustics. By W. F. DONKIN, M.A., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Emtage. An Introduction to the Mathematical Theory of Electricity and Magnetism. By W. T. A. EMTAGE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

Etheridge. Fossils of the British Islands, Stratigraphically and Zoologically arranged. Part I. PALAEOZOIC. By R. ETHERIDGE, F.R.S.S.L. & E., F.G.S. 4to, 1l. 10s.

EUCLID REVISED. Containing the Essentials of the Elements of Plane Geometry as given by Euclid in his first Six Books. Edited by R. C. J. NIXON, M.A. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 6s.

Supplement to *Euclid Revised.* 6d.

Sold separately as follows:—

Book I. 1s.

Books I, II. 1s. 6d.

Books I–IV. 3s.

Books V, VI. 3s.


- Euclid.** Geometry in Space. Containing parts of Euclid's Eleventh and Twelfth Books. By R. C. J. NIXON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Fisher.** Class-Book of Chemistry. By W. W. FISHER, M.A., F.C.S. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- Galton.** The Construction of Healthy Dwellings. By Sir DOUGLAS GALTON, K.C.B., F.R.S. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Healthy Hospitals. Observations on some points connected with Hospital Construction. With Illustrations. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Greenwell.** British Barrows, a Record of the Examination of Sepulchral Mounds in various parts of England. By W. GREENWELL, M.A., F.S.A. Together with Description of Figures of Skulls, General Remarks on Prehistoric Crania, and an Appendix by GEORGE ROLLESTON, M.D., F.R.S. Medium 8vo, 25s.
- Gresswell.** A Contribution to the Natural History of Scarlatina, derived from Observations on the London Epidemic of 1887-1888. By D. ASTLEY GRESSWELL, M.D. Medium 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Hamilton and Ball.** Book-keeping. New and enlarged Edition. By Sir R. G. C. HAMILTON and JOHN BALL. Cloth, 2s.
Ruled Exercise books adapted to the above may be had, price 1s. 6d.; also, adapted to the Preliminary Course only, price 4d.
- Harcourt and Madan.** Exercises in Practical Chemistry. Vol. I. Elementary Exercises. By A. G. VERNON HARCOURT, M.A., and H. G. MADAN, M.A. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Madan.** Tables of Qualitative Analysis. By H. G. MADAN, M.A. Large 4to, paper covers, 4s. 6d.
- Hensley.** Figures made Easy. A first Arithmetic Book. By LEWIS HENSLEY, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6d. Answers, 1s.
- The Scholar's Arithmetic. 2s. 6d. Answers, 1s. 6d.
- The Scholar's Algebra. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Hughes.** Geography for Schools. By ALFRED HUGHES, M.A. Part I. Practical Geography. With Diagrams. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Johnston.** An Elementary Treatise on Analytical Geometry. By W. J. JOHNSTON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Maclaren.** A System of Physical Education: Theoretical and Practical. By ARCHIBALD MACLAREN. Extra fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Maxwell.** A Treatise on Electricity and Magnetism. By J. CLERK MAXWELL, M.A. Third Edition. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 12s.
- An Elementary Treatise on Electricity. Edited by WILLIAM GARNETT, M.A. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

- Minchin.** A Treatise on Statics with Applications to Physics.
By G. M. MINCHIN, M.A. *Fourth Edition.*
Vol. I. Equilibrium of Coplanar Forces. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
Vol. II. Non-Coplanar Forces. 8vo, 16s.
- Uniplanar Kinematics of Solids and Fluids. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Hydrostatics and Elementary Hydrokinetics. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Müller.** On certain Variations in the Vocal Organs of the Passeres. By J. MÜLLER. Translated by F. J. BELL, B.A., and edited by A. H. GARROD, M.A., F.R.S. With Plates. 4to, 7s. 6d.
- Nixon.** Elementary Plane Trigonometry. By R. C. J. NIXON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d. (See EUCLID REVISED.)
- Phillips.** Geology of Oxford and the Valley of the Thames. By JOHN PHILLIPS, M.A., F.R.S. 8vo, 21s.
- Vesuvius. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Powell.** The Surgical Aspect of Traumatic Insanity. By H. A. POWELL, M.A., M.D. 8vo, stiff cover, 2s. 6d.
- Prestwich.** Geology, Chemical, Physical, and Stratigraphical. By JOSEPH PRESTWICH, M.A., F.R.S. In two Volumes.
Vol. I. Chemical and Physical. Royal 8vo, 1l. 5s.
Vol. II. Stratigraphical and Physical. With a new Geological Map of Europe. Royal 8vo, 1l. 16s.
New Geological Map of Europe. In case or on roller. 5s.
- Price.** Treatise on Infinitesimal Calculus. By BARTHOLOMEW PRICE, M.A., F.R.S.
Vol. I. Differential Calculus. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 14s. 6d.
Vol. II. Integral Calculus, Calculus of Variations, and Differential Equations. *Reprinting.*
Vol. III. Statics, including Attractions; Dynamics of a Material Particle. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 16s.
Vol. IV. Dynamics of Material Systems. *Second Edition.* 8vo, 18s.
- Pritchard.** Astronomical Observations made at the University Observatory, Oxford, under the direction of C. PRITCHARD, D.D. No. I. Royal 8vo, paper covers, 3s. 6d.
- No. II. Uranometria Nova Oxoniensis. A Photometric determination of the magnitudes of all Stars visible to the naked eye, from the Pole to ten degrees south of the Equator. Royal 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- No. III. Researches in Stellar Parallax by the aid of Photography. Royal 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- No. IV. Researches in Stellar Parallax by the aid of Photography. Part II. Royal 8vo, 4s. 6d.

- Rigaud's** Correspondence of Scientific Men of the 17th Century, with Table of Contents by A. de MORGAN, and Index by J. RIGAUD, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 18s. 6d.
- Rolleston and Jackson.** Forms of Animal Life. A Manual of Comparative Anatomy, with descriptions of selected types. By GEORGE ROLLESTON, M.D., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* Revised and enlarged by W. HATCHETT JACKSON, M.A. Medium 8vo, 1l. 16s.
- Russell.** An Elementary Treatise on Pure Geometry. With numerous Examples. By J. WELLESLEY RUSSELL, M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Rolleston.** Scientific Papers and Addresses. By GEORGE ROLLESTON, M.D., F.R.S. Arranged and edited by WILLIAM TURNER, M.B., F.R.S. With a Biographical Sketch by EDWARD TYLOR, F.R.S. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 4s.
- Selby.** Elementary Mechanics of Solids and Fluids. By A. L. SELBY, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Smyth.** A Cycle of Celestial Objects. Observed, Reduced, and Discussed by Admiral W. H. SMYTH, R.N. Revised, condensed, and greatly enlarged by G. F. CHAMBERS, F.R.A.S. 8vo, 12s.
- Stewart.** An Elementary Treatise on Heat, with numerous Woodcuts and Diagrams. By BALFOUR STEWART, LL.D., F.R.S. *Fifth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Strabo,** Selections from. With an Introduction on Strabo's Life and Works. By H. F. TOZER, M.A., F.R.G.S. With Maps and Plans. [*Immediately.*]
- Swinhoe.** Catalogue of Eastern and Australian Lepidoptera Heterocera in the Collection of the Oxford University Museum. By Colonel C. Swinhoe, F.L.S., F.Z.S., &c. Part I. Sphingides and Bombycides. 8vo, with eight Plates, 21s.
- Thomson.** Notes on Recent Researches in Electricity and Magnetism, intended as a sequel to Professor CLERK MAXWELL's 'Treatise on Electricity and Magnetism.' By J. J. THOMSON, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Experimental Physics in the University of Cambridge. 8vo, 18s. 6d.
- Van 't Hoff.** Chemistry in Space. Translated and Edited by J. E. MARSH, B.A. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- Vernon-Harcourt.** Treatise on Rivers and Canals, relating to Control and Improvement of Rivers, and Design, Construction, and Development of Canals. By L. F. VERNON-HARCOURT, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 1s.
- Harbours and Docks; their Physical Features, History, Construction, Equipment, and Maintenance. 2 vols. 8vo, 25s.

- Walker.** *The Theory of a Physical Balance.* By JAMES WALKER, M.A. 8vo, stiff cover, 3s. 6d.
- Watson.** *A Treatise on the Kinetic Theory of Gases.* By H. W. WATSON, D.Sc., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- Watson and Burbury.** *A Treatise on the Application of Generalised Co-ordinates to the Kinetics of a Material System.* By H. W. WATSON, D.Sc., and S. H. BURBURY, M.A. 8vo, 6s.
- *The Mathematical Theory of Electricity and Magnetism.* Vol. I. *Electrostatics.* 8vo, 10s. 6d.
Vol. II. *Magnetism and Electrodynamics.* 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Westwood.** *Thesaurus Entomologicus Hopeianus.* By J. O. WESTWOOD, M.A., F.R.S. With 40 Plates. Small folio, 7l. 10s.
- Williamson.** *Chemistry for Students. With Solutions.* By A. W. WILLIAMSON, Phil. Doc., F.R.S. Extra fcap. 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- Woollcombe.** *Practical Work in Heat.* By W. G. WOOLLCOMBE, M.A., B.Sc. Crown 8vo, 3s.

VII. ART AND ARCHAEOLOGY.

- Butler.** *Ancient Coptic Churches of Egypt.* By A. J. BUTLER, M.A., F.S.A. 2 vols. 8vo, 30s.
- Head.** *Historia Numorum. A Manual of Greek Numismatics.* By BARCLAY V. HEAD, D.C.L., Keeper of the Department of Coins and Medals in the British Museum. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 42s.
- Jackson.** *Dalmatia, the Quarnero and Istria; with Cettigne in Montenegro and the Island of Grado.* By T. G. JACKSON, M.A. 3 vols. 8vo. With many Illustrations. Half-bound, 42s.
- *Wadham College, Oxford; Its Foundation, Architecture and History. With an Account of the Family of Wadham, and their seats in Somerset and Devon.* By T. G. JACKSON, M.A., A.R.A. 4to, half-persian, 2l. 2s. net.
- Gardner.** *Catalogue of the Greek Vases in the Ashmolean Museum.* By PERCY GARDNER, M.A., Litt.D. Small folio, linen, with 26 Plates. Price 3l. 3s. net.
Three hundred and fifty copies only printed, all of which are numbered.
- MUSIC.—Farmer.** *Hymns and Chorales for Schools and Colleges.* Edited by JOHN FARMER, Organist of Balliol College. 5s.
 *The Hymns without the Tunes,* 2s.
- Hullah.** *Cultivation of the Speaking Voice.* By JOHN HULLAH. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

MUSIC (*continued*).

Ouseley. Treatise on Harmony. By Sir F. A. GORE
OUSELEY, Bart. *Third Edition.* 4to, 10s.

— Treatise on Counterpoint, Canon, and Fugue, based
upon that of Cherubini. *Second Edition.* 4to, 16s.

— Treatise on Musical Form and General Com-
position. *Second Edition.* 4to, 10s.

Troutbeck and Dale. Music Primer. By J. TROUTBECK,
D.D., and F. DALE, M.A. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.

Robinson. A Critical Account of the Drawings by Michel
Angelo and Raffaello in the University Galleries, Oxford. By J. C.
ROBINSON, F.S.A. Crown 8vo, 4s.

Tyrwhitt. Handbook of Pictorial Art. With Illustrations,
and a chapter on Perspective by A. Macdonald. By R. St. J. TYRWHITT,
M.A. *Second Edition.* 8vo, half-morocco, 18s.

Upcott. Introduction to Greek Sculpture. By L. E. UPCOTT,
M.A. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Vaux. Catalogue of the Castellani Collection in the University
Galleries, Oxford. By W. S. W. VAUX, M.A. Crown 8vo, 1s.

VIII. PALAEOGRAPHY.

Allen. Notes on Abbreviations in Greek Manuscripts. By
T. W. ALLEN, M.A., Queen's College, Oxford. Royal 8vo, 5s.

Gardthausen. Catalogus Codicum Græcorum Sinaiticorum.
Scriptis V. GARDTHAUSEN Lipsiensis. With Facsimiles. 8vo, *linen*, 25s.

Fragmenta Herculaneusia. A Descriptive Catalogue of the
Oxford copies of the Herculanean Rolls, together with the texts of several
papyri. Edited by WALTER SCOTT, M.A. Royal 8vo, 21s.

— Thirty-six Engravings of Texts and Alphabets from the
Herculanean Fragments, taken from the original Copper-plates executed
under the direction of the Rev. JOHN HAYTER, M.A., and now in the
Bodleian Library. With an Introductory Note by BODLEY'S LIBRARIAN.
Folio, *small paper*, 10s. 6d.; *large paper*, 21s.

Herculaneusium Voluminum Partes II. 1824. 8vo, 10s.

Oxford:

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS.

LONDON: HENRY FROWDE,

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.

4
c/s 374
2/

